

[Table of Contents](#)

Filed Pursuant to Rule 424(b)(5)
Registration No. 333-203259

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of Each Class of Securities to be Registered	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price	Amount of Registration Fee (1)
Debt Securities	\$550,000,000	\$63,745.00

(1) The filing fee of \$63,745.00 is calculated in accordance with Rule 457(r) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

[Table of Contents](#)

PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT

(To Prospectus dated April 6, 2015)



genesisenergy

Genesis Energy, L.P.

Genesis Energy Finance Corporation

\$550,000,000

6.50% Senior Notes due 2025

The notes will bear interest at the rate of 6.50% per year. Interest on the notes is payable on April 1 and October 1 of each year, commencing on April 1, 2018. The notes will mature on October 1, 2025. We may redeem some or all of the notes at any time before maturity at the prices discussed under the section entitled “Description of Notes — Optional Redemption.”

We intend to use the net proceeds we receive from this offering to fund a portion of the purchase price for the pending acquisition of the trona and trona-based exploring, mining, processing, producing, marketing and selling business (the “Alkali Business”) from Tronox Alkali Corporation (the “Alkali Business Acquisition”). Pending the potential use of the net proceeds from this offering to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition, we intend to use the net proceeds from this offering to make short-term liquid investments or for the repayment of outstanding borrowings under our revolving credit agreement, at our discretion.

If the stock purchase agreement for the Alkali Business Acquisition is terminated at any time prior to the closing of such acquisition, or if the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition does not otherwise occur on or prior to March 31, 2018, we will redeem all of the notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the aggregate issue price of the notes (exclusive of accrued interest if settlement occurs after August 14, 2017), plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the redemption date.

The notes will be our senior unsecured obligations and will rank equally with all of our other unsubordinated indebtedness from time to time outstanding. Holders of any secured indebtedness will have claims that are senior in right of payment to your claims as holders of the notes, to the extent of the value of the assets securing such indebtedness, in the event of any bankruptcy, liquidation or similar proceeding. At the time of issuance, the notes will be guaranteed on a senior unsecured basis by each of our domestic subsidiaries that is a guarantor under our credit agreement other than Genesis Energy Finance Corporation. The notes will be structurally subordinated to the indebtedness and other liabilities of our non-guarantor subsidiaries. See “Description of Notes.”

The notes will be listed on the national securities exchange. The notes are a new issue of securities with no established trading market.

Investing in the notes involves risks. Read “[Risk Factors](#)” beginning on page S-20 of this prospectus supplement, on page 2 of the accompanying base prospectus and on page 25 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus supplement or the accompanying base prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

	Public Offering Price(1)	Underwriting Discounts	Proceeds to Genesis (before expenses)
Per Note	100.00%	1.50%	98.50%
Total	\$550,000,000	\$8,250,000	\$541,750,000

(1) Plus accrued interest from August 14, 2017, if settlement occurs after such date.

The underwriters expect to deliver the notes in book entry form only, through the facilities of The Depository Trust Company, against payment on or about August 14, 2017.

<i>Joint Book-Running Managers</i>		
Wells Fargo Securities SMBC Nikko BofA Merrill Lynch RBC Capital Markets	BMO Capital Markets ABN AMRO Capital One Securities Scotiabank	Deutsche Bank Securities BNP PARIBAS Citigroup DNB Markets
<i>Co-managers</i>		
BBVA	Fifth Third Securities	Regions Securities LLC
August 7, 2017.		

[Table of Contents](#)

TABLE OF CONTENTS
PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT

	Page
ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT	iv
SUMMARY	S-1
RISK FACTORS	S-20
USE OF PROCEEDS	S-38
CAPITALIZATION	S-39
COMBINED SELECTED HISTORICAL UNAUDITED FINANCIAL DATA	S-40
ALKALI BUSINESS	S-41
DESCRIPTION OF CERTAIN OTHER INDEBTEDNESS	S-47
DESCRIPTION OF NOTES	S-51
CERTAIN UNITED STATES FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS	S-108
INVESTMENT IN THE NOTES BY EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND IRAs	S-113
UNDERWRITING	S-116
LEGAL MATTERS	S-123
EXPERTS	S-123
INFORMATION REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	S-124
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	S-126
INDEX TO AUDITED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	F-1
INDEX TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	F-33

PROSPECTUS DATED APRIL 6, 2015

	Page
ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	1
GENESIS ENERGY, L.P.	1
RISK FACTORS	2
USE OF PROCEEDS	2
RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES	3
DESCRIPTION OF OUR EQUITY SECURITIES	4
General	4
Our Common Units	4
Our Preferred Securities	7
Our Subordinated Securities	8
Our Options	8
Our Warrants	9
Our Rights	10
CASH DISTRIBUTION POLICY	12
Distributions of Available Cash	12
Adjustment of Quarterly Distribution Amounts	12
Distributions of Cash Upon Liquidation	12
DESCRIPTION OF OUR PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENT	13
Partnership Purpose	13
Power of Attorney	13
Reimbursements of Our General Partner	13
Issuance of Additional Securities	13
Amendments to Our Partnership Agreement	13
Withdrawal or Removal of Our General Partner	14

Table of Contents

	Page
Liquidation and Distribution of Proceeds	14
Change of Management Provisions	15
Limited Call Right	15
Indemnification	15
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES AND GUARANTEES	16
General	16
Indentures	16
Series of Debt Securities	17
Amounts of Issuances	17
Principal Amount, Stated Maturity and Maturity	17
Specific Terms of Debt Securities	18
Governing Law	19
Form of Debt Securities	19
Redemption or Repayment	22
Mergers and Similar Transactions	23
Subordination Provisions	23
Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge	25
No Personal Liability	25
Default, Remedies and Waiver of Default	26
Modifications and Waivers	27
Special Rules for Action by Holders	29
Form, Exchange and Transfer	30
Payments	31
Guarantees	31
Paying Agents	32

Notices	33
Our Relationship With the Trustee	33
Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities	33
MATERIAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES	35
Partnership Status	35
Limited Partner Status	37
Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership	38
Tax Treatment of Operations	42
Disposition of Common Units	43
Uniformity of Units	45
Tax-Exempt Organizations and Other Investors	46
Administrative Matters	47
State, Local, Foreign and Other Tax Consequences	49
INVESTMENT IN GENESIS BY EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND IRAs	50
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION	53
INFORMATION REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	55
LEGAL MATTERS	57
EXPERTS	57
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	58

We expect that delivery of the notes will be made against payment therefor on or about the closing date specified on the cover page of this prospectus supplement, which will be the fifth business day following the date of this prospectus supplement. This settlement cycle is referred to as “T+5.” Under Rule

[Table of Contents](#)

15c6-1 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in three business days, unless the parties to any such trade expressly agree otherwise. Accordingly, purchasers who wish to trade notes on the date of this prospectus supplement or the next succeeding business day will be required, by virtue of the fact that the notes initially will settle T+5, to specify an alternate settlement cycle at the time of any such trade to prevent a failed settlement. Purchasers of notes who wish to trade notes on the date of this prospectus supplement or the next succeeding business day should consult their own advisor.

You should rely only on the information contained in or incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement, the accompanying base prospectus and any free writing prospectus prepared by or on our behalf relating to this offering of notes. Neither we nor the underwriters have authorized anyone to provide you with additional or different information. If anyone provides you with additional, different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We are offering to sell the notes, and seeking offers to buy the notes, only in jurisdictions where offers and sales are permitted. You should not assume that the information contained in this prospectus supplement, the accompanying base prospectus or any free writing prospectus is accurate as of any date other than the dates shown in these documents or that any information we have incorporated by reference herein is accurate as of any date other than the date of the document incorporated by reference. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since such dates.

None of Genesis Energy, L.P., the underwriters or any of their respective representatives is making any representation to you regarding the legality of an investment in our notes by you under applicable laws. You should consult your own legal, tax and business advisors regarding an investment in our notes. Information in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus is not legal, tax or business advice to any prospective investor.

Industry and Market Data

The market data and certain other statistical information used throughout this prospectus supplement are based on independent industry publications, government publications or other published independent sources. Although we believe these third-party sources are reliable and that the information is accurate and complete, we have not independently verified the information nor have we ascertained the underlying economic or operational assumptions relied upon therein.

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT

This document is in two parts. The first part is this prospectus supplement, which describes the specific terms of this offering of notes. The second part is the accompanying base prospectus, which gives more general information, some of which may not apply to this offering of notes. Generally, when we refer only to the “prospectus,” we are referring to both parts combined. If the information about the notes offering varies between this prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus, you should rely on the information in this prospectus supplement.

Any statement made in this prospectus or in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into this prospectus will be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus or in any other subsequently filed document that is also incorporated by reference into this prospectus modifies or supersedes that statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus. Please read “Where You Can Find More Information.”

[Table of Contents](#)

SUMMARY

This summary highlights information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus. It does not contain all the information that may be important to you or that you may wish to consider before making an investment decision. You should read carefully the entire prospectus supplement, the accompanying base prospectus, the documents incorporated by reference and the other documents to which we refer for a more complete understanding of our business and the terms of this offering, as well as the tax and other considerations that are important to you in making your investment decision. Please read “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-20 of this prospectus supplement, page 2 of the accompanying base prospectus and page 25 of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016 for information regarding risks you should consider before investing in our notes. Except to the extent otherwise provided, the information contained in this prospectus supplement is as of June 30, 2017, except with respect to the Alkali Business, which is as of December 31, 2016.

Unless the context otherwise requires, references in this prospectus supplement to (i) “Genesis Energy, L.P.,” “Genesis,” “we,” “our,” “us” or like terms refer to Genesis Energy, L.P. and its operating subsidiaries, including Genesis Energy Finance Corporation; (ii) “our general partner” refers to Genesis Energy, LLC, the general partner of Genesis; (iii) “Finance Corp.” or “co-issuer” refer to Genesis Energy Finance Corporation; and (iv) “CO₂” means carbon dioxide and “NaHS,” which is commonly pronounced as “nash,” means sodium hydrosulfide. Estimated trona ore reserve information contained in this prospectus supplement is based on our internal evaluation and interpretation of reserve and other information provided to us in the course of our due diligence with respect to the Alkali Business Acquisition (as defined below) and has not been independently verified or estimated.

Our Company

We are a growth-oriented master limited partnership formed in Delaware in 1996 and focused on the midstream segment of the crude oil and natural gas industry in the Gulf Coast region of the United States, Wyoming and in the Gulf of Mexico. Our common units are traded on the New York Stock Exchange, or NYSE, under the ticker symbol “GEL.”

We provide an integrated suite of services to refiners, crude oil and natural gas producers, and industrial and commercial enterprises. We currently have two distinct, complementary types of operations — (i) our onshore-based refinery-centric operations located primarily in the Gulf Coast region of the U.S., which focus on providing a suite of services primarily to refiners, and (ii) our offshore Gulf of Mexico crude oil and natural gas pipeline transportation and handling operations, which focus on providing a suite of services primarily to integrated and large independent energy companies who make intensive capital investments to develop numerous large-reservoir, long-lived crude oil and natural gas properties. Our onshore-based operations occur upstream of, at, and downstream of refinery complexes. Upstream of refineries, we aggregate, purchase, gather and transport crude oil, which we sell to refiners. Within refineries, we provide services to assist in sulfur removal/balancing requirements. Downstream of refineries, we provide transportation services as well as market outlets for finished refined petroleum products and certain refining by-products. In our offshore crude oil and natural gas pipeline transportation and handling operations, we provide services to one of the most active drilling and development regions in the U.S. — the Gulf of Mexico, a producing region representing approximately 18% of the crude oil production in the U.S. in 2016. We have a diverse portfolio of customers, operations and assets, including pipelines, refinery-related plants, storage tanks and terminals, railcars, rail loading and unloading facilities, barges and other vessels, and trucks. Substantially all of our revenues are derived from providing services to refiners, integrated and large independent crude oil and natural gas companies, and industrial and commercial enterprises.

[Table of Contents](#)

We conduct our operations and own our operating assets through our subsidiaries and joint ventures. Our general partner, Genesis Energy, LLC, a wholly-owned subsidiary that owns a non-economic general partner interest in us, has sole responsibility for conducting our business and managing our operations. Our outstanding common units (including our Class B common units) representing limited partner interests constitute all of the economic equity interests in us. In the fourth quarter of 2016, we reorganized our operating segments to better evaluate the performance of operations, develop strategy and allocate resources. The results of our onshore pipeline transportation segment are now reported together with the results of our supply and logistics segment, which are now collectively referred to as our onshore facilities and transportation segment. This change is consistent with the increasingly integrated nature of our onshore operations. As a result of the above changes, we currently manage our businesses through four divisions that constitute our reportable segments — offshore pipeline transportation, refinery services, marine transportation, and onshore facilities and transportation. <i>Offshore Pipeline Transportation Segment</i> We conduct our offshore crude oil and natural gas pipeline transportation and handling operations through our offshore pipeline transportation segment, which focuses on providing a suite of services to integrated and large independent energy companies who make intensive capital investments to develop numerous large-reservoir, long-lived crude oil and natural gas properties in the Gulf of Mexico, primarily offshore Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi and Alabama. This segment provides services to one of the most active drilling and development regions in the U.S. — the Gulf of Mexico, a producing region representing approximately 18% of the crude oil production in the U.S. in 2016. Even though those large-reservoir properties and the related pipelines and other infrastructure needed to develop them are capital intensive, we believe they are generally much less sensitive to short-term commodity price volatility, particularly once a project has been sanctioned. Due to the size and scope of these activities, our customers are predominantly large integrated oil companies and large independent crude oil producers. We own interests in various offshore crude oil and natural gas pipeline systems, platforms and related infrastructure. We own interests in approximately 1,431 miles of crude oil pipelines with an aggregate design capacity of approximately 1,810 MBbls per day, a number of which pipeline systems are substantial and/or strategically located. For example, we own a 64% interest in the Poseidon pipeline system and 100% in the Cameron Highway pipeline system, or CHOPS, which is one of the largest crude oil pipelines (in terms of both length and design capacity) located in the Gulf of Mexico. We also own 100% of Southeast Keathley Canyon Pipeline Company, LLC, which owns a deepwater pipeline servicing the Lucius field in the southern Keathley Canyon area of the Gulf of Mexico. Our interests in operating offshore natural gas pipeline systems and related infrastructure include approximately 977 miles of pipe with an aggregate design capacity of approximately 3,413 MMcf per day. We also own an interest in three operating offshore hub platforms with aggregate processing capacity of approximately 711 MMcf per day of natural gas and 159 MBbls per day of crude oil. Our offshore pipelines generate cash flows from fees charged to customers or substantially similar arrangements that otherwise limit our direct exposure to changes in commodity prices. Each of our offshore pipelines currently has significant available capacity to accommodate future growth in the fields from which the production is dedicated to that pipeline, including fields that have yet to commence production activities, as well as volumes from non-dedicated fields. <i>Refinery Services Segment</i> We primarily (i) provide services to ten refining operations located mostly in Texas, Louisiana, Arkansas, Oklahoma, Montana and Utah; (ii) operate significant storage and transportation assets in

[Table of Contents](#)

relation to those services; and (iii) sell NaHS and NaOH (also known as caustic soda) to large industrial and commercial companies. Our
--

refinery services primarily involve processing refiners' high sulfur (or "sour") gas streams to remove the sulfur. Our refinery services footprint also includes NaHS and caustic soda terminals, and we utilize railcars, ships, barges and trucks to transport product. Our refinery services contracts are typically long-term in nature and have an average remaining term of three years. NaHS is a by-product derived from our refinery sulfur removal services process, and it constitutes the sole consideration we receive for these services. A majority of the NaHS we receive is sourced from refineries owned and operated by large companies, including Phillips 66, CITGO, HollyFrontier, Calumet and Ergon. We sell our NaHS to customers in a variety of industries, with the largest customers involved in mining of base metals, primarily copper and molybdenum, and the production of pulp and paper. We believe we are one of the largest marketers of NaHS in North and South America.

Marine Transportation Segment

We own a fleet of 83 barges (74 inland and 9 offshore) with a combined transportation capacity of 2.9 million barrels and 42 push/tow boats (33 inland and 9 offshore). Our marine transportation segment is a provider of transportation services by tank barge primarily for refined petroleum products, including heavy fuel oil and asphalt, as well as crude oil. Refiners accounted for approximately 80% of our marine transportation volumes for 2016.

We also own the M/T American Phoenix, an ocean going tanker with 330,000 barrels of cargo capacity. The M/T American Phoenix is currently transporting refined products.

We are a provider of marine transportation services for our customers and, in almost all cases, do not assume ownership of the products that we transport. Most of our marine transportation services are conducted under term contracts, some of which have renewal options for customers with whom we have traditionally had long-standing relationships. All of our vessels operate under the U.S. flag and are qualified for domestic trade under the Jones Act.

Onshore Facilities and Transportation Segment

Our onshore facilities and transportation segment (formerly known as our supply and logistics segment) owns and/or leases our increasingly integrated suite of onshore crude oil and refined products infrastructure, including pipelines, trucks, terminals, railcars, and rail loading and unloading facilities. It uses those assets, together with other modes of transportation owned by third parties and us, to service its customers and for its own account. The increasingly integrated nature of our onshore facilities and transportation assets is particularly evident in certain of our recently completed or ongoing growth initiatives in areas such as Louisiana, Texas and Wyoming.

We own five onshore crude oil pipeline systems, with approximately 580 miles of pipe located primarily in Alabama, Florida, Louisiana, Mississippi, Texas and Wyoming. The Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, or FERC, regulates the rates charged by four of our onshore systems to their customers. The rates for the other onshore pipeline are regulated by the Railroad Commission of Texas. Our onshore pipelines generate cash flows from fees charged to customers. Each of our onshore pipelines has significant available capacity to accommodate potential future growth in volumes.

We own two CO2 pipelines with approximately 270 miles of pipe. We have leased our NEJD System, comprising 183 miles of pipe in North East Jackson Dome, Mississippi, to an affiliate of an independent crude oil company through 2028. We receive a fixed quarterly payment under the NEJD arrangement. That company also has the exclusive right to use the capacity on our Free State pipeline, comprising 86 miles of pipe, pursuant to a transportation agreement that expires in 2028. Transportation fees on the Free State pipeline are subject to an "incentive" tariff pursuant to which the average rate per Mcf we charge during any month decreases as our aggregate throughput for that month increases above specified thresholds.

[Table of Contents](#)

We have access to a suite of more than 200 trucks, 400 trailers, 523 railcars, and terminals and tankage with 4.6 million barrels of storage capacity (excluding capacity associated with our common carrier crude oil pipelines) in multiple locations along the Gulf Coast. Our crude-by-rail operations consist of a total of six facilities, either in operation or under construction, designed to load and/or unload crude oil. The two facilities located in Texas and Wyoming were designed primarily to load crude oil produced locally onto railcars for further transportation to refining markets. The four other facilities (two in Louisiana, one in Mississippi and one in Florida) were designed primarily to unload crude oil from railcars into pipelines, or onto barges, for delivery to refinery customers. In addition, four of these facilities are directly connected to our integrated pipeline and terminal infrastructure. Usually, our onshore facilities and transportation segment experiences limited direct commodity price risk because it utilizes back-to-back purchases and sales, matching sale and purchase volumes on a monthly basis. Unsold volumes are hedged with NYMEX derivatives to offset the remaining price risk.

Our Objectives and Strategies

Our primary objective continues to be to generate and grow stable cash flows while never wavering from our commitment to safe and responsible operations. We now believe the best way to generate and grow stable cash flows under current conditions is to exercise strong financial discipline designed primarily to maintain and enhance our financial flexibility across the business cycle. We believe we can continue to further enhance our financial flexibility with cash flows from operations. During 2016, we accelerated that process by issuing additional equity and lowering the future growth rate of quarterly distributions.

Business Strategy

Our primary business strategy is to provide an integrated suite of services to refiners, crude oil and natural gas producers, and industrial and commercial enterprises. Successfully executing this strategy should enable us to generate and grow stable cash flows. We currently have two distinct, complementary types of operations: (i) our onshore-based crude oil and refined petroleum products transportation, onshore facilities and transportation, and handling operations, focusing predominantly on refinery-centric customers (as opposed to producers), and (ii) our offshore Gulf of Mexico crude oil and natural gas pipeline transportation and handling operations, focusing on integrated and large independent energy companies who make intensive capital investments to develop numerous large-reservoir, long-lived crude oil and natural gas properties. In 2016, refiners were the shippers of approximately 80% of the volumes transported on our onshore crude pipelines, and refiners contract for approximately 80% of the use of our inland barges, which are used primarily to transport intermediate refined products (not crude oil) between refining complexes. The integrated and large independent energy companies that use our offshore oil pipelines produce oil that is ideally suited for the vast majority of refineries along the Gulf Coast, unlike the lighter crude oil and condensates produced from numerous onshore shale plays.

We intend to develop our business by:

- Identifying and exploiting incremental profit opportunities, including cost synergies, across an increasingly integrated footprint;
- Optimizing our existing assets and creating synergies through additional commercial and operating advancement;
- Leveraging customer relationships across business segments;
- Attracting new customers and expanding our scope of services offered to existing customers;
- Expanding the geographic reach of our businesses;
- Economically expanding our pipeline and terminal operations;

[Table of Contents](#)

- Evaluating internal and third party growth opportunities (including asset and business acquisitions) that leverage our core competencies and strengths, further integrate our businesses, and diversify our cash flows; and
- Focusing on health, safety and environmental stewardship.

Financial Strategy

We believe that preserving financial flexibility is an important factor in our overall strategy and success. Over the long-term, we intend to:

- Increase the relative contribution of recurring and throughput-based revenues, emphasizing longer-term contractual arrangements;
- Prudently manage our limited direct commodity price risks;
- Maintain a sound, disciplined capital structure; and
- Create strategic arrangements and share capital costs and risks through joint ventures and strategic alliances.

Our Competitive Strengths

We believe we are well positioned to execute our strategies and ultimately achieve our objectives due primarily to the following competitive strengths:

- **We have limited direct commodity price risk exposure.** The volumes of crude oil, refined products or intermediate feedstocks we purchase are either subject to back-to-back sales contracts or are hedged with NYMEX derivatives to limit our direct exposure to movements in the price of the commodity, although we cannot completely eliminate commodity price exposure. Our risk management policy requires us to monitor the effectiveness of the hedges to maintain a value at risk of such hedged inventory not in excess of \$2.5 million. In addition, our service contracts with refiners allow us to adjust the rates we charge for processing to maintain a balance

between NaHS supply and demand.

- ***Our businesses encompass a balanced, diversified portfolio of customers, operations and assets.*** We operate four business segments and own and operate assets that enable us to provide a number of services primarily to refiners, crude oil and natural gas producers, and industrial and commercial enterprises that use NaHS and caustic soda. Our business lines complement each other by allowing us to offer an integrated suite of services to common customers across segments. Our businesses are primarily focused on providing (i) onshore-based refinery-centric crude oil and refined products transportation and handling services and (ii) offshore crude oil and natural gas pipeline transportation and related handling services in the Gulf of Mexico to mostly integrated and large independent energy companies. We are not dependent upon any one customer or principal location for our revenues.
- ***Some of our pipeline transportation and related assets are strategically located.*** Our pipelines are critical to the ongoing operations of our refiner and producer customers. In addition, a majority of our terminals are located in areas that can be accessed by truck, rail or barge.
- ***We believe we are one of the largest marketers of NaHS in North and South America.*** We believe the scale of our well-established refinery services operations as well as our integrated suite of assets provides us with a unique cost advantage over some of our existing and potential competitors.
- ***Some of our onshore facilities and transportation assets are operationally flexible.*** Our portfolio of trucks, railcars, barges and terminals affords us flexibility within our existing regional footprint and provides us the capability to enter new markets and expand our customer relationships.

[Table of Contents](#)

- ***Our marine transportation assets provide waterborne transportation throughout North America.*** Our fleet of barges and boats provide service to both inland and offshore customers within a large North American geographic footprint. All of our vessels operate under the U.S. flag and are qualified for U.S. coastwise trade under the Jones Act.
- ***Our businesses provide relatively consistent consolidated financial performance.*** Our historically consistent and improving financial performance, combined with our goal of a conservative capital structure over the long term, has allowed us to generate relatively stable and increasing cash flows, allowing us to increase our distribution for forty-seventh consecutive quarters as of our most recent distribution declaration.
- ***We are financially flexible and have significant liquidity.*** As of July 31, 2017, we had approximately \$500 million available under our \$1.7 billion revolving credit agreement. On August 2, 2017, we received commitments to increase the committed amount under our revolving credit facility from \$1.7 billion to \$2.0 billion effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition, but such increased commitment automatically reduces for each dollar of notes sold in the offering. See “Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business — Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition.”
- ***Our expertise and reputation for high performance standards and quality enable us to provide refiners with economic and proven services.*** Our extensive understanding of the sulfur removal process and crude oil refining can provide us with an advantage when evaluating new opportunities and/or markets.
- ***We have an experienced, knowledgeable and motivated executive management team with a proven track record.*** Our executive management team has an average of more than 25 years of experience in the midstream sector. Its members have worked in leadership roles at a number of large, successful public companies, including other publicly-traded partnerships. Through their equity interest in us, our executive management team is incentivized to create value by increasing cash flows.

Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business

Stock Purchase Agreement

On August 2, 2017, we entered into a stock purchase agreement with a subsidiary of Tronox Limited (“Tronox”) pursuant to which we will acquire for approximately \$1.3 billion in cash all of Tronox’s trona and trona-based exploring, mining, processing, producing, marketing and selling business through the acquisition of 100% of the equity interests in Tronox Alkali Corporation (“Alkali”), another subsidiary of Tronox, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the stock purchase agreement. We refer to that business as the “Alkali Business” and the acquisition of the Alkali Business as the “Alkali Business Acquisition”.

That stock purchase agreement contains customary representations and warranties, covenants and agreements. It also contains customary

<http://www.oblible.com> or termination of applicable waiting periods under the Hart-Scott Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976, as amended) and termination rights for both parties. We expect to close the Alkali Business Acquisition in the second half of 2017.

We cannot assure you that we will acquire the Alkali Business within our anticipated time frame or at all or that we will achieve our strategic and financial objectives related to the Alkali Business Acquisition. Our obligation to complete the Alkali Business Acquisition is not contingent upon the completion of this offering, the sale of any equity interests or any other financing. Investors in our notes should not place

[Table of Contents](#)

undue reliance on the pro forma financial data included in, or incorporated by reference into, this prospectus supplement.

The Alkali Business

Today, the Alkali Business is the world’s largest producer of natural soda ash, also known as sodium carbonate (Na₂CO₃), a basic building block for a number of ubiquitous products, including flat glass, container glass, dry detergent and a variety of chemicals and other industrial products. As an industry-leading soda ash producer, the Alkali Business also processes some of its trona and soda ash into a variety of specialty products, such as sodium sesquicarbonate (S-Carb) and sodium bicarbonate (Bicarb). In 2016, the Alkali Business produced approximately four million tons of natural soda ash, representing approximately 28% of all the natural soda ash produced in the world during that period, generating \$786 million in revenue from a broad, industry-diverse and worldwide customer base, including many long-term relationships.

Soda ash can be produced naturally (by mining and processing trona ore, a naturally occurring mineral) or synthetically (by transforming limestone and salt using a chemical process). According to historical production statistics, only approximately 25% of the annual global soda ash produced is natural. Based upon industry sources and industry experience, we believe producing natural soda ash is much less expensive and results in a smaller environmental footprint than producing synthetic soda ash, which also requires more energy and emits more carbon dioxide. IHS Markit, or “IHS,” an information and analytics firm that supports businesses and governments in the chemicals industry, estimates that the average cost to produce natural soda ash is approximately 50% of the average cost to produce synthetic soda ash, depending on a variety of factors, including the cost of raw materials and energy. Because the demand for natural soda ash exceeds its supply and because the Alkali Business has strong, long-term customer relationships, the Alkali Business has sold all of the soda ash it has produced each year since 2010.

The vast majority of the world’s accessible trona reserves are located in the Green River Basin area in Wyoming. The Alkali Business owns the largest leasehold position in the Green River trona patch, with leases covering approximately 88,000 acres of land, containing an estimated 830 million metric tonnes of proved and probable reserves of trona ore, representing an estimated remaining reserve life of over 100 years based on its 2016 production rate. The Alkali Business has been mining trona and producing soda ash in the Green River trona patch for almost 70 years. All of the Alkali Business’ mining and processing activities are conducted at its “Westvaco” and “Granger” facilities in Wyoming. Among other activities, the Alkali Business involves the following activities:

- dry mining of trona ore underground at the Westvaco facility;
- secondary recovery of trona from previously dry mined areas underground at the Westvaco and Granger facilities using solution mining;
- processing trona ore into soda ash and specialty products; and
- marketing, selling and distributing soda ash and specialty products.

Rationale for Alkali Business Acquisition

We believe the Alkali Business Acquisition will immediately enhance our credit metrics and accelerate our de-leveraging, substantially diversify our portfolio of assets and services with our entry into a historically stable business, and provide us substantial scale and size, all of which will facilitate our ability to realize our primary financial goals. Our rationale for the Alkali Business Acquisition includes the following:

- *Substantially enlarges and diversifies our bases of strategic assets and customers.* The Alkali Business Acquisition substantially enlarges and diversifies our bases of strategic assets and

[Table of Contents](#)

customers through the acquisition of the world’s largest natural soda ash production facility, accounting for approximately 28% of the global production of natural soda ash in 2016. The Alkali Business has a broad, industry-diverse and worldwide customer base, with many long-term relationships. Those customers operate in a wide array of industries (such as flat glass, container glass, chemicals, and soaps and detergents) throughout the United States, Asia, Europe and Latin America.

- *Generates substantial, long-term, relatively stable cash flows due to high global demand for soda ash and structural cost advantage for natural soda ash.* Based upon third-party historical production statistics, worldwide demand (excluding China) for soda ash is projected to grow at a compounded annual growth rate of approximately 2% through 2021. Based upon industry sources and industry experience, we believe there is a structural cost advantage of natural soda ash relative to higher cost synthetic soda ash. We believe the competitive cost position of natural soda ash relative to the higher cost synthetic process will persist and that demand for natural soda ash will continue to exceed available supply, which, together with the Alkali Business’ longstanding customer relationships, should continue to provide relatively stable cash flows in the short- and long-term.
- *Facilitates our ability to realize our primary financial goals.* The size, characteristics and financial contributions of the Alkali Business Acquisition should facilitate our ability to realize our primary financial goals over the next five years — targeting an investment grade leverage ratio, increasing our coverage ratio and continuing to deliver disciplined growth in our distributions. The Alkali Business Acquisition immediately reduces our debt to total capitalization ratio.

Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition

We expect to finance the Alkali Business Acquisition with the net proceeds from this offering and our private placement of Preferred Units (as described below), and borrowings under our revolving credit facility or cash on hand.

Private Placement of Class A Convertible Preferred Units

On August 2, 2017, we entered into a preferred units purchase agreement with affiliates of KKR Global Infrastructure Investors II, L.P. and GSO Capital Partners LP to issue and sell in a private placement approximately \$750 million of our Class A convertible preferred units (the “Preferred Units”) for a cash purchase price per unit of \$33.71. Those investors’ obligations to acquire the Preferred Units are subject to certain customary closing conditions, including the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition. We will use the proceeds received from that transaction to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business. See our Current Report on Form 8-K, dated August 7, 2017 for additional discussion of our Preferred Units.

The offering of the notes pursuant to this prospectus is not contingent upon the closing of the sale of the Preferred Units. If you decide to purchase our notes in this offering, you should be willing to do so whether or not the sale of the Preferred Units closes.

Availability of Cash on Hand and Under Revolving Credit Facility

As of July 31, 2017, we had approximately \$500 million of remaining available credit under our \$1.7 billion revolving credit facility. In case, and to the extent, we are not able to sell at least \$300 million of notes in this offering (or sell additional equity), pursuant to commitments we have obtained from certain of our lenders, such lenders have agreed to increase their committed amount under our revolving credit facility by up to \$300 million effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition. That increased commitment automatically decreases, however, by an amount equal to the principal amount of the notes we sell in this offering. Those lenders’ obligations to increase their credit commitments are subject to certain

[Table of Contents](#)

customary closing conditions, including the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and our offering of the Preferred Units.

Financial Information

We do not as a matter of course make public projections as to future sales, earnings or other results. However, in the context of this

offering, our management has prepared the following estimates for the twelve months ended June 30, 2017 for the Alkali Business. The prospective financial information presented below was not prepared with a view toward complying with the guidelines established by the American Institute of Certified Public Accountants with respect to prospective financial information, but, in the view of our management, was prepared on a reasonable basis, reflects the best currently available estimates and judgments, and presents, to the best of management’s knowledge and belief, the expected course of action and our expected future financial performance.

Neither our independent registered public accountants, nor any other independent registered public accountants, have compiled, examined or performed any procedures with respect to the prospective financial information contained herein, nor have they expressed any opinion or any other form of assurance on such information or its achievability, and assume no responsibility for, and disclaim any association with, the prospective financial information.

The following amounts are, with respect to Genesis, actual results for the six months ended December 31, 2016 and June 30, 2017 and the twelve months ended June 30, 2017, and, with respect to the Alkali Business and for the combined Genesis and Alkali Business, the unaudited estimates of certain key financial results for the twelve months ended June 30, 2017 (in thousands):

	Genesis Six Months Ended December 31, 2016	Genesis Six Months Ended June 30, 2017	Genesis Twelve Months Ended June 30, 2017	Alkali Twelve Months Ended June 30, 2017	Combined Twelve Months Ended June 30, 2017
Net Income	\$ 54,219	\$ 60,823	\$ 115,042	\$ 52,046	\$ 167,088
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 264,942	\$ 257,781	\$ 522,723	\$ 165,798	\$ 688,521

Please see “— Non-GAAP Financial Measures” for additional qualifications regarding the use of Adjusted EBITDA including a reconciliation of our estimated Adjusted EBITDA to estimated Net Income. For the Alkali Business, a reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA to net income has not been provided since it is not available. Please see our historical financial statements and accompanying notes incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement.

Our Offices

Our principal executive offices are located at 919 Milam, Suite 2100, Houston, Texas 77002, and the phone number at this address is (713) 860-2500.

Ownership Structure

We conduct our operations and own our operating assets through subsidiaries and joint ventures. As is customary with publicly traded limited partnerships, Genesis Energy, LLC, our general partner, is responsible for operating our business, including providing all necessary personnel and other resources.

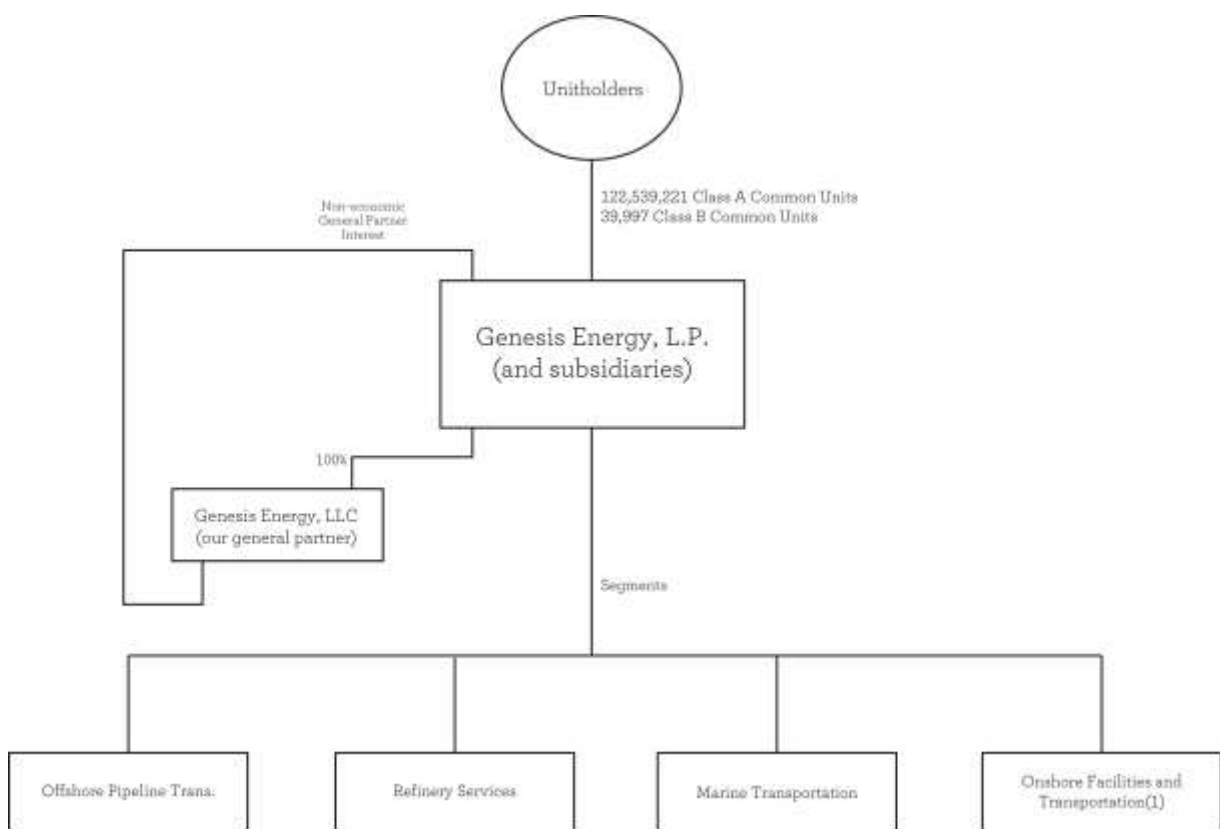
Genesis Energy, LLC is a holding company with employees, but with no independent assets or operations other than its general partner interest in us and several of our subsidiaries. Our general partner is dependent upon the cash distributions it receives from us to service any obligations it may incur.

Finance Corp., a subsidiary that we formed as a Delaware corporation in November 2006, has no material assets or liabilities, other than liabilities as a co-issuer of \$350 million aggregate principal amount of our 5.750% senior notes due 2021 (the “2021 notes”), \$750 million aggregate principal amount of our

Table of Contents

6.750% senior notes due 2022 (the “2022 notes”), \$400 million aggregate principal amount of our 6.000% senior notes due 2023 (the “2023 notes”) and \$350 million aggregate principal amount of our 5.625% senior notes due 2024 (the “2024 notes” and together with the 2021 notes, the 2022 notes, and the 2023 notes, our “existing notes”), and as a guarantor of our credit agreement. Its activities are limited to co-issuing our existing notes and the notes offered hereby and engaging in other activities incidental thereto.

Below is a chart depicting our ownership structure without giving effect to the private placement of the Preferred Units or the Alkali Business Acquisition.



Finance Corp. will be a co-issuer of the notes and is a co-issuer of our existing notes and a guarantor of our credit agreement. Other than Genesis Free State Pipeline, LLC, Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC, Independence Hub, LLC and certain immaterial consolidated subsidiaries designated as unrestricted subsidiaries under our existing notes and credit agreement, all of our other subsidiaries will be guarantors of the notes and are also guarantors of our existing notes and credit agreement. For the twelve months ended December 31, 2016, Genesis Free State Pipeline, LLC, Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC and Independence Hub, LLC together comprised approximately 1% of our consolidated revenues and approximately 5% of our segment margin.

(1) Formerly known as our supply and logistics segment.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Offering

The following is a brief summary of some of the terms of this offering. Certain of the terms and conditions described below are subject to important limitations and exceptions. The “Description of Notes” section of this prospectus supplement contains a more detailed description of the terms and conditions of the notes.

Issuers	Genesis Energy, L.P. and Genesis Energy Finance Corporation. Genesis Energy Finance Corporation, a Delaware corporation, is a subsidiary of Genesis Energy, L.P. that has no material assets or liabilities, other than liabilities as a co-issuer of both the notes and our existing notes, and as a guarantor of our credit agreement.
Notes Offered	\$550,000,000 aggregate principal amount of 6.50% senior notes due 2025.
Maturity Date	October 1, 2025.
Interest	Interest on the notes will accrue at a rate of 6.50% per annum. Interest on the notes will be payable semi-annually in cash in arrears on April 1 and October 1 of each year, commencing

Ranking	April 1, 2018. The notes will be our unsecured senior obligations. Accordingly, they will rank: • equal in right of payment to all of our existing and future senior unsecured indebtedness, including our existing notes; • effectively junior in right of payment to all existing and future secured indebtedness, including indebtedness under our revolving credit facility, to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness; • structurally subordinated to all existing and future indebtedness and other liabilities of any non-guarantor subsidiaries; and • senior in right of payment to all existing and future subordinated indebtedness. At June 30, 2017, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the Alkali Business Acquisition and the application of the proceeds from issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility, in each case as described herein, we would have had approximately \$3,670 million of total indebtedness (including \$1.0 million in respect of outstanding letters of credit), approximately \$1,270 million of which (including \$1.0 million in respect of outstanding letters of credit) would be secured indebtedness to which the notes would be effectively junior (to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness), and we would have had approximately \$430 million of borrowing capacity available under our \$1.7 billion revolving credit facility, subject to
---------	---

[Table of Contents](#)

Subsidiary Guarantees	compliance with financial covenants, for additional secured borrowings, which would be effectively senior to the notes. On August 2, 2017, we received commitments to increase the committed amount under our revolving credit facility from \$1.7 billion to \$2.0 billion conditioned upon and effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and our offering of the Preferred Units, but such increased commitment automatically decreases by an amount equal to the principal amount of the notes sold in this offering. See “Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business — Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition.” Each of our existing subsidiaries, other than Finance Corp. and our unrestricted subsidiaries, will guarantee the notes initially and for so long as each such subsidiary guarantees our revolving credit facility. If the Alkali Business Acquisition closes, Alkali will become a restricted subsidiary and guarantee the notes. Not all of our future subsidiaries will have to become guarantors. If we cannot make payments on the notes when they are due, the guarantor subsidiaries, if any, must make them instead. Please see “Description of Notes — Subsidiary Guarantees.” Each guarantee will rank: • equal in right of payment to all existing and future senior unsecured indebtedness of the guarantor subsidiary, including its guarantee of the existing notes; • effectively junior in right of payment to all existing and future secured indebtedness of the guarantor subsidiary, including its guarantee of indebtedness under our revolving credit facility, to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness; and • senior in right of payment to any future subordinated indebtedness of the guarantor subsidiary.
-----------------------	---

At June 30, 2017, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the Alkali Business Acquisition and the application of the proceeds from issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility, in each case as described herein, the subsidiary guarantees of the notes would have been effectively junior to \$1,270 million of secured indebtedness (to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness), all of which would constitute guarantees of indebtedness under our revolving credit facility (including \$1.0 million in respect of outstanding letters of credit). Please see “Description of Certain Other Indebtedness.”

On the issue date, Genesis Free State Pipeline, LLC, Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC, Independence Hub, LLC, Poseidon Oil Pipeline Company, L.L.C. and certain immaterial consolidated subsidiaries will be designated as unrestricted subsidiaries and, accordingly, will not guarantee the notes. If the Alkali Business

[Table of Contents](#)

	Acquisition closes, we will own a one-third equity interest in Natronix Technologies, LLC, which will not be classified as a subsidiary or guaranty the notes.
Use of Proceeds	If the Alkali Business Acquisition is completed, we will use the proceeds from the issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility to fund the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition. Pending the potential use of the net proceeds from this offering to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition, we intend to use the net proceeds from this offering to make short-term liquid investments or for the repayment of outstanding borrowings under our revolving credit agreement, at our discretion. If the Alkali Business Acquisition is not completed, we will effect the special mandatory redemption of all the notes, as described below. Affiliates of certain underwriters of the notes are lenders under our revolving credit facility and, accordingly, may receive a portion of the net proceeds of this offering. Please see “Underwriting.”
Special Mandatory Redemption	If the stock purchase agreement for the Alkali Business Acquisition is terminated prior to the closing of such acquisition, or if the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition does not otherwise occur on or prior to March 31, 2018, we will redeem all of the notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the aggregate issue price of the notes (exclusive of accrued interest if settlement occurs after August 14, 2017), plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the redemption date.
Optional Redemption	We will have the option to redeem the notes, in whole or in part, at any time on or after October 1, 2020, at the redemption prices described in this prospectus supplement under the heading “Description of Notes — Optional Redemption,” together with any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption. In addition, before October 1, 2020, we may redeem all or any part of the notes at the make-whole price set forth under “Description of Notes — Optional Redemption,” plus any accrued and unpaid interest to the date of redemption. In addition, before October 1, 2020, we may, at any time or from time to time, redeem up to 35% of the aggregate principal amount of the notes in an amount not greater than the net proceeds of a public or private equity offering at a redemption price of 106.50% of the principal amount of the notes, plus any accrued and unpaid interest to the date of redemption, if at least 65% of the aggregate principal amount of the notes issued under the indenture governing the notes remains outstanding immediately after such redemption and the redemption occurs within 120 days of the closing date of such equity offering.

[Table of Contents](#)

Change of Control	If we experience certain kinds of changes of control, in certain cases, followed by a rating decline within 60 days, each holder of notes may require us to repurchase all or a portion of its notes for cash at a price equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount of such notes, plus any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of repurchase.
Certain Covenants	The indenture governing the notes contains covenants that, among other things, limit our ability and the ability of our restricted subsidiaries to: • pay distributions or dividends on, or purchase, redeem or otherwise acquire, equity interests; • make certain investments; • incur additional indebtedness or liens; • sell certain assets or merge with or into other companies; • engage in transactions with affiliates; • enter into sale and leaseback transactions; and • engage in an unrelated business. These covenants are subject to important exceptions and qualifications. In addition, substantially all of the covenants will be terminated before the notes mature if both of two specified ratings agencies assign the notes an investment grade rating in the future and no events of default exist under the indenture governing the notes. Please see “Description of Notes — Certain Covenants — Covenant Termination.”
Risk Factors	You should read “Risk Factors” in this prospectus supplement and found in the documents incorporated herein by reference, as well as the other cautionary statements throughout this prospectus supplement, to ensure you understand the risks associated with an investment in the notes.
Trustee	U.S. Bank National Association.

[Table of Contents](#)

Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges						
The following table sets forth our ratio of earnings to fixed charges for the periods indicated:						
	Year ended December 31,					Quarter-ended
	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	June 30, 2017
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges	3.2	2.4	2.4	4.6	1.8	1.8
For the purpose of computing the ratio of earnings to fixed charges, earnings are comprised of income from continuing operations of consolidated subsidiaries before provision for income taxes and adjustment for non-controlling interests in consolidated subsidiaries or income or loss from equity investees, less capitalized interest, plus depreciation of capitalized interest, dividends from companies accounted						

for using the equity method, and fixed charges. Fixed charges are comprised of interest on long-term debt plus capitalized interest, amortization of capitalized costs related to indebtedness, and rental expense representative of an interest factor.

[Table of Contents](#)

GENESIS ENERGY, L.P. SUMMARY HISTORICAL FINANCIAL DATA

The summary historical financial data for Genesis Energy, L.P. was derived from our historical financial statements and the related notes incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement. The summary historical financial data do not purport to project our results of operations or financial position for any future period or as of any date and are not necessarily indicative of financial results to be achieved in future periods. You should read the summary financial data below together with our “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our historical consolidated financial statements and related notes incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement.

The historical consolidated financial data as of December 31, 2016 and 2015 and for the fiscal years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 have been audited. The historical consolidated financial statements as of June 30, 2017 and 2016 and for the six months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 are unaudited. We believe that all material adjustments that consist only of normal recurring adjustments necessary for the fair presentation of its interim results have been included. Results of operations for any interim period are not necessarily indicative of or results of operations for the entire fiscal year.

	Historical Six Months Ended June 30,		Historical Year Ended December 31,	
	2017	2016	2016	2015
Income Statement Data (in millions except per Common Unit amounts):				
Revenues:				
Offshore pipeline transportation	\$ 162.8	\$ 155.1	\$ 334.7	\$ 140.2
Onshore facilities and transportation	467.8	480.9	993.3	1,689.6
Refinery services	88.1	83.9	171.5	177.9
Marine transportation	103.5	104.6	213.0	238.8
Total revenue	<u>\$ 822.2</u>	<u>\$ 824.4</u>	<u>\$1,712.5</u>	<u>\$2,246.5</u>
Equity in earnings of equity investees	\$ 21.8	\$ 22.8	\$ 47.9	\$ 54.5
Net Income after income taxes	\$ 60.5	\$ 58.8	\$ 111.1	\$ 421.6
Net Income after income taxes attributable to Genesis Energy, L.P.	\$ 60.8	\$ 59.0	\$ 113.2	\$ 422.5
Net Income after income taxes attributable to Genesis Energy, L.P. per Common Unit	\$ 0.50	\$ 0.54	\$ 1.00	\$ 4.10
Cash distributions declared per Common Unit	\$ 1.4425	\$ 1.3625	\$ 2.7725	\$ 2.53
Balance Sheet Data (at end of period) (in millions):				
Current assets	\$ 327.7	\$ 372.5	\$ 359.6	\$ 306.3
Total assets	\$5,640.4	\$5,665.8	\$5,702.6	\$5,459.6
Long-term liabilities	\$3,253.3	\$3,464.7	\$3,321.7	\$3,136.7
Total partners’ capital	\$2,149.8	\$1,933.5	\$2,120.0	\$2,020.8

[Table of Contents](#)

Reconciliation of Adjusted EBITDA to Net Income

The following table reconciles our Adjusted EBITDA to Net Income for the six months ended December 31, 2016 and June 30, 2017 and the twelve months ended June 30, 2017:

GENESIS ENERGY, L.P.
RECONCILIATION OF ADJUSTED EBITDA TO NET INCOME – UNAUDITED
(in thousands)

	Six months Ended December 31, 2016	Six months Ended June 30, 2017	Twelve months Ended June 30, 2017
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 264,942	\$ 257,781	\$ 522,723
Depreciation, amortization and accretion	(116,337)	(117,777)	(234,114)
Interest expense, net	(70,025)	(74,729)	(144,754)
Cash expenditures not included in Adjusted EBITDA or net income	(637)	(878)	(1,515)
Adjustment to exclude distributable cash generated by equity investees not included in income and include equity in investees net income	(17,521)	(18,430)	(35,951)
Gain on sale of assets	—	26,684	26,684
Non-cash provision for leased items no longer in use	—	(12,589)	(12,589)
Differences in timing of cash receipts for certain contractual arrangements(1)	3,624	5,847	9,471
Other non-cash items	(8,495)	(4,528)	(13,023)
Income tax expense	(1,332)	(558)	(1,890)
Net income attributable to Genesis Energy, L.P.	54,219	60,823	115,042

(1) Certain cash payments received from customers under certain of our minimum payment obligation contracts are not recognized as revenue under GAAP in the period in which such payments are received.

[Table of Contents](#)

Reconciliation of Cash Flows from Operating Activities to Adjusted EBITDA

The following table reconciles our net cash flows from operating activities to Adjusted EBITDA for the six months ended December 31, 2016 and June 30, 2017 and the twelve months ended June 30, 2017:

GENESIS ENERGY, L.P.
RECONCILIATION OF CASH FLOWS FROM OPERATING ACTIVITIES TO ADJUSTED EBITDA – UNAUDITED
(in thousands)

	Six months Ended December 31, 2016	Six months Ended June 30, 2017	Twelve months Ended June 30, 2017
Cash Flows from Operating Activities	\$ 194,666	\$183,954	\$378,620
Interest Expense	70,025	74,729	144,754
Amortization of debt issuance costs and discount	(5,146)	(5,260)	(10,406)
Effects of available cash from equity method investees not included in operating cash flows	9,502	10,323	19,825
Net effect of changes in components of operating assets and liabilities not included in calculation of Adjusted EBITDA	1,865	(8,313)	(6,448)
Non-cash effect of equity based compensation expense	(3,037)	1,104	(1,933)
Expenses related to acquiring or constructing growth capital assets	942	914	1,856

Differences in timing of cash receipts for certain contractual arrangements(1)	(7,248)	(5,847)	(13,095)
Other items, net	3,373	6,177	9,550
Adjusted EBITDA	264,942	257,781	522,723

(1) Certain cash payments received from customers under certain of our minimum payment obligation contracts are not recognized as revenue under GAAP in the period in which such payments are received.

[Table of Contents](#)

Non-GAAP Financial Measures

We have presented the non-generally accepted accounting principle (non-GAAP) financial measure of Adjusted EBITDA in this prospectus supplement. Our non-GAAP financial measure should not be considered (i) as an alternative to GAAP measures of liquidity or financial performance or (ii) as being singularly important in any particular context; it should be considered in a broad context with other quantitative and qualitative information. Our Adjusted EBITDA measure is just one of the relevant data points considered from time to time.

When evaluating our performance and making decisions regarding our future direction and actions (including making discretionary payments, such as quarterly distributions) our board of directors and management team have access to a wide range of historical and forecasted qualitative and quantitative information, such as our financial statements; operational information; various non-GAAP measures; internal forecasts; credit metrics; analyst opinions; performance, liquidity and similar measures; income; cash flow; and expectations for us, and certain information regarding some of our peers. Additionally, our board of directors and management team analyze, and place different weight on, various factors from time to time. We believe that investors benefit from having access to the same financial measures being utilized by management, lenders, analysts and other market participants. We attempt to provide adequate information to allow each individual investor and other external user to reach her/his own conclusions regarding our actions without providing so much information as to overwhelm or confuse such investor or other external user.

Adjusted EBITDA

Purposes, Uses and Definition

Adjusted EBITDA is commonly used as a supplemental financial measure by management and by external users of financial statements such as investors, commercial banks, research analysts and rating agencies, to aid in assessing, among other things:

- (1) the financial performance of our assets without regard to financing methods, capital structures or historical cost basis;
- (2) our operating performance as compared to those of other companies in the midstream energy industry, without regard to financing and capital structure;
- (3) the viability of potential projects, including our cash and overall return on alternative capital investments as compared to those of other companies in the midstream energy industry;
- (4) the ability of our assets to generate cash sufficient to satisfy certain non-discretionary cash requirements, including interest payments and certain maintenance capital requirements; and
- (5) our ability to make certain discretionary payments, such as distributions on our units, growth capital expenditures, certain maintenance capital expenditures and early payments of indebtedness.

We define Adjusted EBITDA (“Adjusted EBITDA”) as net income or loss plus net interest expense and income taxes, and eliminating non-cash revenues, expenses, gains, losses and charges (such as depreciation and amortization, unrealized gain or loss on derivative transactions not designated as hedges for accounting purposes, gain or loss on sale of non-surplus assets and equity based compensation expense that is not settled in cash), plus or minus certain other items, the most significant of which tend to be (a) the substitution of distributable cash generated by our equity investees in lieu of our equity income attributable to our equity investees (includes distributions attributable to the quarter and received during or promptly following such quarter), (b) the elimination of expenses related to acquiring or constructing assets that provide new sources of cash flows, and (c) the elimination of certain litigation expenses that are not deducted to determine our Adjusted EBITDA under our senior secured credit facility.

[Table of Contents](#)

RISK FACTORS

An investment in the notes involves risk. We urge you to read and consider carefully the following risks, the risk factors included under the caption “Risk Factors” beginning on page 2 of the accompanying base prospectus and those risks discussed in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, which risk factors are incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement, together with all of the other information included or incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement, before deciding whether to invest in the notes. If any of these risks were to occur, our business, financial condition or results of operations could be materially and adversely affected. In such case, our ability to meet our obligations under the notes could be materially affected. You could lose all or part of your investment in, or fail to achieve the expected return on, the notes.

Risks Relating to the Notes and this Offering

We may be unable to generate sufficient cash to service all of our indebtedness, including the notes, the existing notes and our indebtedness under our credit agreement, and may be forced to take other actions to satisfy our obligations under our indebtedness, which may be unsuccessful.

Our ability to make scheduled payments on, or to refinance, our debt obligations depends on our financial and operating performance, which is subject to prevailing economic and competitive conditions and to certain financial, business and other factors beyond our control. We cannot assure you that we will maintain a level of cash flows from operating activities sufficient to permit us to pay the principal, premium, if any, and interest on our indebtedness, including the notes offered hereby.

If our cash flows and capital resources are insufficient to fund our debt service obligations, we may be forced to reduce or delay capital expenditures, sell assets or operations, seek additional capital or restructure or refinance our indebtedness, including the notes. We cannot assure you that we would be able to take any of these actions, that these actions would be successful and would permit us to meet our scheduled debt service obligations or that these actions would be permitted under the terms of our existing or future debt agreements, including our credit agreement, the indentures governing the existing notes, and the indenture governing the notes. In the absence of such cash flows and capital resources, we could face substantial liquidity problems and might be required to dispose of material assets or operations to meet our debt service and other obligations. Our credit agreement and the indentures governing the existing notes contain, and the indenture governing the notes will contain, restrictions on our ability to dispose of assets. We may be unable to consummate those dispositions or to obtain the proceeds that we could realize from them, and any proceeds may be inadequate to meet any debt service obligations then due. Please see “Description of Certain Other Indebtedness” and “Description of Notes.”

The notes and the related guarantees will be unsecured and effectively junior to our and the guarantors’ existing and future secured indebtedness and to debt of our non-guarantor subsidiaries and joint ventures.

The notes will be our senior unsecured debt and will rank equally in right of payment with all of our other existing and future senior unsecured debt. The notes will be effectively junior to all of our existing and future secured debt (to the extent of the value of the collateral securing that debt) and to the existing and future secured debt of any subsidiaries that guarantee the notes (to the extent of the value of the collateral securing that debt).

The notes will also be structurally subordinated to the existing and future debt of (i) our subsidiaries that do not guarantee the notes, including the Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries and subsidiaries we designate in the future as “Unrestricted Subsidiaries” as described below under “Description of Notes — Brief Description of the Notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees” and (ii) any joint ventures.

If we are involved in any dissolution, liquidation or reorganization, holders of our secured debt would be paid before you receive any amounts due under the notes to the extent of the value of the assets securing

[Table of Contents](#)

such debt and creditors of each of our non-guarantor subsidiaries and joint ventures would be paid before you receive any amounts due under the notes from the proceeds of any remaining assets of such non-guarantor subsidiary or joint venture. In that event, you may be unable to recover any principal or interest you are due under the notes.

At June 30, 2017, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and the application of the proceeds from this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility, in each case as described herein, we would have had approximately \$3,670 million of total indebtedness (including \$1.0

million in respect of outstanding letters of credit), approximately \$1,270 million of which (including \$1.0 million in respect of outstanding letters of credit) would be secured indebtedness to which the notes would be effectively junior (to the extent of the value of the collateral securing such indebtedness), and we would have had approximately \$430 million of borrowing capacity available under our \$1.7 billion credit facility, subject to compliance with financial covenants, for additional secured borrowings under our credit agreement, which would be effectively senior to the notes. On August 2, 2017, we received commitments to increase the committed amount under our revolving credit facility from \$1.7 billion to \$2.0 billion conditioned upon and effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and our offering of the Preferred Units, but such increased commitment automatically reduces for each dollar of notes sold in the offering. See “Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business — Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition.”

Fluctuations in interest rates could adversely affect our business or cause our debt service obligations to increase significantly.

We have exposure to movements in interest rates. The interest rates under our credit agreement are variable. Our results of operations and our cash flows, as well as our access to future capital and our ability to fund our growth strategy, could be adversely affected by significant increases in interest rates. If interest rates increase, our debt service obligations on the variable rate indebtedness would increase even though the amount borrowed remained the same, and our net income and cash available for servicing our indebtedness, including the notes, would decrease.

Our indebtedness could adversely restrict our ability to operate, affect our financial condition and prevent us from complying with our requirements under our debt instruments, including the notes.

As of June 30, 2017, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and the application of the proceeds from this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility, in each case as described herein, we had approximately \$1,270 million outstanding of senior secured indebtedness (including \$1.0 million in respect of outstanding letters of credit).

We must comply with various affirmative and negative covenants contained in our credit agreement and the indentures governing the existing notes and that will be contained in the indenture governing the notes. Among other things, these covenants limit or will limit our ability to:

- incur additional indebtedness or liens;
- make payments in respect of or redeem or acquire any debt or equity issued by us;
- sell assets;
- make loans or investments;
- make guarantees;
- enter into any hedging agreement for speculative purposes;
- acquire or be acquired by other companies; and
- amend some of our contracts.

[Table of Contents](#)

The restrictions under our indebtedness may prevent us from engaging in certain transactions that might otherwise be considered beneficial to us and could have other important consequences to noteholders. For example, they could:

- increase our vulnerability to general adverse economic and industry conditions;
- limit our ability to make distributions; to fund future working capital, capital expenditures and other general partnership requirements; to engage in future acquisitions, construction or development activities; or to otherwise fully realize the value of our assets and opportunities because of the need to dedicate a substantial portion of our cash flows from operations to payments on our indebtedness or to comply with any restrictive terms of our indebtedness;
- limit our flexibility in planning for, or reacting to, changes in our businesses and the industries in which we operate; and
- place us at a competitive disadvantage as compared to our competitors that have less debt.

We may incur additional indebtedness (public or private) in the future under our existing credit agreement, by issuing debt instruments, under new credit agreements, under joint venture credit agreements, under capital leases or synthetic leases, on a project-finance or other basis, or a combination of any of these. If we incur additional indebtedness in the future, it likely would be under our existing credit agreement or under arrangements that may have terms and conditions at least as restrictive as those contained in our existing credit agreement, the indentures governing the existing notes or the indenture governing the notes. Failure to comply with the terms and conditions of any existing or future indebtedness would constitute an event of default. If an event of default occurs, the lenders or noteholders will have the right to accelerate the maturity of such indebtedness and foreclose upon the collateral, if any, securing that indebtedness.

Despite our and our subsidiaries’ current level of indebtedness, we may still be able to incur substantially more debt.

We and our subsidiaries, subject to certain limitations, including those contained in our credit agreement and the indentures governing the existing notes and that will be contained in the indenture governing the notes, may be able to incur additional indebtedness in the future by issuing debt instruments, under new credit agreements, under joint venture credit agreements, under capital leases or synthetic leases, on a project-finance or other basis, or a combination of any of these. For example, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and the application of the proceeds from this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility, in each case as described herein, we expect to be able to borrow approximately an additional \$430 million on a revolving basis under our \$1.7 billion revolving credit facility, subject to compliance with financial covenants. Please see “Description of Certain Other Indebtedness—Revolving Credit Facility.” On August 2, 2017, we received commitments to increase the committed amount under our revolving credit facility from \$1.7 billion to \$2.0 billion conditioned upon and effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and our offering of the Preferred Units, but such increased commitment automatically reduces for each dollar of notes sold in the offering. See “Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business—Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition.”

If new debt is added to our current debt levels, the related risks that we and our subsidiaries currently face could intensify. In addition, the incurrence of additional indebtedness could make it more difficult to satisfy our existing financial obligations, including those relating to the notes.

If we incur any additional indebtedness, including trade payables, that ranks equally with the notes, the holders of that debt will be entitled to share ratably with you in any proceeds distributed in connection with any insolvency, liquidation, reorganization, dissolution or other winding up of our partnership. This may have the effect of reducing the amount of proceeds paid to you. Please see “Description of Notes” and “Description of Certain Other Indebtedness.”

[Table of Contents](#)

We may be unable to repurchase the notes upon a change of control.

Upon the occurrence of certain change of control events, in certain cases, followed by a rating decline within 60 days, we would be required to offer to repurchase all or any part of the existing notes and the notes then outstanding for cash at 101% of the principal amount plus accrued and unpaid interest. The source of funds for any repurchase required as a result of any change of control will be our available cash or cash generated from our operations or other sources, including:

- borrowings under our credit agreement or other sources;
- sales of assets; or
- sales of equity.

We cannot assure you that sufficient funds would be available at the time of any change of control to repurchase your notes after first repaying any of our senior debt that may exist at the time. In addition, restrictions under our credit agreement or any future credit facilities will not allow such repurchases. Additionally, a “change of control” (as defined in the indenture governing the notes) will be an event of default under our credit agreement, which would permit the lenders to accelerate the debt outstanding under the credit agreement. Finally, using available cash to fund the potential consequences of a change of control may impair our ability to obtain additional financing in the future, which could have a negative impact on our ability to conduct our business operations.

Holders of notes do not have the right to require us to repurchase notes following certain kinds of change of control events unless such a change of control event is followed by a rating decline.

Holders of notes do not have the right to require us to repurchase notes following certain kinds of change of control events unless such a change of control event is followed by a rating decline. Moreover, because the change of control offer provisions of our existing senior notes do not include a requirement that the change of control event be followed by a rating decline in order to be triggered, we may be obligated to offer to purchase our existing senior notes following a change of control event that is not followed by a rating decline, even though holders of notes would not have such right.

The guarantee of a subsidiary could be voided if it constitutes a fraudulent transfer under U.S. bankruptcy or similar state law, which would prevent the holders of the notes from relying on that subsidiary to satisfy claims.

Under U.S. bankruptcy law and comparable provisions of state fraudulent transfer laws, our subsidiary guarantees can be voided, or claims under the guarantee of a subsidiary may be further subordinated to all other debts of that subsidiary guarantor if, among other things, the subsidiary guarantor, at the time it incurred the indebtedness evidenced by its guarantee or, in some states, when payments become due under the guarantee, received less than reasonably equivalent value or fair consideration for the incurrence of the guarantee and:

- was insolvent or rendered insolvent by reason of such incurrence;
- was engaged in a business or transaction for which the guarantor’s remaining assets constituted unreasonably small capital; or

- intended to incur, or believed that it would incur, debts beyond its ability to pay those debts as they mature.

The guarantee of a subsidiary may also be voided, without regard to the above factors, if a court found that the subsidiary guarantor entered into the guarantee with the actual intent to hinder, delay or defraud its creditors.

A court would likely find that a subsidiary guarantor did not receive reasonably equivalent value or fair consideration for its guarantee if that subsidiary guarantor did not substantially benefit directly or indirectly from the issuance of the guarantees. If a court were to void a subsidiary guarantee, you would no longer have a claim against that subsidiary guarantor. Sufficient funds to repay the notes may not be available from other sources, including the remaining subsidiary guarantors, if any. In addition, the court might direct you to repay any amounts that you already received from that subsidiary guarantor.

[Table of Contents](#)

The measures of insolvency for purposes of fraudulent transfer laws vary depending upon the governing law. Generally, a guarantor would be considered insolvent if:

- the sum of its debts, including contingent liabilities, were greater than the fair saleable value of all its assets;
- the present fair saleable value of its assets were less than the amount that would be required to pay its probable liability on its existing debts, including contingent liabilities, as they become absolute and mature; or
- it could not pay its debts as they become due.

Each subsidiary guarantee contains a provision intended to limit the subsidiary guarantor’s liability to the maximum amount that it could incur without causing the incurrence of obligations under its subsidiary guarantee to be a fraudulent transfer. Such provision may not be effective to protect the subsidiary guarantees from being voided under fraudulent transfer law.

Many of the covenants contained in the indenture governing the notes will be terminated if the notes are rated investment grade by both Standard & Poor’s and Moody’s and no default or event of default has occurred and is continuing.

Many of the covenants in the indenture governing the notes will be terminated if the notes are rated investment grade by both Standard & Poor’s and Moody’s provided at such time no event of default has occurred and is continuing. These covenants will include those that restrict, among other things, our ability to pay dividends, incur debt and to enter into certain other transactions. There can be no assurance that the notes will ever be rated investment grade. However, termination of these covenants would allow us to engage in certain transactions that would not have been permitted while these covenants were in force. Please see “Description of Notes — Certain Covenants — Covenant Termination.”

A financial failure by us or our subsidiaries may result in the assets of any or all of those entities becoming subject to the claims of all creditors of those entities.

A financial failure by us or our subsidiaries could affect payment of the notes if a bankruptcy court were to substantively consolidate us and our subsidiaries. If a bankruptcy court substantively consolidated us and our subsidiaries, the assets of each entity would become subject to the claims of creditors of all entities. This would expose holders of notes not only to the usual impairments arising from bankruptcy, but also to potential dilution of the amount ultimately recoverable because of the larger creditor base. Furthermore, forced restructuring of the notes could occur through the “cram-down” provisions of the U.S. bankruptcy code. Under these provisions, the notes could be restructured over your objections as to their general terms, primarily interest rate and maturity.

The interruption of distributions to us from our subsidiaries and joint ventures may affect our ability to make payments on our commitments, including the notes.

We are a holding company. As such, our primary assets are the equity interests in our subsidiaries and joint ventures. Consequently, our ability to fund our commitments, including payments on the notes, depends upon the earnings and cash flows of our subsidiaries and joint ventures and the distribution of that cash to us. Distributions from our joint ventures are subject to the discretion of their respective management committees. Further, each joint venture’s charter documents typically vest in its management committee sole discretion regarding distributions. Accordingly, our joint ventures may not continue to make distributions to us at current levels or at all.

We distribute all of our available cash to our unitholders, which may limit the cash available to service the notes or repay them at maturity.

Subject to the limitations on restricted payments contained in our credit agreement and the indentures governing the existing notes and that will be contained in the indenture governing the notes, we will

[Table of Contents](#)

distribute all of our “available cash” each quarter to our unitholders. “Available cash” is defined in our limited partnership agreement. As a result, we may not accumulate significant amounts of cash. If our board of directors fails to establish sufficient reserves, these distributions could significantly reduce the cash available to us in subsequent periods to make payments on the notes.

Restrictive covenants under the indentures governing our existing notes, our credit agreement and the indenture governing the notes may adversely affect our operations.

Our credit agreement and the indentures governing our existing notes contain, and the indenture governing the notes will contain, and any future indebtedness we incur may contain, a number of restrictive covenants that impose or will impose significant operating and financial restrictions on us, including restrictions on our ability to, among other things:

- sell assets, including equity interests in our subsidiaries;
- pay distributions on, redeem or repurchase our units or redeem or repurchase our subordinated debt;
- make investments;
- incur or guarantee additional indebtedness or issue preferred units;
- create or incur certain liens;
- enter into agreements that restrict distributions or other payments from our restricted subsidiaries to us;
- consolidate, merge or transfer all or substantially all of our assets;
- engage in transactions with affiliates;
- create unrestricted subsidiaries;
- enter into sale and leaseback transactions; and
- engage in certain business activities.

As a result of these covenants, we are limited in the manner in which we conduct our business, and we may be unable to engage in favorable business activities or to finance future operations or capital needs.

There may be no public trading market for the notes.

The notes are a new issue of securities for which there is currently no established trading market. A market for the notes may not develop or, if one does develop, it may not be maintained. If a market develops, the notes could trade at prices that may be higher or lower than the initial offering price or the price at which you purchased the notes, depending on many factors, including prevailing interest rates, our financial performance, the amount of indebtedness we have outstanding, the market for similar securities and the time remaining to maturity of your notes. We have not applied and do not intend to apply for listing the notes on any securities exchange or any automated quotation system. If an active market for the notes fails to develop or be sustained, the trading price and liquidity of the notes could be adversely affected.

Ratings of the notes may not reflect all risks of an investment in the notes.

The notes will be rated at time of original issue by at least one nationally recognized statistical rating organization. The ratings of our notes will primarily reflect our perceived financial strength and will change in accordance with the rating of our financial strength. Any rating is not a recommendation to purchase, sell or hold any particular security, including the notes. These ratings do not comment as to market price or suitability for a particular investor. In addition, ratings at any time may be lowered or withdrawn in their entirety. The ratings of the notes may not reflect the potential impact of all risks related to structure and other factors on any trading market for, or trading values of, your notes.

[Table of Contents](#)

An increase in market rates could result in a decrease in the value of the notes.

In general, as market interest rates rise, notes bearing interest at a fixed rate generally decline in value because the premium, if any, over market interest rates will decline. Consequently, if you purchase the notes and market interest rates increase, the market value of your notes may decline. We cannot predict the future level of market interest rates.

Our tax treatment will depend on our status as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes. The tax treatment of publicly traded partnerships could be subject to potential legislative, judicial or administrative changes and differing interpretations, possibly on a retroactive basis.

The present U.S. federal income tax treatment of publicly traded partnerships, including us, may be modified by administrative, legislative or

judicial interpretation at any time. Any modification to the U.S. federal income tax laws and interpretations thereof may or may not be applied retroactively and could make it more difficult or impossible to meet the exception for us to be treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes that is not taxable as a corporation, affect or cause us to change our business activities, affect the tax considerations of an investment in us and change the character or treatment of portions of our income. For example, from time to time, the President and members of Congress propose and consider substantive changes to the existing U.S. federal income tax laws that would adversely affect the tax treatment of certain publicly traded partnerships, including the elimination of partnership tax treatment for publicly traded partnerships. We are unable to predict whether any of these changes, or other proposals, will ultimately be enacted. Additionally, on January 19, 2017, the U.S. Treasury Department and the IRS issued final regulations regarding qualifying income under Section 7704(d)(1)(E) of the Code. We do not believe the final regulations affect our ability to qualify as a publicly traded partnership.

Despite the fact that we are a limited partnership under Delaware law, if we were classified as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes, we would be required to pay U.S. federal income tax on our taxable income at the corporate tax rate, which is currently a maximum of 35%, and would likely pay state income tax and franchise tax at varying rates. Treatment of us as a corporation would cause a material reduction in our anticipated cash flow, which could materially and adversely affect our ability to make payments on the notes.

In addition, recently enacted legislation applicable to partnership tax years beginning after 2017 changes the audit procedures for large partnerships and in certain circumstances would permit the IRS to assess and collect taxes (including any applicable penalties and interest) resulting from partnership-level federal income tax audits directly from us in the year in which the audit is completed. If we are required to make payments of taxes, penalties and interest resulting from audit adjustments, our cash available for payment of principal and interest on the notes might be substantially reduced.

Risks Related to Alkali Business Acquisition

In the event that (i) the Alkali Business Acquisition is not consummated on or before March 31, 2018 or (ii) the stock purchase agreement for the Alkali Business Acquisition is terminated prior to the closing of such acquisition, the Issuers will be required to redeem all of the notes at 100% of the aggregate issue price, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to, but not including, the redemption date, and you may not obtain your expected return on the notes.

The Alkali Business Acquisition may not be consummated within the time frame specified under “Description of Notes — Special Mandatory Redemption.” Consummation of the Alkali Business Acquisition is subject to various closing conditions, certain of which are beyond our control. See “Summary — Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business.” If the stock purchase agreement for the Alkali Business Acquisition is terminated prior to the closing of such acquisition, or the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition does not otherwise occur on or prior to March 31, 2018, we will effect the redemption of all of the notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the aggregate issue price of the notes, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the redemption date. Upon such redemption, you may not be able to

[Table of Contents](#)

reinvest the proceeds from the redemption in an investment that yields comparable returns. In addition, if you purchase the notes at a price greater than the issue price of the notes, you may suffer a loss on your investment. Although we currently expect to consummate the Alkali Business Acquisition in the second half of 2017, we cannot assure you that we will in fact close the Alkali Business Acquisition, or that we will not otherwise have to redeem the notes.

The pro forma financial statements incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement are presented for illustrative purposes only and may not be an indication of our financial condition or results of operations following the Alkali Business Acquisition.

The pro forma financial statements incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement and our statements in “Summary — Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business — Rationale for Alkali Business Acquisition” are presented for illustrative purposes only, are based on various adjustments and assumptions, many of which are preliminary, and may not be an indication of our financial condition or results of operations following the Alkali Business Acquisition. Our actual financial condition and results of operations following the Alkali Business Acquisition may not be consistent with, or evident from, these pro forma financial statements and other statements relating to the Alkali Business Acquisition. In addition, the assumptions used in preparing the pro forma financial data and estimates may not prove to be accurate, and other factors may affect our financial condition or results of operations following the Alkali Business Acquisition. Therefore, investors should refer to our historical financial statements incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement when evaluating an investment in our common units.

As a result of the Alkali Business Acquisition, we anticipate that the scope and size of our operations and business will substantially change. We cannot provide assurance that our expansion in scope and size will be successful.

We anticipate that the Alkali Business Acquisition will substantially expand the scope and size of our business by adding substantial assets and operations to our existing business. The anticipated future growth of our business will impose significant added responsibilities on management, including the need to identify, recruit, train and integrate additional employees. Our senior management’s attention may be diverted from the management of daily operations to the integration of the assets acquired in the Alkali Business Acquisition. Our ability to manage our

business and growth will require us to continue to improve our operational, financial and management controls, reporting systems and procedures. We may also encounter risks, costs and expenses associated with any undisclosed or other unanticipated liabilities and use more cash and other financial resources on integration and implementation activities than we expect. We may not be able to successfully integrate the Alkali Business into our existing operations or realize the expected economic benefits of the Alkali Business Acquisition, which may have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations, including our distributable cash flow.

Failure to successfully combine our business with the assets to be acquired in the Alkali Business Acquisition, or an inaccurate estimate by us of the benefits to be realized from the Alkali Business Acquisition, may adversely affect our future results.

The Alkali Business Acquisition involves potential risks, including:

- the failure to realize expected profitability, growth or accretion;
- environmental or regulatory compliance matters or liabilities;
- antitrust or legal compliance matters or liabilities;
- labor compliance matters or liabilities;
- title or permit issues;
- the incurrence of significant charges, such as impairment of goodwill or other intangible assets, asset devaluation or restructuring charges; and
- the incurrence of unanticipated liabilities and costs for which indemnification is unavailable or inadequate.

S-27

[Table of Contents](#)

The expected benefits from the pending Alkali Business Acquisition may not be realized if our estimates of the potential net cash flows associated with the assets to be acquired by us in the Alkali Business Acquisition are materially inaccurate or if we fail to identify operating issues or liabilities associated with the assets prior to closing. The accuracy of our estimates of the potential net cash flows attributable to such assets is inherently uncertain. If certain issues are identified after closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition, the stock purchase agreement provides for limited recourse against Tronox.

If we close the Alkali Business Acquisition and if any of these risks or unanticipated liabilities or costs were to materialize, any desired benefits of the Alkali Business Acquisition may not be fully realized, if at all, and our future financial condition, results of operations and distributable cash flow could be negatively impacted.

Market conditions, as well as global and regional economic downturns that adversely affect the demand for the Alkali Business’ products, could adversely affect the profitability of its operations and the prices at which the Alkali Business can sell its products, negatively impacting the Alkali Business’ financial results.

The Alkali Business’ revenue and profitability are dependent on sales of soda ash products to customers. Soda ash is a chemical used in many “quality of life” products for which demand historically has been linked to global, regional and local GDP and discretionary spending, which can be negatively impacted by regional and world events or economic and market conditions. Such events can cause a decrease in demand for the Alkali Business’ products and a market decline in prices which may have an adverse effect on the Alkali Business’ results of operations and financial condition. A substantial portion of the Alkali Business’ products and raw materials are commodities that reprice as market supply and demand fundamentals change. Accordingly, product margins and the level of the Alkali Business’ profitability tend to vary with changes in the business cycle.

A significant portion of the demand for the Alkali Business’ products comes from manufacturers of glass and other industrial customers. Companies that operate in these industries, including the automotive, construction and glass container industries, may experience significant fluctuations in demand for their own end products because of economic conditions, changes in consumer demand, or increases in raw material and energy costs. In addition, many large customers of the Alkali Business’ products depend upon the availability of credit on favorable terms to make purchases of raw materials such as soda ash. As interest rates increase or if the Alkali Business’ customers’ creditworthiness deteriorates, this credit may be expensive or difficult to obtain. If these customers cannot obtain credit on favorable terms, they may be forced to reduce their purchases. These and other factors may lead some customers to seek renegotiation or cancellation of their arrangements with the Alkali Business, which could have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business’ results of operations. Additionally, Chinese producers are significant participants in the Alkali Business’ markets and Chinese exports, while suffering from a number of disadvantages, can also affect demand and price for the Alkali Business’ products.

Soda ash prices have been and in the future may be volatile. Price declines for the Alkali Business’ products will negatively affect the Alkali Business’ financial position and results of operations.

Historically, the global market and, to a lesser extent, the domestic market for soda ash have been volatile, and those markets are likely to

remain volatile in the future. Prices for soda ash may fluctuate in response to relatively minor changes in supply and demand, market uncertainty and other factors beyond the Alkali Business’ control.

Factors that affect the price of the Alkali Business’ products include, among other things:

- overall economic conditions;
- the level of customer demand, including in the glassmaking industry;
- the level of production and exports of the Alkali Business’ products globally;
- the level of production and cost of materials used to produce soda ash, including trona ore or synthetic materials, globally;

S-28

[Table of Contents](#)

- the cost of energy consumed in the production of soda ash, including the price of natural gas, electricity and coal;
- the impact of competitors increasing their capacity and exports;
- domestic and foreign governmental relations, regulations and taxes; and
- political conditions or hostilities and unrest in regions where the Alkali Business exports soda ash directly or through American Natural Soda Ash Corporation (“ANSAC”), which is a nonprofit foreign sales association in which the Alkali Business and two other U.S. soda ash producers are members, whose purpose is to promote export sales of U.S. produced soda ash in conformity with the Webb-Pomerene Act.

Volatility in soda ash prices can make it difficult to predict the cash the Alkali Business may have on hand at any given time, and a prolonged period of price declines may materially and adversely affect the Alkali Business’ financial position, liquidity, ability to finance planned capital expenditures and results of operations.

Inaccuracies in the Alkali Business’ estimates of economically recoverable trona reserves could result in lower than expected revenues, higher than expected costs or decreased profitability.

The Alkali Business bases its reserves information on engineering, economic and geological data assembled and analyzed by its staff, which includes various engineers and geologists, and which is periodically reviewed by outside firms. There are numerous uncertainties inherent in estimating quantities and qualities of and costs to mine recoverable reserves, including many factors beyond the Alkali Business’ control. Estimates of economically recoverable coal reserves and net cash flows necessarily depend upon a number of variable factors and assumptions, all of which may vary considerably from actual results such as:

- geological and mining conditions which may not be fully identified by available exploration data or which may differ from experience in current operations;
- historical production from the area compared with production from other similar producing areas; and
- assumed effects of regulation and taxes by governmental agencies and assumptions concerning soda ash prices, operating costs, mining technology improvements, severance and excise taxes, development costs and reclamation costs.

For these reasons, estimates of the economically recoverable quantities and qualities attributable to any particular group of properties, classifications of reserves based on risk of recovery and estimates of net cash flows expected from particular reserves prepared by different engineers or by the same engineers at different times may vary substantially. Actual trona tonnage recovered from identified reserve areas or properties, and revenues and expenditures with respect to its reserves, may vary materially from estimates. These estimates, thus, may not accurately reflect the Alkali Business’ actual reserves. Any inaccuracy in the Alkali Business’ estimates related to its reserves could result in lower than expected revenues, higher than expected costs or decreased profitability.

Increased use of glass substitutes and recycled glass may affect demand for soda ash, which could adversely affect the Alkali Business’ results of operations.

Increased use of glass substitutes or recycled glass in the container industry could have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business’ results of operations and financial condition. Container glass production is one of the principal markets for soda ash. Competition from increased use of glass substitutes, such as plastic and recycled glass, has had a negative effect on demand for soda ash. The Alkali Business believes that the use of containers containing alternative materials such as plastic and aluminum could negatively affect the growth in demand for soda ash.

The Alkali Business’ results of operations may be adversely affected by fluctuations in currency exchange rates.

The Alkali Business often needs to convert currencies it receives for its products into currencies in which it purchases raw materials or pays for services, which could result in a gain or loss depending on

[Table of Contents](#)

fluctuations in exchange rates. In order to manage this risk, the Alkali Business may, from time to time, enter into forward contracts to buy and sell foreign currencies.

Our flexibility in managing the Alkali Business’ labor force may be adversely affected by labor and employment laws and some of the Alkali Business’ labor force has substantial labor union participation, which creates a risk of disruption from labor disputes and new laws affecting employment policies.

Most of the Alkali Business’ employees are covered by a collective bargaining agreement. The Alkali Business is required to consult with, and seek the consent or advice of, various employee groups that represent the Alkali Business’ employees for any changes to the Alkali Business’ activities or employee benefits. This requirement could have a significant impact on the Alkali Business’ flexibility in managing costs and responding to market changes.

Given the nature of the Alkali Business’ mining and processing operations, the Alkali Business faces a material risk of liability, delays and increased cash costs of production from environmental and industrial accidents and operational breakdowns.

The Alkali Business involves significant risks and hazards, including environmental hazards, industrial accidents, and breakdowns of equipment and machinery. The Alkali Business is exposed to hazards associated with soda ash production and the related storage, handling and transportation of raw materials, products and wastes, and its mining operations are subject to flooding and accidents associated with rock transportation equipment and conveyor belts. The Alkali Business mines soda ash in underground mines where its mining methods result in the release of significant amounts of methane which must be removed from the mine by ventilation to ensure safe operations. The Alkali Business’ underground mining and related processing activities at its soda ash operations are subject to the danger of underground fires and explosions and present inherent risks of injury to persons and damage to equipment. Furthermore, during operational breakdowns, the relevant facility may not be fully operational within the anticipated timeframe, which could result in further business losses. The occurrence of any of these or other hazards could delay production, suspend operations, increase repair, maintenance or medical costs and, due to the integration of the Alkali Business’ facilities, could have an adverse effect on the productivity and profitability of a particular processing facility or on the Alkali Business as a whole. Over the Alkali Business’ operating history, the Alkali Business has incurred incidents of this nature. Although insurance policies provide limited coverage for these risks, such policies will not fully cover some of these risks.

There is also a risk that the Alkali Business’ key raw materials or its products may be found to have currently unrecognized toxicological or health-related impact on the environment or on its customers or employees. Such hazards may cause personal injury and loss of life, damage to property and contamination of the environment, which could lead to government fines or work stoppage injunctions and lawsuits by injured persons. If such actions are required, the Alkali Business may have inadequate insurance to cover such claims, or insufficient cash flow to pay for such claims. Such outcomes could adversely affect the Alkali Business’ financial condition and results of operations.

The Alkali Business’ mining activities in Wyoming result in measurable subsidence of the surface above its underground mine workings. The Alkali Business has successfully managed the effect of subsidence so as not to adversely affect other uses of the surface for roads, pipelines and grazing. Should the Alkali Business fail to manage the effects of such subsidence in the future or if regulators and local stakeholders force changes in the Alkali Business’ mining operations to reduce subsidence further, the results of operations of the Alkali Business could be adversely affected.

Equipment upgrades, equipment failures and deterioration of assets may lead to production curtailments, shutdowns or additional expenditures.

The Alkali Business’ operations depend upon critical equipment that require scheduled upgrades and maintenance and may suffer unanticipated breakdowns or failures. As a result, the Alkali Business’ mining

[Table of Contents](#)

operations and processing may be interrupted or curtailed, which could have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business’ results of operations.

In addition, assets critical to the Alkali Business’ mining and processing operations may deteriorate due to wear and tear or otherwise sooner than the Alkali Business currently estimates. Such deterioration may result in additional maintenance spending and additional capital expenditures. If these assets do not generate the amount of future cash flows that the Alkali Business expects, and the Alkali Business is not able to refurbish them or procure replacement assets in an economically feasible manner, the Alkali Business’ future results of operations may be materially and adversely affected.

If any of the equipment on which the Alkali Business depends were severely damaged or were destroyed by fire, abnormal wear and tear,

flooding, or otherwise, the Alkali Business may be unable to replace or repair it in a timely manner or at a reasonable cost, which would impact the Alkali Business' ability to produce and ship its products, which would have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business' financial condition or results of operations.

The Alkali Business' industry and the markets in which it competes are highly competitive. This competition may adversely affect the Alkali Business' results of operations and operating cash flows.

Producers of alkali-products compete based on price, logistics costs and consistent customer service. If the Alkali Business does not maintain its favorable cost position vis-à-vis foreign manufacturers using synthetic production methods, or the Alkali Business' cost position relative to its North American competitors, the Alkali Business' ability to maintain favorable pricing and market share will erode, and sales and profitability could be materially adversely affected. In addition, China is the largest producer of synthetic soda ash in the world and historically has exported only a small percentage of its production. If Chinese producers, which the Alkali Business believes are supported by government subsidies, and other new producers were to begin exporting significant quantities of soda ash, including on non-commercial terms, the supply of soda ash in the global market could materially increase and put downward pressure on pricing.

An increase in the price of energy or other raw materials, or an interruption in the Alkali Business' energy or other raw material supply, could have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business' business, financial condition or results of operations.

The Alkali Business' mining and production processes consume significant amounts of energy and raw materials, the costs of which can be subject to local and worldwide supply and demand, as well as other factors beyond its control. The Alkali Business relies on two fuel sources as the main energy source in its soda ash production process: coal and natural gas. Natural gas prices, and to a lesser extent, coal prices have historically been volatile. The coal industry is under regulatory pressure in the United States, which depending on the direction of such regulations could affect the future availability and cost of coal used in the Alkali Business' operations. The Alkali Business receives coal by rail and truck from a single mine in Western Wyoming under a long term contract. Any disruption at this coal mine or an unexpected increase in the costs of transporting coal to the Alkali Business' facility could adversely affect future results of operations. Furthermore, the price of natural gas could increase as a result of reduced domestic drilling and production activity. Drilling and production operations are subject to extensive federal, state, local and foreign laws and government regulations concerning, among other things, emissions of pollutants and greenhouse gases, hydraulic fracturing, and the handling of natural gas and other substances used in connection with natural gas operations, such as drilling fluids and wastewater. In addition, natural gas operations are subject to extensive federal, state and local taxation. More stringent legislation, regulation or taxation of natural gas drilling activity in the United States could directly curtail such activity or increase the cost of drilling, resulting in reduced levels of drilling activity and therefore increased natural gas prices.

Additionally, any material increase in energy or other raw material prices could adversely impact the Alkali Business' operations by making us less competitive. If U.S. energy prices were to increase to a level where foreign soda ash producers were able to improve their competitive position on a unit cost basis, this would negatively affect the Alkali Business' competitive cost position.

[Table of Contents](#)

A substantial portion of the delivered cost of soda ash to a customer is attributable to transportation and freight costs. Increases in freight costs or a change in rail policies on reimbursement for fleet costs could increase the Alkali Business' costs significantly and adversely affect the Alkali Business' results of operations.

Transportation costs represent a substantial portion of the total delivered cost of soda ash to the customer. While the Alkali Business' soda ash pricing typically does not include freight charges, the Alkali Business arranges for transportation of its soda ash by rail or truck to domestic customers, meaning that the competitive position of the business can be affected by changes in transportation costs or any change in the ways with which railroads incent the Alkali Business to maintain its rail fleet such as by payment of mileage credits. ANSAC prices soda ash on a delivered price basis, meaning that changes in transportation costs, rail and ocean freight, have a direct impact on the prices paid by ANSAC for the Alkali Business' soda ash. As a result, the Alkali Business' business and financial results are sensitive to increases in rail freight, trucking and ocean vessel rates. Increases in transportation costs, including increases resulting from emission control requirements, port taxes and fluctuations in the price of fuel, could make soda ash a less competitive product for glass manufacturers when compared to glass substitutes or recycled glass, or could make the Alkali Business' soda ash less competitive than soda ash produced by competitors that have other means of transportation or are located closer to their customers. The Alkali Business may be unable to pass on its freight and other transportation costs in full because market prices for soda ash are determined by supply and demand forces.

Approximately 90% of the Alkali Business' soda ash is shipped via a single rail line. Interruptions of service on this rail line could adversely affect the results of operations.

For the year ended December 31, 2016, the Alkali Business shipped over 90% of its soda ash from its facility on a single rail line. Rail operations are subject to various risks that may result in a delay or lack of service at the Alkali Business' processing facility, including mechanical problems, extreme weather conditions, work stoppages, labor strikes, terrorist attacks and operating hazards. Moreover, if the Alkali Business' railcar provider's financial condition was adversely affected, it could decide to cease or suspend service to the facility. If the Alkali Business was

unable to ship soda ash by rail, it would be impracticable to ship all of its soda ash by truck, and it would be cost-prohibitive to construct a rail connection to the closest alternative rail line. Any delay or failure in the rail services on which the Alkali Business relies could have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business' financial condition and results of operations.

A significant portion of the Alkali Business' international sales of soda ash are to ANSAC, a U.S. export trade association, and therefore adverse developments at ANSAC or its customers, or in any of the markets in which the Alkali Business makes direct international sales, could adversely affect its ability to compete in certain international markets.

The Alkali Business, along with two other U.S. trona-based soda ash producers, utilizes ANSAC as its exclusive export vehicle for sales to customers in all countries excluding Canada, the European Community, the European Free Trade Association and the South African Customs Union, which provides the Alkali Business with the benefits of large purchases of soda ash and significant economies of scale in managing international sales and logistics. Because ANSAC makes sales to its customers directly and then allocates a portion of such sales to each member, the Alkali Business does not have direct access to ANSAC's customers and the Alkali Business has no direct control over the credit or other terms ANSAC extends to its customers. As a result, the Alkali Business is indirectly vulnerable to ANSAC's customer relationships and the credit and other terms ANSAC extends to its customers. Any adverse change in ANSAC's customer relationships could have a direct impact on ANSAC's ability to make sales and the Alkali Business' ability to make sales to ANSAC. In addition, to the extent ANSAC extends credit or other favorable terms to its customers and those customers subsequently default under sales contracts or otherwise fail to perform, the Alkali Business would have no direct recourse against them.

[Table of Contents](#)

Furthermore, from time to time international competition authorities have conducted inquiries into ANSAC's activities. An unfavorable outcome in any such investigation could result in the Alkali Business having to pay fines or penalties, either on the Alkali Business' own behalf or as a member of ANSAC, or otherwise adversely affect the ability of ANSAC to continue serving export markets. In the event of an unfavorable outcome in any such investigation, the withdrawal of one of the other two members of ANSAC or the dissolution of ANSAC, the Alkali Business would be forced to use alternative methods to facilitate additional direct export sales of soda ash, resulting in less favorable arrangements in respect of logistics or sales. Any of these developments could lead the Alkali Business to incur significant additional costs and may result in lower pricing for its export sales, which could have a negative impact on the Alkali Business' results of operations and financial condition.

The Alkali Business' ore resources and reserve estimates are based on a number of assumptions, including mining and recovery factors, future cash costs of production and ore demand and pricing. As a result, ore resources and reserve quantities actually produced may differ from current estimates.

The mineral resource and reserve estimates of the Alkali Business are estimates of the quantity and ore grades in the Alkali Business' mines based on the interpretation of geological data obtained from drill holes and other sampling techniques, as well as from feasibility studies. The accuracy of these estimates is dependent on the assumptions and judgments made in interpreting the geological data. The assessment of geographical characteristics, such as location, quantity, quality, continuity of geology and grade, is made with varying degrees of confidence in accordance with established guidelines and standards. The Alkali Business uses various exploration techniques, including geophysical surveys and sampling through drilling and trenching, to investigate resources and implement applicable quality assurance and quality control criteria to ensure that data is representative. The Alkali Business' mineral reserves represent the amount of ore that the Alkali Business believes can be economically mined and processed, and are estimated based on a number of factors.

There is significant uncertainty in any mineral reserve or mineral resource estimate. Factors that are beyond the Alkali Business' control, such as the ability to secure mineral rights, the sufficiency of mineralization to support mining and beneficiation practices and the suitability of the market may significantly impact mineral resource and reserve estimates. The actual deposits encountered and the economic viability of mining a deposit may differ materially from the Alkali Business' estimates. Since these mineral resources and reserves are estimates based on assumptions related to factors discussed above, the Alkali Business may revise these estimates in the future as the Alkali Business becomes aware of new developments.

The Alkali Business may be unable to obtain, maintain or renew leases and permits necessary for its soda ash operations, which could adversely affect the Alkali Business' results of operations.

The Alkali Business is required to obtain a number of permits that impose strict regulations on various environmental and operational matters in connection with mining trona ore and producing soda ash products. These include permits issued by various federal, state and local agencies and regulatory bodies. The permitting rules, and the interpretations of these rules, are complex, change frequently and are subject to discretionary interpretations by the Alkali Business' regulators, all of which may make compliance difficult or impractical and may impair the Alkali Business' existing operations or the development of future facilities. The public, including non-governmental organizations, environmental groups and individuals, have certain statutory rights to comment upon and submit objections to requested permits and environmental impact statements prepared in connection with applicable regulations and otherwise engage in the permitting process, including bringing citizen's lawsuits to challenge the issuance or renewal of permits, the validity of environmental impact statements or the performance of mining activities. If permits are

not issued or renewed in a timely fashion or at all or are conditioned in a manner that restricts the Alkali Business’ ability to conduct its operations economically, the Alkali Business’ cash flows may decline, which could limit its ability to pay debt and make distributions.

[Table of Contents](#)

All of the Alkali Business’ soda ash reserves are held under leases with the State of Wyoming, the BLM and Anadarko. As of December 31, 2016, leases covering more than 20% of the Alkali Business’ acreage were scheduled to expire in the next five years. If the Alkali Business is not able to renew its leases, it will have a material adverse effect on results of the Alkali Business’ operations.

Each of those leases requires that minimum royalties or annual rentals be paid regardless of production levels. If the Alkali Business’ operations do not meet production goals, then it could have an adverse effect on the Alkali Business’ operations due to the ongoing requirement to pay minimum royalty payments despite a lack of production and the corresponding net sales.

The royalty rates the Alkali Business pays to its lessors may change upon renewal of such leases. Under the Alkali Business’ leases with Anadarko, the applicable royalty rate may vary based on a most favored nation clause in the license. The applicable royalty rate in the license may be adjusted if the Alkali Business pays a higher royalty rate to certain other mineral rights owners in Sweetwater County, Wyoming. Any increase in the royalty rates the Alkali Business is required to pay to its lessors, or any failure to renew any of its leases, could have a material adverse impact on its results of operations, financial condition or liquidity.

If the Alkali Business is unable to innovate and successfully introduce new products, or new technologies or processes reduce the demand for its products or the price at which it can sell products, the Alkali Business’ profitability could be adversely affected.

The industries and the markets into which the Alkali Business sells its products experience periodic technological change and product improvement. The Alkali Business’ future growth will depend on its ability to gauge the direction of commercial and technological progress in key markets and on the Alkali Business’ ability to fund and successfully develop, produce and market products in such changing markets. The Alkali Business must continue to identify, develop and market innovative products or enhance existing products on a timely basis to maintain profit margins and its competitive position. The Alkali Business may be unable to develop new products or technology, either alone or with third parties, or license intellectual property rights from third parties on a commercially competitive basis. If the Alkali Business fails to keep pace with the evolving technological innovations in its markets on a competitive basis, the Alkali Business’ financial condition and results of operations could be adversely affected.

Changing customer requirements could affect demand for the Alkali Business’ products. Over time, detergent manufacturers have introduced liquid products to replace dry powder detergents that typically include soda ash as a major ingredient. This trend has caused demand for soda ash to fall in this market segment. The growing preference of many food and beverage manufacturers to use plastic containers has reduced the demand for glass containers and the demand for soda ash. Future innovations in glass making, food packaging and detergent manufacture may continue to reduce the demand for soda ash in the future. The Alkali Business cannot predict whether technological innovations will, in the future, result in a lower demand for the Alkali Business’ products or affect the competitiveness of its business. The Alkali Business may be required to invest significant resources to adapt to changing technologies, markets and competitive environments.

The Alkali Business is subject to many environmental, health and safety regulations that may result in unanticipated costs or liabilities, which could reduce the Alkali Business’ profitability.

The Alkali Business’ operations and production facilities are subject to extensive environmental, health and safety laws and regulations at national, international and local levels in numerous jurisdictions relating to use of natural resources, pollution, protection of the environment, mine site remediation, transporting and storing raw materials and finished products, and storing and disposing of hazardous wastes among other materials. Numerous federal, state and local governmental agencies, such as the EPA, issue regulations that often require difficult and costly compliance measures that carry substantial administrative, civil and criminal penalties and may result in injunctive obligations for non-compliance. These laws and regulations may require the acquisition of a permit before mining commences, restrict the types, quantities and concentrations of various substances that can be released into the environment in connection with mining and production activities, limit or prohibit construction or mining activities on certain lands lying within wilderness, wetlands, ecologically sensitive areas, and other protected areas,

[Table of Contents](#)

require action to prevent or remediate pollution from current or former operations, result in the suspension or revocation of necessary permits, licenses and authorizations, require that additional pollution controls be installed and impose substantial liabilities for pollution resulting from the Alkali Business’ operations or related to the Alkali Business’ owned or operated facilities. Liability under such laws and regulations is often strict (i.e., no showing of “fault” is required) and can be joint and several. Moreover, it is not uncommon for neighboring landowners and other third

parties to file claims for personal injury and property damage allegedly caused by the release of hazardous substances or other waste products into the environment. Changes in environmental laws and regulations occur frequently, and any changes that result in more stringent and costly pollution control or waste handling, storage, transport, disposal or cleanup requirements could materially adversely affect our operations and financial position, as well as the soda ash industry in general. Such laws include, in the U.S., the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA) and the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act (CERCLA), governing solid and hazardous waste management, the Clean Air Act (CAA) and the Clean Water Act, protecting air and water resources, the Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA), and in the EU, the Registration, Evaluation, Authorization and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH), for regulation of chemicals in commerce and reporting of potential known adverse effects, and numerous other local, state and federal laws and regulations governing materials transport and packaging. Analogous regimes exist in other parts of the world and there are rules to conform chemical labeling in accordance with the globally harmonized system. Additional new laws and regulations may be enacted or adopted by various regulatory agencies globally. For example, TSCA reform was enacted in June 2016, and the United States Environmental Protection Agency will eventually issue new chemical control regulations.

RCRA, as amended, and comparable state statutes and regulations promulgated thereunder, affect mining and production activities by imposing requirements regarding the generation, transportation, treatment, storage, disposal and cleanup of hazardous and non-hazardous wastes. With federal approval, the individual states administer some or all of the provisions of RCRA, sometimes in conjunction with their own, more stringent requirements. Administrative, civil and criminal penalties can be imposed for failure to comply with waste handling requirements. The Alkali Business believes that it is in substantial compliance with applicable requirements related to waste handling, and that the Alkali Business holds all necessary and up-to-date permits, registrations and other authorizations to the extent that the operations require them under such laws and regulations.

CERCLA, also known as the “Superfund” law, and analogous state laws, generally impose liability, without regard to fault or legality of the original conduct, on classes of persons who are considered to be responsible for the release of a “hazardous substance” into the environment. These persons include the current owner or operator of a contaminated facility, a former owner or operator of the facility at the time of contamination, and those persons that disposed or arranged for the disposal of the hazardous substance at the facility. Under CERCLA and comparable state statutes, persons deemed “responsible parties” are subject to strict liability that, in some circumstances, may be joint and several for the costs of removing or remediating previously disposed hazardous substances (including hazardous substances disposed of or released by prior owners or operators) or property contamination (including groundwater contamination), for damages to natural resources and for the costs of certain health studies. In addition, it is not uncommon for neighboring landowners and other third parties to file claims for personal injury and property damage allegedly caused by the hazardous substances released into the environment. In the course of the Alkali Business’ operations, materials are used that, if released, would be subject to CERCLA and comparable state statutes. Therefore, governmental agencies or third parties may seek to hold the Alkali Business responsible under CERCLA and comparable state statutes for all or part of the costs to clean up sites at which such “hazardous substances” have been released. The Alkali Business is currently addressing certain areas of known contamination on its own properties, none of which the Alkali Business presently anticipates will result in any material costs or adverse impacts on the Alkali Business’ business or operations. The Alkali Business, however, cannot be certain that it will not incur significant costs and liabilities for remediation or damage to property, natural resources or persons as a result of spills or releases from the Alkali Business’ operations or those of a third party

[Table of Contents](#)

The Federal Water Pollution Control Act of 1972, as amended, also known as the “Clean Water Act,” the Safe Drinking Water Act, and analogous state laws and regulations promulgated thereunder impose restrictions and strict controls regarding the unauthorized discharge of pollutants into navigable waters of the United States, as well as state waters. The discharge of pollutants into regulated waters is prohibited, except in accordance with the terms of a permit issued by the EPA or the state. The Clean Water Act and regulations implemented thereunder also prohibit the discharge of dredge and fill material into regulated waters, including jurisdictional wetlands, unless authorized by a permit issued by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. Costs may be associated with the treatment of wastewater or developing and implementing storm water pollution prevention plans, as well as for monitoring and sampling the storm water runoff from certain of the Alkali Business’ facilities. Some states also maintain groundwater protection programs that require permits for discharges or operations that may impact groundwater conditions. Noncompliance with the Clean Water Act or the Safe Drinking Water Act may result in substantial administrative, civil and criminal penalties, as well as injunctive obligations. The Alkali Business believes it is in material compliance with the requirements of each of these laws.

Additionally, the federal CAA, as amended, and comparable state laws and regulations, regulate emissions of various air pollutants through the issuance of permits and the imposition of other requirements. The EPA has developed, and continues to develop, stringent regulations governing emissions of air pollutants at specified sources. New facilities may be required to obtain permits before work can begin, and existing facilities may be required to obtain additional permits and incur capital costs in order to remain in compliance. Federal and state regulatory agencies can impose administrative, civil and criminal penalties for non-compliance with air permits or other requirements of the federal Clean Air Act and associated state laws and regulations. The Alkali Business believes that it is in substantial compliance with all applicable air emissions regulations and that the Alkali Business holds or has timely sought renewal of all necessary and valid construction and operating permits for the Alkali Business’ operations.

The Alkali Business’ management believes that the Alkali Business is in substantial compliance with applicable environmental laws and

regulations and the Alkali Business has not experienced any material adverse effect from compliance with these environmental requirements. This trend, however, may not continue in the future. The costs of compliance with the extensive environmental, health and safety laws and regulations or the inability to obtain, update or renew permits required for operation or expansion of the Alkali Business could reduce its profitability or otherwise adversely affect the Alkali Business. If the Alkali Business fails to comply with the conditions of the Alkali Business' permits governing the production and management of regulated materials, mineral sands mining licenses or leases or the provisions of applicable law, these permits, mining licenses or leases and mining rights could be canceled or suspended, and the Alkali Business could be prevented from obtaining new mining and prospecting rights, which could materially and adversely affect the Alkali Business' business, operating results and financial condition. Additionally, the Alkali Business could incur substantial costs, including fines, damages, criminal or civil sanctions and remediation costs, or experience interruptions in the Alkali Business' operations, for violations arising under these laws and regulations. In the event of a catastrophic incident involving any of the raw materials the Alkali Business uses, or additives or mineral products it produces, the Alkali Business could incur material costs as a result of addressing the consequences of such event. In part of the Alkali Business that sells specialty products to food and pharmaceutical customers, these risks include potential responsibility for the cost of product recalls, whether ordered by governmental authorities or undertaken voluntarily.

Changes to existing laws governing operations, especially changes in laws relating to transportation of mineral resources, the treatment of land and infrastructure, contaminated land, the remediation of mines, tax royalties, exchange control restrictions, environmental remediation, mineral rights, ownership of mining assets, or the rights to prospect and mine may have a material adverse effect on the Alkali Business' future business operations and financial performance. There is risk that onerous conditions may be attached to authorizations in the form of mining rights, water-use licenses, miscellaneous licenses and environmental approvals, or that the grant of these approvals may be delayed or not granted.

S-36

[Table of Contents](#)

The Alkali Business' dependence on burning coal to generate electrical energy and steam could mean that governmental initiatives to limit the emission of greenhouse gas ("GHG") could have an adverse effect in the future on the Alkali Business' costs and therefore the Alkali Business' results of operations.

The Alkali Business is subject to EPA's regulations regarding GHG emissions and, depending upon the nature and scope of any future regulations, could become subject to additional costs or limitations. Current requirements include an obligation to monitor and report the GHG emissions from the Alkali Business' facilities and to comply with the Clean Air Act's Prevention of Significant Deterioration requirements in connection with any new or modified major sources of GHG emissions. The Alkali Business believes its operations are currently in compliance with these obligations. The proposed Clean Power Plan, which would affect existing sources of GHGs in the power generating sector, was published on October 23, 2015. Following publication, more than two dozen states, as well as industry and labor groups, challenged the Clean Power Plan in the D.C. Circuit Court of Appeals. On February 9, 2016, the Supreme Court stayed the implementation of the Clean Power Plan while legal challenges to the rule proceed. In addition, on March 28, 2017, President Trump signed an executive order directing the EPA to review the Clean Power Plan and related rules and, if appropriate, to initiate a rulemaking to rescind or revise the rules consistent with the stated policy of promoting clean and safe development of the nation's energy resources, while at the same time avoiding regulatory burdens that unnecessarily encumber energy production. In addition, several states have taken legal measures to reduce emissions of GHGs, including through the planned development of GHG emission inventories and/or regional GHG "cap and trade" programs. Although the Alkali Business' facilities are not currently subject to any such program, the expansion or further adoption of such programs in jurisdictions where the Alkali Business operates could impose additional compliance obligations on the Alkali Business' facilities. As a result, such programs could result in an increase in fuel or energy costs for the Alkali Business or, if the Alkali Business is directly regulated, an additional cost to acquire necessary allowances.

In December 2015, the United States participated in the 21st Conference of the Parties of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change in Paris, France. The resulting Paris Agreement calls for the parties to undertake "ambitious efforts" to limit the average global temperature, and to conserve and enhance sinks and reservoirs of GHGs. The Agreement went into effect on November 4, 2016. The Agreement establishes a framework for the parties to cooperate and report actions to reduce GHG emissions. On June 1, 2017, however, President Trump announced that the United States would withdraw from the Paris Agreement, and begin negotiations to either re-enter or negotiate an entirely new agreement with more favorable terms for the United States. While President Trump expressed a clear intent to cease implementing the Paris Agreement, it is not clear how the Administration plans to accomplish this goal, whether a new agreement can be negotiated, or what terms would be included in such an agreement. Furthermore, in response to the announcement, many state and local leaders have stated their intent to intensify efforts to uphold the commitments set forth in the international accord. Future costs of compliance with either the existing or future federal or state regulations could materially and adversely affect the Alkali Business' business, operating results and financial condition.

The Alkali Business' inability to acquire, maintain or renew financial assurances related to the reclamation and restoration of mining property could have a material adverse effect on its business, financial condition and results of operations.

Mining operations are generally obligated under federal, state and local laws to restore property in accordance with regulatory standards and an approved reclamation plan after it has been mined, and generally must also maintain financial assurances, such as surety bonds, to secure such obligations. The Alkali Business currently maintains surety bonds in favor of the Wyoming Department of Environmental Quality ("WDEQ") to ensure appropriate reclamation. As of June 30, 2017, the amount of the Alkali Business' surety bonds with the WDEQ was approximately \$80

million. The Land Quality Division of the WDEQ periodically re-evaluates the amount of such bonds, so the current amount is subject to increase.

[Table of Contents](#)

USE OF PROCEEDS

We expect to receive net proceeds from this offering of approximately \$540.5 million, after deducting the underwriters’ discount and payment of estimated offering expenses.

If the Alkali Business Acquisition is completed, we will use the proceeds from the issuance of \$550,000,000 of notes in this offering and from the private placement of our Preferred Units and borrowings under our credit facility to fund the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition. Pending the potential use of the net proceeds from this offering to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition, we intend to use the net proceeds from this offering to make short-term liquid investments or for the repayment of outstanding borrowings under our revolving credit agreement, at our discretion.

If the stock purchase agreement for the Alkali Business Acquisition is terminated at any time prior to the closing of such acquisition, or if the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition does not otherwise occur on or prior to March 31, 2018, we will redeem all of the notes at a redemption price equal to 100% of the aggregate issue price of the notes, plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the redemption date.

Our revolving credit facility matures in May 2022 (or, if we do not refinance or repay in full our 5.750% senior notes due 2021 on or prior to November 15, 2020, on November 15, 2020) and bears interest at a variable rate, which was approximately 4% per annum as of June 30, 2017. Our outstanding borrowings under our revolving credit facility were incurred in connection with organic growth projects, funding capital expenditures and general working capital purposes.

Affiliates of certain underwriters of the notes are lenders under our revolving credit facility and, accordingly, will receive a portion of the net proceeds of this offering. Please see “Underwriting.”

[Table of Contents](#)

CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our consolidated cash and cash equivalents and capitalization as of June 30, 2017:

(1) on a historical basis; and

(2) on a pro forma basis to give effect to (a) the sale and issuance of \$550,000,000 aggregate principal amount of senior notes pursuant to this offering and the application of the estimated \$540.5 million net proceeds therefrom to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition and to pay estimated offering and transaction expenses, (b) the private placement of approximately \$750.0 million of the Preferred Units, at an issue price of \$33.71 per Preferred Unit, and the application of the estimated \$726.1 million net proceeds therefrom to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition and to pay estimated offering and transaction expenses, (c) estimated borrowings of approximately \$58.40 million under our revolving credit facility to fund a portion of the purchase price for the Alkali Business Acquisition and to pay estimated offering and transaction expenses and (d) the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition.

The following table should be read together with our historical financial statements and the related notes thereto that are incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus. This offering of senior notes is not contingent upon the closing of the private placement of the Preferred Units and the closing of the private placement of the Preferred Units is not contingent upon the closing of this offering of notes.

	As of June 30, 2017	
	Historical	Pro forma
	(in millions)	
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 10.1	\$ 10.1
Long-term debt:		
Revolving credit facility due May 2022(1)(2)(3)	1,211.0	1,269.4
2021 Notes	350.0	350.0
2022 Notes	750.0	750.0
2023 Notes	400.0	400.0

2024 Notes	350.0	350.0
2025 Notes offered hereby	—	550.0
Total long-term debt	3,061.0	3,669.4
Partners' capital:		
Common unitholders	2,159.7	2,158.4
Preferred unitholders	—	726.1
Total capitalization	<u>\$ 5,220.7</u>	<u>\$ 6,553.9</u>

- (1) Does not include \$1.0 million in outstanding letters of credit. If we have not refinanced or repaid in full our 5.750% senior notes due 2021 on or prior to November 15, 2020, the maturity date will be November 15, 2020.
- (2) On August 2, 2017, we received commitments to increase the committed amount under our revolving credit facility from \$1.7 billion to \$2.0 billion conditioned upon and effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and our offering of the Preferred Units, but such increased commitment automatically reduces for each dollar of notes sold in the offering. See “Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business—Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition.”
- (3) As of July 31, 2017, we had \$1.2 billion outstanding under our revolving credit facility.

[Table of Contents](#)

COMBINED SELECTED HISTORICAL UNAUDITED FINANCIAL DATA

The combined selected historical unaudited financial data for Genesis and the Alkali Business were derived from historical financial statements and the related notes incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement. The combined selected historical unaudited financial data does not purport to project Genesis’ or the Alkali Business’ results of operations or financial position for any future period or as of any date and are not necessarily indicative of financial results to be achieved in future periods. You should read the selected financial data below together with Genesis’ “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and Genesis’ and the Alkali Business’ historical consolidated financial statements and related notes incorporated by reference into this prospectus supplement.

The combined selected historical unaudited financial data as of March 31, 2017 are unaudited. We believe that all material adjustments that consist only of normal recurring adjustments necessary for the fair statement of its interim results have been included. Results of operations for any interim period are not necessarily indicative of our results of operations for the entire fiscal year.

	Three Months Ended March 31, 2017		
	(in millions)		
	Genesis Energy, L.P.	Alkali Business	Combined
Income Statement Data:			
Revenues	\$ 415.5	\$ 190.6	\$ 606.1
Costs and expenses	\$ 362.9	\$ 174.9	\$ 537.8
Operating Income	\$ 52.6	\$ 15.7	\$ 68.3
Net Income	\$ 27.1	\$ 9.3	\$ 36.4

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI BUSINESS

The Alkali Business owns the largest leasehold position of accessible trona ore reserves in the Green River trona patch, a geological formation holding the vast majority of the world’s accessible trona ore reserves. The Alkali Business holds leases covering approximately 88,000 acres of land, containing an estimated 830 million metric tonnes of proved and probable reserves of trona ore, representing an estimated remaining reserve life of over 100 years based on its 2016 production rate, a soda ash production facility, underground trona ore mines and solution mining operations and related equipment, logistics and other assets. The Alkali Business has been mining trona and producing soda ash in the Green River trona patch for almost 70 years. All of the Alkali Business’ mining and processing activities are conducted at its “Westvaco” and “Granger” facilities in Wyoming. Among other activities, the Alkali Business involves the following activities:

- dry mining of trona ore underground at the Westvaco facility;

- secondary recovery of trona from previously dry mined areas underground at the Westvaco and Granger facilities using solution mining;
- processing trona ore into soda ash and specialty products; and
- marketing, selling and distributing soda ash and specialty products.

Soda Ash Production

Soda ash can be produced naturally by mining and processing trona ore or synthetically by transforming limestone and salt using a chemical process. Based upon industry sources and industry expertise, we believe production of naturally occurring trona ore has a significant competitive advantage compared to synthetic production of soda ash. We believe the costs for producing soda ash from trona ore are more cost competitive than other manufacturing techniques partly because the costs associated with procuring the materials needed for synthetic production are greater than the costs associated with mining trona for trona-based production. Additionally, we believe trona-based production requires less energy and produces fewer undesirable by-products than synthetic production.

We believe the average per short ton cost of production of soda ash (excluding freight and logistics costs) from trona is approximately 50% lower than the average per short ton cost of synthetically producing soda ash. Synthetic production of soda ash also produces by-products that require additional storage and disposal costs.

Dry mining of Trona Ore

Trona ore is dry mined underground at the Westvaco facility, primarily through the operation of a single longwall mining machine. Longwall mining provides higher recovery rates leading to extended mine life compared to other dry mining techniques. Development of the “tunnels” necessary to access and ventilate the Alkali Business’ longwall is through room and pillar mining completed primarily by its fleet of borer miners. The ore is conveyed underground to two hoisting operations where it travels about 1,600 feet vertically to the surface where it is either taken directly into the processing facilities or stored on outdoor stockpiles for future processing.

Secondary Recovery Solution Mining

The Alkali Business solution mines trona at both the Westvaco and Granger sites using secondary recovery techniques. The Alkali Business’ secondary recovery mining starts with the recovery of water streams from its operations and non-trona solids (“insolubles”) remaining from the processing of dry mined trona. The leaching solution comprising water and some insolubles is injected through a number of wells into the old dry mine workings at both the Westvaco and Granger sites. The insolubles settle out while the water travels through the old workings, dissolving trona that remained during previous dry mining. Multiple pumping systems are used to pump the enriched solution to the surface for processing.

S-41

[**Table of Contents**](#)

Processing of Trona into Soda Ash

The Alkali Business’ Mono and Sesqui plants, located at the Westvaco site, convert dry-mined trona into soda ash. Crushing, dissolution in water, filtration, and crystallization techniques are used to produce the desired final soda ash products. In the Mono process, the ore is calcined with heat prior to dissolution, in order to convert the trona to soda ash by the removal of water and carbon dioxide. A final drying step using steam produces a dense soda ash product from the Mono process. In the Alkali Business’ Sesqui plant, the calcination is performed at the end of the process, producing a light density soda ash that is preferred in applications desiring increased absorptivity. The Sesqui process also has the ability to produce refined sodium sesquicarbonate (which the Alkali Business sells under the names S-Carb ® and Sesqui™) for use as a buffer in animal feed formulations and in cleaning and personal care applications.

Solution mined trona is converted into dense soda ash in the Alkali Business’ ELDM operation at the Westvaco site and at its Granger facility. The steps to produce soda ash are similar to the dry mined processes, except the crushing and dissolving steps are eliminated because the trona is already in a water solution as it leaves the mine.

Intermediate, semi-processed products are extracted from the Alkali Business’ soda ash processes at Westvaco at strategic locations for use as feedstocks for production of sodium bicarbonate and 50% caustic soda (NaOH).

Leases and Real Property

The Alkali Business has the right to mine trona through leases it holds from the U.S. Federal government, the State of Wyoming and an affiliate of Anadarko Petroleum (“Anadarko”). Its leases with the U.S. government are issued under the provisions of the Mineral Leasing Act of 1920 (30 U.S.C. 18 et. Seq.) and are administered by the U.S. Bureau of Land Management (“BLM”) and its leases with the state of Wyoming are issued under Wyoming Statutes 36-6-101 et. seq. Anadarko is the successor to rights originally granted to the Union Pacific Railroad in connection with the construction of the first transcontinental railroad in North America.

The Alkali Business pays royalties to the BLM, the State of Wyoming and Anadarko. These royalties are calculated based upon the gross

value of soda ash and related products at a certain stage in the mining process. The Alkali Business is obligated to pay minimum royalties or annual rentals to our lessors regardless of actual sales and in the case of Anadarko to pay royalties in advance based on a formula based on the amount of trona produced and sold in the previous year which is then credited against production royalties owed. The royalty rates the Alkali Business pays to its lessors may change upon renewal of such leases; however, it anticipates being able to renew all material leases at the appropriate time. In the past, the U.S. Congress has passed legislation to cap royalties collected by BLM at a rate lower than the rate stated in our federal leases.

Marketing, Sale and Distribution of Soda Ash and Specialty Products

The Alkali Business sells its soda ash and specialty products to a diverse customer base directly in the United States, Canada, the European Community, the European Free Trade Area and the South African Customs Union. The Alkali Business sells through the American Natural Soda Ash Corporation, or ANSAC, exclusively in all other markets. ANSAC is a nonprofit foreign sales association in which the Alkali Business and two other U.S. soda ash producers are members, whose purpose is to promote export sales of U.S. produced soda ash in conformity with the Webb-Pomerene Act. ANSAC is the Alkali Business’ largest customer.

All of the Alkali Business’ soda ash and specialty products are shipped by rail and truck from its facilities in the Green River Basin. The Alkali Business operates a fleet of covered hopper cars which it uses

[Table of Contents](#)

to deliver most of the sales of soda ash and specialty products from the Green River facilities, all of which are shipped via a single rail line owned and operated by Union Pacific Railroad. Tronox leases these railcars from banks and leasing companies and from FMC under agreements with varying term-lengths, and pursuant to the terms of the stock purchase agreement, the Alkali Business will sublease these rail cars from Tronox. The Alkali Business recovers costs of leasing through mileage credits paid under agreements with customers and carriers in accordance with established industry practices and government requirements.

Its customers, including customers to whom ANSAC makes sales overseas, consist primarily of:

- Glass manufacturing companies, which account for 50% or more of the consumption of soda ash around the world; and
- Chemical and detergent manufacturing companies.

Soda Ash

The Alkali Business sells most of its product as soda ash. Soda ash is the only product the Alkali Business sells to ANSAC. Soda ash is highly valued by manufacturers of flat and container glass because it lowers the temperature of the batch in a glass furnace. It is also valued by detergent manufacturers for its absorptive qualities. In addition, soda ash is used in paper production applications and other consumer and industrial applications. Demand for soda ash in the United States has been relatively flat over the last five years. Sales of soda ash in rapidly developing economies have grown more rapidly as a growing middle class demands more products that use soda ash, such as glass for housing and autos and detergents for cleaning. Based upon third-party historical production statistics worldwide demand (excluding China) for soda ash is projected to grow at a compounded annual growth rate of approximately 2% through 2021.

Specialty Products

The Alkali Business markets sodium bicarbonate to private label manufacturers who package it for sale to retail grocery customers as baking soda. The Alkali Business also sells sodium bicarbonate to manufacturers of packaged baked goods and similar products. Animal feed is an important market for sodium bicarbonate, which is mixed with feed to increase the yield of dairy cows and improve the health of poultry and other livestock. Sodium bicarbonate is also sold to customers who use it in hemodialysis applications and as an active ingredient in pharmaceutical products.

Competitive Conditions

The global market in which the Alkali Business operates is competitive. Competition is based on a number of factors such as price, favorable logistics and consistent customer service. In North America, primary competition is from other U.S.-based natural soda ash operations: Solvay Chemicals, Ciner Resources, L.P., Tata Chemicals Soda Ash Partners in Wyoming, and Searles Valley Minerals, in California. Because of the structural cost advantages of natural soda ash production in the United States, including lower raw material and energy requirements, imports have not been an important source of competition in North America. According to IHS, on average, the cash cost to produce material soda ash has been about half of the cost to produce synthetic soda ash. Sales of soda ash and specialty products outside of North America (principally through ANSAC) face competition from a variety of others, in most cases producers of soda ash using the synthetic method, but to a lesser extent producers of natural soda ash based in Turkey, China and Africa. The Alkali Business’ specialty Alkali products also experience significant competition from producers of sodium bicarbonate, such as Church & Dwight Co., Solvay Chemicals and Natural Soda LLC.

Research and Development

The Alkali Business has research and development capabilities that service its products, and focus on applied research and development of both new and existing processes, which are located in Green River,

S-43

[Table of Contents](#)

Wyoming. New process developments are focused on increased throughput, efficiency gains and general processing equipment-related improvements. Ongoing development of process technology contributes to cost reduction, enhanced production flexibility, increased capacity, and improved consistency of product quality. The Alkali Business is a leader in trona solution mining and its development efforts are focused on continued improvement of extraction and processing efficiencies.

Patents, Trademarks, Trade Secrets and Other Intellectual Property Rights

Protection of the Alkali Business’ proprietary intellectual property is important to the Alkali Business. The Alkali Business relies upon, and has taken steps to secure its unpatented proprietary technology, know-how and other trade secrets. The Alkali Business has long been a leader in new technology development; having patented the leading process for producing dense soda ash from trona in the 1960’s and for producing soda ash from solution feeds in the 1990’s. Much of the core intellectual property used today for production of natural soda ash is no longer subject to patent protection. Accordingly, the Alkali Business holds many of its proprietary process improvements in longwall mining, solution mining, and solution feed processing as trade secrets to protect its technological leadership.

The Alkali Business protects the trademarks that it uses in connection with the products it produces and sells, and has developed value in connection with long-term use of its trademarks; however, there can be no assurance that the trademark registrations will provide meaningful protection against the use of similar trademarks by competitors, or that the value of its trademarks will not be diluted. The same can be said for the Alkali Business’ patents and patent applications, which may in the future be the subject of a challenge regarding validity as well as ownership, requiring a defense of the patent/application through legal proceedings which inherently introduce a degree of business uncertainty and risk. The Alkali Business also uses and relies upon unpatented proprietary knowledge, continuing technological innovation and other trade secrets to develop and maintain its competitive position. The Alkali Business conducts research activities and protects the confidentiality of its trade secrets through reasonable measures, including confidentiality agreements and security procedures. While certain patents held for the Alkali Business’ products and production processes are important to its long-term success, more important is the Alkali Business’ operational knowledge.

Employees

As of March 31, 2017, the Alkali Business had approximately 900 employees. Nearly 70% of the employees at the Alkali Business’ mining and soda ash production facility in Green River, Wyoming are members of a union and subject to a collective bargaining agreement. The Alkali Business considers relations with its employees and labor organizations to be good.

Environmental, Health and Safety Authorizations

The Alkali Business’ facilities and operations are subject to extensive general and industry-specific environmental, health and safety regulations. These regulations include those relating to mine rehabilitation, liability provision, water management, the handling and disposal of hazardous and non-hazardous materials, and occupational health and safety. The various legislation and regulations are subject to a number of internal and external audits. The Alkali Business believes its mineral operations are in compliance, in all material respects, with existing health, safety and environmental legislation and regulations.

The Alkali Business’ mining operations are subject to several mine permits issued by the Land Quality Division of the WDEQ. The WDEQ imposes detailed reclamation obligations on the Alkali Business as a holder of mine permits. The Alkali Business currently maintains surety bonds in favor of the WDEQ to ensure appropriate reclamation. As of June 30, 2017, the amount of the Alkali Business’ surety bonds with the WDEQ was approximately \$80 million. The amount of such bonds is subject to change based upon periodic re-evaluation by the WDEQ.

S-44

[Table of Contents](#)

The health and safety of the Alkali Business’ employees working underground and on the surface are subject to detailed regulation. The safety of the Alkali Business’ operations at Westvaco are regulated by the U.S. Mine Safety and Health Administration (“MSHA”) and the Alkali Business’ Granger Facility by the Wyoming Occupational Safety and Health Administration (“Wyoming OSHA”). MSHA administers the provisions of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 and enforces compliance with that statute’s mandatory safety and health standards. As part of MSHA’s oversight, representatives perform at least four unannounced inspections (approximately once quarterly) each year at

Westvaco. Wyoming OSHA regulates the health and safety of non-mining operations under a plan approved by the U.S. Occupational Health and Safety Administration. When the Granger facility was restarted in 2009 on solution mine feed (i.e. without any miners working underground). Wyoming OSHA assumed responsibility for the facility.

Regulation of Soda Ash Production Plant

The Alkali Business is subject to extensive regulation by federal, state, local and foreign governments. Governmental authorities regulate the generation and treatment of waste and air emissions at its operations and facilities. At many of the Alkali Business’ operations, the Alkali Business also complies with worldwide, voluntary standards developed by the International Organization for Standardization (“ISO”), a nongovernmental organization that promotes the development of standards and serves as a bridging organization for quality and environmental standards, such as ISO 9002 for quality management and ISO 14001 for environmental management.

The Alkali Business is subject to extensive regulation by federal, state, local and foreign governments. U.S. Federal and Wyoming state authorities regulate the generation and treatment of waste and air emissions at the Alkali Business’ operations and facilities. Several of the Alkali Business’ production operations are subject to regulation by the U.S. FDA. The Alkali Business’ sodium bicarbonate plant is a registered facility for the production of food and pharmaceutical grade ingredients and the Alkali Business complies with strict CGMP requirements in its operations. The U.S. Food Safety Modernization Act requires that parts of the Alkali Business’ facility that produce animal nutrition products comply with new more rigorous manufacturing standards. The Alkali Business believes that it materially complies with requirements currently in effect and has a program in place to comply with additional requirements which come into effect in 2017. The Alkali Business also complies with industry standards developed by various private organizations such as U.S. Pharmacopeia, Organic Materials Review Institute and the Orthodox Union. The Alkali Business has also sought and received certification of its Wyoming facilities under ISO 9002.

Chemical Registration

The European Union adopted a regulatory framework for chemicals in 2006 known as Registration, Evaluation and Authorization of Chemicals (“REACH”). Producers and importers of chemical substances must register information regarding the properties of their existing chemical substances with the European Chemicals Agency. The timeline for existing chemical substances to be registered is based on volume and toxicity. The first group of chemical substances was required to be registered in 2010, with additional registrations due in 2013 and 2018. The Alkali Business registered those products requiring registration by the 2010 and 2013 deadlines. The REACH regulations also require chemical substances which are newly imported or manufactured in the European Union to be registered before being placed on the market. The Alkali Business is now focused on the authorization phase of the REACH process, and is making efforts to address “Substances of Very High Concern” and evaluating potential business implications.

The Alkali Business registered soda ash as a foreign producers under REACH prior to the 2010 deadline and will register sodium bicarbonate and sodium sesquicarbonate prior the 2018 deadline if it plans to sell such products in the EU. None of the Alkali Business’ production operations are located in the EU. None of the Alkali Business’ products are listed as a “Substance of Very High Concern” or are proposed for classification as a human health hazard or for restriction.

[Table of Contents](#)

Greenhouse Gas Regulation

The Alkali Business’ operations are subject to regulations that seek to reduce emissions of “greenhouse gases” (“GHGs”). While the United States has not adopted any federal climate change legislation, the United States Environmental Protection Agency (“EPA”) has introduced some GHG programs. See “Risk Factors” beginning on page S-20. For example, under the EPA’s GHG “Tailoring Rule,” expansions or new construction could be subject to the Clean Air Act’s Prevention of Significant Deterioration requirements. Some of the Alkali Business’ facilities are currently subject to GHG emissions monitoring and reporting. The Alkali Business has sought and obtained a GHG emissions permit to cover a planned expansion of its Granger soda ash facility in Wyoming. Changes or additional requirements due to GHG regulations could impact capital and operating costs; however, it is not possible at the present time to estimate any financial impact to these U.S. operating sites.

Moreover, there has been public discussion that climate change may be associated with extreme weather conditions such as more intense hurricanes, thunderstorms, tornadoes and snow or ice storms, as well as rising sea levels. Another possible consequence of climate change is increased volatility in seasonal temperatures. Some studies indicate that climate change could cause some areas to experience temperatures substantially colder than their historical averages. Extreme weather conditions can interfere with the Alkali Business’ production and increase the Alkali Business’ costs and damage resulting from extreme weather may not be fully insured. At this time, however, it is not possible to determine the extent to which climate change may lead to increased storm or weather hazards affecting the Alkali Business’ operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF CERTAIN OTHER INDEBTEDNESS

Revolving Credit Facility

We have a \$1.7 billion revolving credit facility with a group of banks led by Wells Fargo Bank, National Association. Our credit agreement includes an accordion feature whereby the total credit available can be increased up to \$2.0 billion, subject to lender consent and certain other customary conditions. Our credit agreement includes a \$200 million inventory financing sublimit tranche, which we may use to finance the purchase and sale of certain petroleum products subject to sales contracts or hedging agreements and related storage and transportation costs.

On August 2, 2017, we received commitments to increase the committed amount under our revolving credit facility from \$1.7 billion to \$2.0 billion conditioned upon and effective as of the closing of the Alkali Business Acquisition and our offering of the Preferred Units, but such increased commitment automatically reduces for each dollar of notes sold in the offering. See “Pending Acquisition of the Alkali Business — Financing for Alkali Business Acquisition.”

On July 28, 2017, we entered into a sixth amendment to our credit agreement. The sixth amendment, among other things, includes certain technical amendments related to the Alkali Business Acquisition and the financing thereof.

At June 30, 2017, we had approximately \$1.2 billion borrowed under our revolving credit facility, with \$47.6 of that amount designated as a loan under the inventory sublimit tranche. Additionally, we had \$1.0 million in letters of credit outstanding. Due to the revolving nature of loans under our credit facility, additional borrowings and periodic repayments and re-borrowings may be made until the maturity date of May 9, 2022 (or, if we do not refinance or repay in full our 5.750% senior notes due 2021 on or prior to November 15, 2020, November 15, 2020). Our revolving credit facility is secured by substantially all of our assets.

The key terms for rates under our revolving credit facility, which are dependent on our leverage ratio (as defined in the credit agreement), are as follows:

- The interest rate on borrowings may be based on an alternate base rate or a Eurodollar rate, at our option. The alternate base rate is equal to the sum of (a) the greatest of (i) the prime rate as established by the administrative agent for the revolving credit facility, (ii) the federal funds effective rate plus 0.5% of 1% and (iii) the LIBOR rate for a one-month maturity plus 1% and (b) the applicable margin. The Eurodollar rate is equal to the sum of (a) the LIBOR rate for the applicable interest period multiplied by the statutory reserve rate and (b) the applicable margin. The applicable margin varies from 1.50% to 3.00% on Eurodollar borrowings and from 0.50% to 2.00% on alternate base rate borrowings, depending on our leverage ratio. Our leverage ratio is recalculated quarterly. At June 30, 2017, the applicable margins on our borrowings were 1.75% for alternate base rate borrowings and 2.75% for Eurodollar rate borrowings.
- Letter of credit fees range from 1.50% to 3.00% based on our leverage ratio as computed under the revolving credit facility. The rate can fluctuate quarterly. At June 30, 2017, our letter of credit rate was 2.75%.
- We pay a commitment fee on the unused portion of the \$1.7 billion maximum facility amount. The commitment fee on the unused committed amount will range from 0.250% to 0.500% per annum depending on our leverage ratio (0.500% at June 30, 2017).

Our credit agreement contains customary covenants (affirmative, negative and financial) that limit the manner in which we may conduct our business. Our credit agreement contains three primary financial covenants — a leverage ratio, a senior secured leverage ratio and an interest coverage ratio. In general, our leverage ratio calculations compare our consolidated funded debt (excluding the amounts borrowed under the inventory sublimit in our credit agreement) to EBITDA (as defined and adjusted in accordance with our

S-47

[Table of Contents](#)

credit agreement). Our interest coverage ratio compares EBITDA (as adjusted) to interest expense. Our credit agreement provides, among other things, that, if and when we achieve specified investment grade ratings, certain restrictive covenants will cease to apply and the applicable margin for both alternate base rate and Eurodollar loans and the commitment fee on the unused committed amount will be reduced by specified amounts. Our credit agreement includes provisions for the temporary adjustment of our interest coverage ratio following certain transactions, including material acquisitions. So long as we are in compliance with the terms of our credit agreement, we have no limitations on our ability to distribute all of our available cash (as defined in our partnership agreement).

Required Ratio as of the last day of four fiscal quarters ending on	Required Ratio Following a Material Acquisition as of the last day of four fiscal quarters ending		Actual Ratio as of

Financial Covenant

	Requirement	June 30, 2017	on June 30, 2017	June 30, 2017
Leverage Ratio	Maximum	5.75 to 1.0	5.75 to 1.0	5.42 to 1.0
Senior Secured Leverage Ratio	Maximum	3.75 to 1.0	3.75 to 1.0	2.12 to 1.0
Interest Coverage Ratio	Minimum	3.00 to 1.0	2.75 to 1.0	4.05 to 1.0

Under the credit agreement, our maximum leverage ratio as of the last day of each period of four consecutive fiscal quarters then ended is not to exceed: 5.75 to 1.0 for the second quarter of 2017 through the second quarter of 2018, 5.50 to 1.0 for the third quarter of 2018 through the fourth quarter of 2019, 5.25 to 1.0 for the first quarter of 2020 through the fourth quarter of 2020 and 5.00 to 1.0 from the first quarter of 2021 and all periods thereafter.

We believe the amounts included in our balance sheet for debt outstanding under our revolving credit facility approximate fair value as interest rates reflect current market rates. We were in compliance with the financial covenants contained in our credit agreement as of June 30, 2017.

2021 Notes

On February 8, 2013, Genesis and Finance Corp., as co-issuers, issued \$350 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2021 notes. The 2021 notes mature on February 15, 2021 and bear interest at a rate of 5.750% per annum, payable semi-annually in cash on arrears on February 15 and August 15 of each year. The 2021 notes are guaranteed on a senior basis by, with certain exceptions, all of our subsidiaries (other than Finance Corp. as co-issuer). The 2021 notes were issued under and are governed by an indenture dated as of February 8, 2013 among Genesis, Finance Corp., the guarantors and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee. The indenture governing the 2021 notes contains customary terms, events of default and covenants relating to, among other things, the incurrence of indebtedness, the payment of restricted payments, engaging in transactions with affiliates and making certain investments. Indebtedness under the 2021 notes may be accelerated in certain circumstances upon an event of default as set forth in the indenture governing such notes.

We have the option to redeem the 2021 notes, in whole or in part, at any time, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount) of 102.875% for the twelve-month period beginning on February 15, 2017, 101.438% for the twelve-month period beginning on February 15, 2018, and 100% beginning on February 15, 2019, together with any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption.

S-48

[Table of Contents](#)

2022 Notes

On July 16, 2015, Genesis and Finance Corp., as co-issuers, issued \$750 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2022 notes. The 2022 notes mature on August 1, 2022 and bear interest at a rate of 6.75% per annum, payable semi-annually in cash on arrears on February 1 and August 1 of each year. The 2022 notes are guaranteed on a senior basis by, with certain exceptions, all of our subsidiaries (other than Finance Corp. as co-issuer). The 2022 notes were issued under and are governed by an indenture dated as of May 21, 2015 among Genesis, Finance Corp., the guarantors and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee. The indenture governing the 2022 notes contains customary terms, events of default and covenants relating to, among other things, the incurrence of indebtedness, the payment of restricted payments, engaging in transactions with affiliates and making certain investments. Indebtedness under the 2022 notes may be accelerated in certain circumstances upon an event of default as set forth in the indenture governing such notes.

We will have the option to redeem the 2022 notes, in whole or in part, at any time on or after August 1, 2018, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount) of 103.3750% for the twelve-month period beginning on August, 2018, 101.6875% for the twelve-month period beginning on August 1, 2019, and 100% beginning on August 1, 2020, together with any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption. Before August 1, 2018, we may redeem all or any part of the 2022 notes for a redemption price equal to the sum of the principal amount thereof plus a make-whole premium plus any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption. Before August 1, 2018, we may, at any time or from time to time, redeem up to 35% of the aggregate principal amount of the 2022 notes with the net proceeds of a public or private equity offering at a redemption price of 106.75% of the principal amount of the 2022 notes, plus any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption, if at least 65% of the aggregate principal amount of the 2022 notes issued under the indenture governing the 2022 notes remains outstanding immediately after such redemption and the redemption occurs within 120 days of the closing date of such equity offering.

2023 Notes

On May 21, 2015, Genesis and Finance Corp., as co-issuers, issued \$400 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2023 notes. The 2023 notes mature on May 15, 2023 and bear interest at a rate of 6.000% per annum, payable semi-annually in cash on arrears on May 15 and November 15 of each year. The 2023 notes are guaranteed on a senior basis by, with certain exceptions, all of our subsidiaries (other than Finance Corp. as co-issuer). The 2023 notes were issued under and are governed by an indenture dated as of May 21, 2015 among Genesis, Finance Corp., the guarantors and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee. The indenture governing the 2023 notes contains customary terms, events of default

and covenants relating to, among other things, the incurrence of indebtedness, the payment of restricted payments, engaging in transactions with affiliates and making certain investments. Indebtedness under the 2023 notes may be accelerated in certain circumstances upon an event of default as set forth in the indenture governing such notes.

We will have the option to redeem the 2023 notes, in whole or in part, at any time on or after May 15, 2018, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount) of 104.500% for the twelve-month period beginning on May 15, 2018, 103.000% for the twelve-month period beginning on May 15, 2019, 101.500% for the twelve-month period beginning on May 15, 2020 and 100% beginning on May 15, 2021, together with any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption. Before May 15, 2018, we may redeem all or any part of the 2023 notes for a redemption price equal to the sum of the principal amount thereof plus a make-whole premium plus any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption. Before May 15, 2018, we may, at any time or from time to time, redeem up to 35% of the aggregate principal amount of the 2023 notes in an amount not greater than the net proceeds of a public or private equity offering at a redemption price of 106.000% of the principal amount of the 2023 notes, plus any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption, if at least 65% of the aggregate principal amount of the 2023 notes issued under the indenture governing the

S-49

[Table of Contents](#)

2023 notes remains outstanding immediately after such redemption and the redemption occurs within 120 days of the closing date of such equity offering.

2024 Notes

On May 15, 2014, Genesis and Finance Corp., as co-issuers, issued \$350 million in aggregate principal amount of our 2024 notes. The 2024 notes mature on June 15, 2024 and bear interest at a rate of 5.625% per annum, payable semi-annually in cash on arrears on June 15 and December 15 of each year. The 2024 notes are guaranteed on a senior basis by, with certain exceptions, all of our subsidiaries (other than Finance Corp. as co-issuer). The 2024 notes were issued under and are governed by an indenture dated as of May 15, 2014 among Genesis, Finance Corp., the guarantors and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee. The indenture governing the 2024 notes contains customary terms, events of default and covenants relating to, among other things, the incurrence of indebtedness, the payment of restricted payments, engaging in transactions with affiliates and making certain investments. Indebtedness under the 2024 notes may be accelerated in certain circumstances upon an event of default as set forth in the indenture governing such notes.

We will have the option to redeem the 2024 notes, in whole or in part, at any time on or after June 15, 2019, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount) of 102.813% for the twelve-month period beginning on June 15, 2019, 101.875% for the twelve-month period beginning on June 15, 2020, 100.938% for the twelve-month period beginning on June 15, 2021 and 100% beginning on June 15, 2022, together with any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption. Before June 15, 2019, we may redeem all or any part of the 2024 notes for a redemption price equal to the sum of the principal amount thereof plus a make-whole premium plus any accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the date of redemption.

S-50

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF NOTES

The following description of the particular terms of the notes supplements the general description of the debt securities included in the accompanying base prospectus. You should review this description together with the description of the debt securities included in the accompanying base prospectus. To the extent this description is inconsistent with the description in the accompanying base prospectus this description will control and replace the inconsistent description in the accompanying base prospectus.

You can find the definitions of certain terms used in this description under the subheading “— Certain Definitions.” In this description, the term “Company,” “us,” “our” or “we” refers only to Genesis Energy, L.P. and not to any of its subsidiaries, the term “Finance Corp.” refers to Genesis Energy Finance Corporation and the term “Issuers” refers to the Company and Finance Corp. The term “notes” refers to the Issuers’ notes being offered hereby. For purposes of this “Description of Notes” section, references to the “Issuers” do not include the subsidiaries of those Issuers.

The Issuers will issue the notes under an eighth supplemental indenture to the indenture dated as of May 21, 2015 (the “base indenture”) among the Issuers, the Guarantors and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee (the “trustee”) (the “supplemental indenture”; and the base indenture as supplemented by the eighth supplemental indenture, the “indenture”). The terms of the notes include those stated in the indenture and those made part of the indenture by reference to the Trust Indenture Act. The notes will be a separate series of “senior debt securities” (as that term is used in the accompanying base prospectus).

The following summary of certain provisions of the indenture does not purport to be complete and (except to the extent inconsistent with the following summary) is supplemented by the description of debt securities contained in the accompanying base prospectus and is subject to, and is qualified in its entirety by reference to, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the “Trust Indenture Act”), and to all of the provisions of the indenture, including the definitions of certain terms therein and those terms made a part of the indenture by reference to the Trust Indenture Act as in effect on the date of the Indenture. A copy of the form of the indenture may be obtained from the Issuers.

The following description is a summary of the material provisions of the indenture relating to the notes. It does not restate the indenture in its entirety. We urge you to read the indenture because it, and not this description, defines the rights of Holders of the notes. Certain defined terms used in this description but not defined below under the subheading “— Certain Definitions” have the meanings assigned to them in the indenture.

The registered Holder of a note will be treated as the owner of it for all purposes. Only registered Holders will have rights under the indenture.

Brief Description of the Notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees

The Notes. The notes:

- are general unsecured obligations of the Issuers;
- are equal in right of payment with our existing notes and all existing and future Senior Debt (as defined below) of either of the Issuers; and
- are unconditionally guaranteed by the Guarantors on a senior unsecured basis.

The Subsidiary Guarantees. Initially, the notes are guaranteed by all of the Company’s existing Subsidiaries (other than Finance Corp. and the Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries referred to below).

Each guarantee of the notes:

- is a general unsecured obligation of that Guarantor; and
- is equal in right of payment with all existing and future Senior Debt of that Guarantor, including its guarantee of the existing notes.

[Table of Contents](#)

At June 30, 2017, on a pro forma basis after giving effect to the Alkali Business Acquisition, the application of the proceeds of \$550 million of notes in this offering, the application of the net proceeds from the private placement of our Class A convertible preferred units, and an increased committed amount under our revolving credit facility by up to \$300 million, in each case as described herein, the Company and the Guarantors would have had:

- total Senior Debt of approximately \$3,670 million, consisting of the notes, \$2,400 million aggregate principal amount of our existing notes and approximately \$1,270 million of secured Senior Debt outstanding under our senior secured revolving credit facility (excluding letters of credit aggregating approximately \$1.0 million); and
- no Indebtedness contractually subordinated to the notes, our existing notes or the guarantees, as applicable.

The indenture will permit us and the Guarantors to incur additional Indebtedness, including additional Senior Debt.

Initially, all of our existing Subsidiaries (other than Finance Corp. and the Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries) will guarantee the notes. If the Alkali Business Acquisition closes, Tronox Alkali Corporation will become a Restricted Subsidiary and will guarantee the notes in accordance with the indenture. Under the circumstances described below under the subheading “— Certain Covenants — Additional Subsidiary Guarantees,” in the future one or more of our newly created or acquired Subsidiaries may not guarantee the notes. In the event of a bankruptcy, liquidation or reorganization of any of these non-guarantor Subsidiaries, the non-guarantor Subsidiaries will pay current outstanding obligations to the holders of their debt and their trade creditors before they will be able to distribute any of their assets to us.

As of the Issue Date, each of our Subsidiaries, except for the Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries, will be a “Restricted Subsidiary.” The Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries will constitute “Unrestricted Subsidiaries” under the indenture. Under the circumstances described below under the subheading “— Certain Covenants — Designation of Restricted and Unrestricted Subsidiaries,” we will be permitted to designate additional Subsidiaries as “Unrestricted Subsidiaries.” Our Unrestricted Subsidiaries will not be subject to many of the restrictive covenants in the indenture. Our Unrestricted Subsidiaries will not guarantee the notes. Our Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries (1) as of June 30, 2017, represented approximately 4% of our consolidated assets and had liabilities to trade creditors of approximately \$1.6 million and (2) for the three months ended June 30, 2017, accounted for approximately 2% of our consolidated revenues and approximately 6% of our segment margin (with Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC accounting for 1% of our consolidated revenues and 4% of our segment margin).

We own a 50% interest in each of T&P Syngas Supply Company and Sandhill Group, L.L.C., a 29% interest in Odyssey Pipeline L.L.C. and a 25.67% interest in Neptune Pipeline Company, L.L.C. (which indirectly owns a 50% interest in Atlantis Offshore, LLC), none of which Joint Ventures will initially (i) be classified as a Subsidiary of the Company or (ii) guarantee the notes.

Principal, Maturity and Interest

The Issuers will issue notes with an initial maximum aggregate principal amount of \$550 million, maturing on October 1, 2025. The Issuers may issue additional notes having substantially identical terms and conditions to the notes offered in this offering (the “*additional notes*”) from time to time after this offering. Any offering of additional notes is subject to the covenant described below under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock.” The notes and any additional notes subsequently issued under the indenture, will be treated as a single class under the indenture for all purposes, including, without limitation, waivers, amendments, redemptions and offers to purchase. The Issuers will issue notes in denominations of \$2,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess of \$2,000.

Interest on the notes will accrue at the rate of 6.50% per annum, and will be payable semi-annually in arrears on April 1 and October 1, commencing on April 1, 2018. The Issuers will make each interest

S-52

[Table of Contents](#)

payment to the Holders of record on the March 15 and September 15 immediately preceding each interest payment date.

Interest on the notes will accrue from the date of original issuance or, if interest has already been paid, from the date it was most recently paid. Interest will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year comprised of twelve 30-day months.

If an interest payment date falls on a day that is not a Business Day, the interest payment to be made on such interest payment date will be made, without penalty, on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on such interest payment date.

Methods of Receiving Payments on the Notes

If a Holder has given wire transfer instructions to the Issuers, the Issuers will pay all principal, interest and premium, if any, on that Holder’s notes in accordance with those instructions. All other payments on the notes will be made at the office or agency of the paying agent and registrar within the City and State of New York unless the Issuers elect to make interest payments by check mailed to the Holders at their addresses set forth in the register of Holders.

Paying Agent and Registrar for the Notes

The trustee will initially act as the paying agent and registrar. The Issuers may change the paying agent or registrar without prior notice to the Holders of the notes, and the Company or any of its Subsidiaries may act as paying agent or registrar.

Transfer and Exchange

A Holder may transfer or exchange notes in accordance with the indenture. The registrar and the trustee may require a Holder to furnish appropriate endorsements and transfer documents in connection with a transfer of notes. No service charge will be imposed by the Issuers, the trustee or the registrar for any registration of transfer or exchange of notes, but Holders will be required to pay all taxes due on transfer. The Issuers are not required to transfer or exchange any note selected for redemption. Also, the Issuers are not required to transfer or exchange any note for a period of 15 days before a selection of notes to be redeemed.

Subsidiary Guarantees

Initially, all of our existing Subsidiaries, excluding Finance Corp. and the Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries, will guarantee the notes on a senior unsecured basis. In the future, the Restricted Subsidiaries of the Company will be required to guarantee the notes under the circumstances described under “— Certain Covenants — Additional Subsidiary Guarantees.” These Subsidiary Guarantees will be joint and several obligations of the Guarantors. The obligations of each Guarantor under its Subsidiary Guarantee will be limited as necessary to prevent that Subsidiary Guarantee from constituting a fraudulent conveyance under applicable law. See “Risk Factors — Risks Relating to the Notes — The guarantee of a subsidiary could be voided if it constitutes a fraudulent transfer under U.S. bankruptcy or similar state law, which would prevent the holders of the notes from relying on that subsidiary to satisfy claims.”

A Guarantor may not sell or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its properties or assets to, or consolidate with or merge with or into (whether or not such Guarantor is the surviving Person), another Person, other than the Company or another Guarantor, unless:

1. immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default exists; and
2. either:
 - a. the Person acquiring the properties or assets in any such sale or other disposition or the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Guarantor)

S-53

[Table of Contents](#)

unconditionally assumes, pursuant to a supplemental indenture substantially in the form specified in the indenture, all the obligations of that Guarantor under the notes, the indenture and its Subsidiary Guarantee on terms set forth therein; or

b. if the Person acquiring the properties or assets in any such sale or other disposition or the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger is not (either before or after giving effect to such transaction) a Guarantor, such transaction complies with the “Asset Sales” provisions of the indenture.

The Subsidiary Guarantee of a Guarantor will be released:

- 1. in connection with any sale or other disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of such Guarantor (including by way of merger or consolidation) to a Person that is not (either before or after giving effect to such transaction) a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, if the sale or other disposition complies with the “Asset Sales” provisions of the indenture;
- 2. in connection with any sale or other disposition of all of the Capital Stock of such Guarantor to a Person that is not (either before or after giving effect to such transaction) a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, if the sale or other disposition complies with the “Asset Sales” provisions of the indenture;
- 3. if the Company designates such Guarantor as an Unrestricted Subsidiary in accordance with the applicable provisions of the indenture;
- 4. upon Legal Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance or satisfaction and discharge of the indenture as described below under the caption “— Legal Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge”;
- 5. upon the liquidation or dissolution of such Guarantor, provided no Default or Event of Default has occurred that is continuing; or
- 6. at such time as such Guarantor ceases to guarantee any other Indebtedness of either of the Issuers or any other Guarantor.

See “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales.”

Optional Redemption

At any time prior to October 1, 2020, the Issuers may on any one or more occasions redeem up to 35% of the aggregate principal amount of the notes (including any additional notes) issued under the indenture, upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ notice, at a redemption price of 106.50% of the principal amount, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the redemption date (subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the redemption date), in an amount not greater than the net cash proceeds of one or more Equity Offerings by the Company, provided that:

- 1. at least 65% of the aggregate principal amount of the notes (including any additional notes) issued under the indenture remains outstanding immediately after the occurrence of such redemption (excluding notes held by the Company and its Subsidiaries); and
- 2. the redemption occurs within 120 days of the date of the closing of such Equity Offering.

[Table of Contents](#)

On and after October 1, 2020, the Issuers may redeem all or a part of the notes upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ notice, at the redemption prices (expressed as percentages of principal amount) set forth below, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on the notes redeemed to the applicable redemption date (subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the redemption date), if redeemed during the twelve-month period beginning on October 1 of the years indicated below:

Year	Percentages
2020	104.875%
2021	103.250%
2022	101.625%
2023 and thereafter	100.000%

Prior to October 1, 2020, the Issuers may redeem all or part of the notes upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ notice, at a redemption price equal to the sum of:

- 1. the principal amount thereof, plus
- 2. the Make-Whole Premium at the redemption date,

plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the redemption date (subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the redemption date).

Selection and Notice

If less than all of the notes are to be redeemed at any time, the trustee will select notes for redemption as follows:

1. if the notes are listed on any national securities exchange, in compliance with the requirements of the principal national securities exchange on which the notes are listed; or
2. if the notes are not listed on any national securities exchange, on a pro rata basis.

No notes of \$2,000 or less can be redeemed in part. Notices of optional redemption will be mailed by first class mail at least 30 but not more than 60 days before the redemption date to each Holder of notes to be redeemed at its registered address, except that optional redemption notices may be mailed more than 60 days prior to a redemption date if the notice is issued in connection with a defeasance of the notes or a satisfaction and discharge of the indenture. Notices of redemption may not be conditional, except that redemption pursuant to the first paragraph under the “— Optional Redemption” section, may, at the Company’s discretion, be subject to completion of the related Equity Offering.

If any note is to be redeemed in part only, the notice of redemption that relates to that note will state the portion of the principal amount of that note that is to be redeemed. A new note in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the original note will be issued in the name of the Holder of notes upon cancellation of the original note. Notes called for redemption become due on the date fixed for redemption. On and after the redemption date, interest ceases to accrue on notes or portions of them called for redemption.

A notice of redemption with respect to any redemption pursuant to the last paragraph under the caption “— Optional Redemption” need not set forth the Make-Whole Premium but only the manner of calculation thereof in reasonable detail. The Issuers will notify the trustee of the Make-Whole Premium with respect to any such redemption promptly after the calculation, and the trustee shall not be responsible for such calculation.

Mandatory Redemption

Except as described in “— Special Mandatory Redemption,” neither of the Issuers is required to make mandatory redemption or sinking fund payments with respect to the notes. However, under certain

S-55

[Table of Contents](#)

circumstances, we may be required to offer to purchase notes as described below under “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders.” The Issuers may, at any time and from time to time, purchase notes in the open market or otherwise.

Special Mandatory Redemption

In the event that the Alkali Business Acquisition does not close on or prior to March 31, 2018 or the Alkali Business Acquisition Agreement is terminated prior to the closing of such acquisition (any such event being a “Special Mandatory Redemption Event”), the Issuers will redeem all of the notes (the “Special Mandatory Redemption”) at the Special Mandatory Redemption Price.

Notice of the occurrence of a Special Mandatory Redemption Event and that a Special Mandatory Redemption is to occur (the “Special Mandatory Redemption Notice”) shall be delivered to the Trustee and mailed by first class mail to the registered address of each Holder of notes and, in addition, electronically delivered according to the procedures of DTC, within five Business Days after the Special Mandatory Redemption Event. At the Issuers’ written request, the Trustee shall give the Special Mandatory Redemption Notice in the Issuers’ names and at their expense. On such date specified in the Special Mandatory Redemption Notice as shall be no more than five Business Days (or such other minimum period not to exceed 30 days as may be required by DTC) after mailing the Special Mandatory Redemption Notice, the Special Mandatory Redemption shall occur (the date of such redemption, the “Special Mandatory Redemption Date”).

If funds sufficient to pay the Special Mandatory Redemption Price of all of the notes to be redeemed on the Special Mandatory Redemption Date are deposited with a paying agent or the Trustee on or before such Special Mandatory Redemption Date, then on and after such Special Mandatory Redemption Date, the notes shall cease to bear interest and, other than the right to receive the Special Mandatory Redemption Price, all rights under such notes shall terminate.

Prior to the Special Mandatory Redemption or the consummation of the Alkali Business Acquisition, the Company intends to use the net proceeds from this offering to make short-term liquid investments or for the repayment of outstanding borrowings under its revolving credit agreement, at our discretion. Holders of notes will not have any special access or rights to or a Lien or encumbrance of any kind on the net proceeds to the Issuers from this offering.

Repurchase at the Option of Holders

Change of Control

If a Change of Control occurs, unless the Issuers have previously or concurrently exercised their right to redeem all of the notes as described under “— Optional Redemption,” each Holder of notes will have the right to require the Company to repurchase all or any part (equal to \$2,000 or an integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess of \$2,000) of that Holder’s notes pursuant to a Change of Control Offer on the terms set forth in the

indenture. In the Change of Control Offer, the Company will offer a Change of Control Payment in cash equal to 101% of the aggregate principal amount of notes repurchased plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on the notes repurchased, to the date of settlement (the “Change of Control Settlement Date”), subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the Change of Control Settlement Date. Within 30 days following any Change of Control, unless the Issuers have previously or concurrently exercised their right to redeem all of the notes as described under “— Optional Redemption,” the Company will mail a notice to each Holder and the trustee describing the transaction or transactions that constitute the Change of Control and offering to repurchase notes as of the Change of Control Settlement Date specified in the notice, which date will be no earlier than 30 days and no later than 60 days from the date such notice is mailed, pursuant to the procedures required by the indenture and described in such notice.

The Company will comply with the requirements of Rule 14e-1 under the Exchange Act and any other securities laws and regulations thereunder to the extent those laws and regulations are applicable in

S-56

[Table of Contents](#)

connection with the repurchase of the notes as a result of a Change of Control. To the extent that the provisions of any securities laws or regulations conflict with the Change of Control provisions of the indenture, the Company will comply with the applicable securities laws and regulations and will not be deemed to have breached its obligations under the Change of Control provisions of the indenture by virtue of such conflict.

On the Change of Control Settlement Date, the Company will, to the extent lawful, accept for payment all notes or portions of notes properly tendered pursuant to the Change of Control Offer. Promptly thereafter on the Change of Control Settlement Date, the Company will:

- 1. deposit with the paying agent an amount equal to the Change of Control Payment in respect of all notes or portions of notes properly tendered; and
- 2. deliver or cause to be delivered to the trustee the notes properly accepted together with an officers’ certificate stating the aggregate principal amount of notes or portions of notes being purchased by the Company.

On the Change of Control Settlement Date, the paying agent will mail to each Holder of notes properly tendered the Change of Control Payment for such notes (or, if all the notes are then in global form, make such payment through the facilities of DTC), and the trustee will authenticate and mail (or cause to be transferred by book entry) to each Holder a new note equal in principal amount to any unpurchased portion of the notes surrendered, if any; provided, however, that each new note will be in a principal amount of \$2,000 or an integral multiple of \$1,000 in excess of \$2,000. The Company will publicly announce the results of the Change of Control Offer on or as soon as practicable after the Change of Control Payment Date.

The Company’s ability to repurchase notes pursuant to a Change of Control Offer may be restricted by the terms of any Credit Facility and may be prohibited or otherwise limited by the terms of any then existing borrowing arrangements and the Company’s financial resources. The exercise by the Holders of notes of their right to require the Company to repurchase the notes upon a Change of Control Offer could cause a default under these other agreements, even if the Change of Control itself does not, due to the financial effect of such repurchases on the Company or otherwise. The Credit Agreement provides that certain change of control events with respect to the Company would constitute an event of default thereunder, entitling the lenders, among other things, to accelerate the maturity of all Senior Debt outstanding thereunder. Any future credit agreements or other agreements relating to Senior Debt to which the Company or any Guarantor becomes a party may contain similar restrictions and provisions. The indenture provides that, prior to complying with any of the provisions of this “Change of Control” covenant, but in any event no later than the Change of Control Settlement Date, the Company or any Guarantor must either repay all of its other outstanding Senior Debt or obtain the requisite consents, if any, under all agreements governing such Senior Debt to permit the repurchase of notes required by this covenant. If the Company does not obtain the requisite consents or repay all of its other outstanding Senior Debt, the Company may remain prohibited from purchasing notes under those other agreements. The Company’s failure to purchase tendered notes would constitute an Event of Default under the indenture which could, in turn, constitute a default under other Indebtedness.

The provisions described above that require the Company to make a Change of Control Offer following a Change of Control will be applicable whether or not any other provisions of the indenture are applicable. Except as described above with respect to a Change of Control, the indenture will not contain provisions that permit the Holders of the notes to require that the Company repurchase or redeem the notes in the event of a takeover, recapitalization or similar transaction.

The Company will not be required to make a Change of Control Offer upon a Change of Control if (i) a third party makes the Change of Control Offer in the manner, at the time and otherwise in compliance with the requirements set forth in the indenture applicable to a Change of Control Offer made by the Company and purchases all notes properly tendered and not withdrawn under the Change of Control Offer or

S-57

[Table of Contents](#)

(ii) irrevocable notice of redemption of all notes has been given pursuant to the indenture as described above under the caption “— Optional Redemption,” unless there is a default in payment of the applicable redemption price.

A Change of Control Offer may be made in advance of a Change of Control, and conditioned upon the occurrence of such Change of Control, if a definitive agreement is in effect for the Change of Control at the time of making the Change of Control Offer.

In the event that upon consummation of a Change of Control Offer less than 10% of the aggregate principal amount of the notes (including any additional notes) that were originally issued are held by Holders other than the Issuers or Affiliates thereof, the Issuers will have the right, upon not less than 30 nor more than 60 days’ prior notice, given not more than 30 days following the purchase pursuant to the Change of Control Offer described above, to redeem all of the notes that remain outstanding following such purchase at a redemption price equal to the Change of Control Offer payment amount plus, to the extent not included in the Change of Control Offer payment amount, accrued and unpaid interest on the notes that remain outstanding, to the date of redemption (subject to the right of holders on the relevant record date to receive interest due on the relevant interest payment date).

The definition of Change of Control includes a phrase relating to the direct or indirect sale, lease, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of “all or substantially all” of the properties or assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole. Although there is a limited body of case law interpreting the phrase “substantially all,” there is no precise established definition of the phrase under applicable law. Accordingly, the ability of a Holder of notes to require the Company to repurchase its notes as a result of a sale, lease, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of less than all of the properties or assets of the Company and its Subsidiaries taken as a whole to another Person or group may be uncertain.

The provisions under the indenture relative to the Company’s obligation to make an offer to repurchase the notes as a result of a Change of Control may be waived or modified, prior to the occurrence of a Change of Control, with the written consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding notes (including any additional notes).

Asset Sales

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, consummate an Asset Sale unless:

1. the Company (or a Restricted Subsidiary, as the case may be) receives consideration at the time of the Asset Sale at least equal to the fair market value of the assets or Equity Interests issued or sold or otherwise disposed of;
2. the fair market value is determined by (a) an executive officer of the General Partner if the value is less than \$30.0 million and evidenced by an officers’ certificate delivered to the trustee, or (b) the Company’s Board of Directors if the value is \$30.0 million or more and evidenced by a resolution of such Board of Directors set forth in an officers’ certificate delivered to the trustee; and
3. at least 75% of the aggregate consideration received by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries in the Asset Sale and all other Asset Sales since the Issue Date is in the form of cash. For purposes of this provision, each of the following will be deemed to be cash:
 - a. any liabilities, as shown on the Company’s or any Restricted Subsidiary’s most recent balance sheet, of the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary (other than contingent liabilities and liabilities that are by their terms subordinated to the notes or any Subsidiary Guarantee) that are assumed by the transferee of any such assets pursuant to a customary novation agreement that releases the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary from further liability (or in lieu of such a release, the agreement of the acquiror or its parent company to indemnify and hold the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary harmless from and against any loss, liability or cost in respect of

[Table of Contents](#)

- such assumed Indebtedness or liabilities accompanied by the posting of a letter of credit (issued by a commercial bank that has an Investment Grade Rating) in favor of the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary for the full amount of the liability and for so long as the liability remains outstanding; *provided, however*, that such indemnifying party (or its long term debt securities) shall have an Investment Grade Rating (with no indication of a negative outlook or credit watch with negative implications, in any case, that contemplates such indemnifying party (or its long term debt securities) failing to have an Investment Grade Rating) at the time the indemnity is entered into);
- b. any securities, notes or other obligations received by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary from such transferee that are, within 180 days after the Asset Sale, converted by the Company or such Subsidiary into cash, to the extent of the cash received in that conversion; and
 - c. any stock or assets of the kind referred to in clauses (2), (3) or (5) of the following paragraph.

Within 360 days after the receipt of any Net Proceeds from an Asset Sale, the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary may apply those Net Proceeds at its option to any combination of the following:

1. to repay Senior Debt;

2. to acquire all or substantially all of the properties or assets of a Person primarily engaged in a Permitted Business;
3. to acquire a majority of the Voting Stock of a Person primarily engaged in a Permitted Business;
4. to make capital expenditures; or
5. to acquire other long-term assets that are used or useful in a Permitted Business.

The acquisition of stock or assets, or making of a capital expenditure, pursuant to clauses (2), (3), (4) or (5) of the preceding paragraph shall be deemed to be satisfied if an agreement (including a lease, whether a capital lease or an operating lease) committing to make the acquisitions or expenditure referred to therein is entered into by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary with a Person other than an Affiliate of the Company within the time period specified in the preceding paragraph and such Net Proceeds are subsequently applied in accordance with such agreement within six months following the date such agreement is entered into.

Pending the final application of any Net Proceeds, the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary may invest the Net Proceeds in any manner that is not prohibited by the indenture. Any Net Proceeds from Asset Sales that are not applied or invested as provided in the preceding paragraph will constitute “Excess Proceeds.”

On the 361st day after the Asset Sale (or, at the Company’s option, any earlier date), if the aggregate amount of Excess Proceeds then exceeds \$25.0 million, the Company will make an Asset Sale Offer to all Holders of notes, and all holders of other Indebtedness that is *pari passu* with the notes containing provisions similar to those set forth in the indenture with respect to offers to purchase or redeem with the proceeds of sales of assets, to purchase the maximum principal amount of notes and such other *pari passu* Indebtedness that may be purchased out of the Excess Proceeds. The offer price in any Asset Sale Offer will be equal to 100% of the principal amount plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to the date of settlement, subject to the right of Holders of record on the relevant record date to receive interest due on an interest payment date that is on or prior to the date of settlement, and will be payable in cash. The Company may satisfy the foregoing obligations with respect to any Net Proceeds from an Asset Sale by making an Asset Sale Offer with respect to such Net Proceeds prior to the expiration of the relevant 360 days (or such longer period provided above). If any Excess Proceeds remain after consummation of an Asset Sale Offer, the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary may use those Excess Proceeds for any purpose not otherwise

S-59

[Table of Contents](#)

prohibited by the indenture. If the aggregate principal amount of notes and other *pari passu* Indebtedness tendered into such Asset Sale Offer exceeds the amount of Excess Proceeds, the trustee will select the notes and such other *pari passu* Indebtedness to be purchased on a pro rata basis (based on principal amounts of notes and *pari passu* Indebtedness (or, in the case of *pari passu* Indebtedness issued with significant original issue discount, based on the accreted value thereof) tendered). Upon completion of each Asset Sale Offer, the amount of Excess Proceeds will be reset at zero.

The Company’s ability to repurchase notes in an Asset Sale Offer may be restricted by the terms of any Credit Facility, and may be prohibited or otherwise limited by the terms of any then existing borrowing arrangements and the Company’s financial resources. The exercise by the Holders of notes of their right to require the Company to repurchase the notes upon an Asset Sale Offer could cause a default under these other agreements, even if the Asset Sale itself does not, due to the financial effect of such repurchases on the Company or otherwise. In the event an Asset Sale occurs at a time when the Company is prohibited from purchasing notes, the Company could seek the consent of the applicable lenders to the purchase of notes or could attempt to Refinance the Indebtedness that contains such prohibitions. If the Company does not obtain a consent or repay the Indebtedness, the Company will remain prohibited from purchasing notes. In that case, the Company’s failure to purchase tendered notes would constitute an Event of Default under the indenture which could, in turn, constitute a default under other Indebtedness.

The Company will comply with the requirements of Rule 14e-1 under the Exchange Act and any other securities laws and regulations thereunder to the extent those laws and regulations are applicable in connection with each repurchase of notes pursuant to an Asset Sale Offer. To the extent that the provisions of any securities laws or regulations conflict with the “Asset Sales” provisions of the indenture, the Company will comply with the applicable securities laws and regulations and will not be deemed to have breached its obligations under the “Asset Sales” provisions of the indenture by virtue of such conflict.

The provisions under the indenture relative to the Company’s obligation to make an offer to repurchase the notes as a result of an Asset Sale may be waived or modified with the written consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the outstanding notes (including any additional notes).

Certain Covenants

Restricted Payments

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly:

1. declare or pay any dividend or make any other payment or distribution on account of the Company’s or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries’ Equity Interests (including, without limitation, any payment in connection with any merger or consolidation involving the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries) or to the direct or indirect holders of the Company’s or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries’

Equity Interests in their capacity as such (other than dividends or distributions payable in Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) of the Company or payable to the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company);

2. purchase, redeem or otherwise acquire or retire for value (including, without limitation, in connection with any merger or consolidation involving the Company) any Equity Interests of the Company or any direct or indirect parent of the Company held by any Person (other than a Restricted Subsidiary) other than through the exchange therefor solely of Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) of the Company;

3. make any payment on or with respect to, or purchase, redeem, defease or otherwise acquire or retire for value before twelve months prior to any scheduled final maturity, scheduled repayment or scheduled sinking fund payment, any Indebtedness that is subordinated in right of payment to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees (excluding any intercompany Indebtedness between or among the Company and any of its Restricted Subsidiaries), except a payment of interest or principal at the Stated Maturity thereof (other than a purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of any

[Table of Contents](#)

such subordinated Indebtedness that is so purchased, redeemed or otherwise acquired or retired for value in anticipation of satisfying a sinking fund obligation, principal installment or payment at final maturity, in each case due within 120 days of the date of such purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value); or

4. make any Restricted Investment (all such payments and other actions set forth in these clauses (1) through (4) above being collectively referred to as “Restricted Payments”),

unless, at the time of and after giving effect to such Restricted Payment, no Default (except a Reporting Default) or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing or would occur as a consequence of such Restricted Payment and either:

1. if the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio for the Company’s most recently ended four full fiscal quarters for which internal financial statements are available at the time of such Restricted Payment (the “Trailing Four Quarters”) is not less than 1.75 to 1.0, such Restricted Payment, together with (without duplication of amounts included in (e) below) the aggregate amount of all other Restricted Payments made by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries (excluding Restricted Payments permitted by clauses (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (8), (9), (10), (11) and (14) of the next succeeding paragraph) with respect to the quarter for which such Restricted Payment is made, is less than the sum, without duplication, of:

a. Available Cash with respect to the Company’s preceding fiscal quarter, *plus*

b. 100% of the aggregate net cash proceeds received by the Company (including the fair market value of any Permitted Business or long-term assets that are used or useful in a Permitted Business to the extent acquired in consideration of Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock)) after the Measuring Date as a contribution to its common equity capital or from the issue or sale of Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock) or from the issue or sale of convertible or exchangeable Disqualified Stock or convertible or exchangeable debt securities of the Company that have been converted into or exchanged for such Equity Interests (other than Equity Interests (or Disqualified Stock or debt securities) sold to a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company), *plus*

c. to the extent that any Restricted Investment that was made after the Measuring Date is sold for cash or otherwise liquidated or repaid for cash, the cash return of capital with respect to such Restricted Investment (less the cost of disposition, if any), *plus*

d. the net reduction in Restricted Investments resulting from dividends, repayments of loans or advances, or other transfers of assets in each case to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries from any Person (including, without limitation, Unrestricted Subsidiaries) or from redesignations of Unrestricted Subsidiaries as Restricted Subsidiaries, to the extent such amounts have not been included in Available Cash for any period commencing on or after the Measuring Date (items (b), (c) and (d) being referred to as “Incremental Funds”), *minus*

e. the aggregate amount of Incremental Funds previously expended pursuant to this clause (1) and clause (2) below; or

2. if the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio for the Trailing Four Quarters is less than 1.75 to 1.0, such Restricted Payment, together with (without duplication of amounts included in (a) or (b) below) the aggregate amount of all other Restricted Payments made by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries (excluding Restricted Payments permitted by clauses (2), (3), (4), (5), (6), (8), (9), (10), (11) and (14) of the next succeeding paragraph) with respect to the quarter for which such Restricted Payment is made (such Restricted Payments for purposes of this clause (2) meaning only distributions on the Company’s common units, subordinated units, or incentive distribution rights, plus the related distribution on the general partner interest), is less than the sum, without duplication, of:

a. \$80.0 million less the aggregate amount of all prior Restricted Payments made by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries pursuant to this clause (2)(a) since the Issue Date, plus

[Table of Contents](#)

b. Incremental Funds to the extent not previously expended pursuant to this clause (2) or clause (1) above.

So long as no Default (except a Reporting Default) or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing or would be caused thereby (except with respect to clauses (1), (2), (3), (4), (7), (8), (10), (11), (12) and (13) below under which the Restricted Payment is permitted), the preceding provisions will not prohibit:

1. the payment of any dividend or distribution within 60 days after the date of its declaration, if at the date of declaration the payment would have complied with the provisions of the indenture;
2. the purchase, redemption, defeasance or other acquisition or retirement of any Indebtedness of the Company or any Guarantor that is subordinate in right of payment to the notes or such Guarantor’s Subsidiary Guarantee thereof or of any Equity Interests of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary in exchange for, or out of the net cash proceeds of the substantially concurrent (a) contribution (other than from a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company) to the equity capital of the Company in respect of or (b) sale (other than to a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company) of, Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock), with a sale being deemed substantially concurrent if such redemption, repurchase, retirement, defeasance or other acquisition occurs not more than 120 days after such sale; *provided, however*, that the amount of any such net cash proceeds that are utilized for any such redemption, repurchase, retirement, defeasance or other acquisition will be excluded (or deducted, if included) from the calculation of Available Cash and Incremental Funds;
3. the purchase, redemption, defeasance or other acquisition or retirement of Indebtedness of the Company or any Guarantor that is subordinate in right of payment to the notes or such Guarantor’s Subsidiary Guarantee thereof or Disqualified Stock of the Company or any Guarantor with the net cash proceeds from an incurrence of, or in exchange for, Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness;
4. the payment of any dividend or distribution by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company to the holders of its Equity Interests on a pro rata basis;
5. the purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of any Equity Interests of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company pursuant to any director or employee equity subscription agreement or equity option agreement or other employee benefit plan or to satisfy obligations under any Equity Interests appreciation rights or option plan or similar arrangement; *provided, however*, that the aggregate price paid for all such purchased, redeemed, acquired or retired Equity Interests may not exceed \$5.0 million in any calendar year *plus* (A) the cash proceeds received during such calendar year by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries from the sale of the Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock) to any such directors or employees (*provided* that the amount of such cash proceeds utilized for any such purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value will not increase the amount of Incremental Funds under clause (1)(b) of the immediately preceding paragraph) *plus* (B) the cash proceeds of key man life insurance policies received during such calendar year by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries;
6. the purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of Indebtedness that is subordinated or junior in right of payment to the notes or a Subsidiary Guarantee at a purchase price not greater than (i) 101% of the principal amount of such subordinated or junior Indebtedness and accrued and unpaid interest thereon in the event of a Change of Control or (ii) 100% of the principal amount of such subordinated or junior Indebtedness and accrued and unpaid interest thereon in the event of an Asset Sale, in each case plus accrued interest, in connection with any Change of Control Offer or Asset Sale Offer required by the terms of such Indebtedness, but only if:
 - (a) in the case of a Change of Control, the Company has first complied with and fully satisfied its obligations under the provisions described under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Change of Control”; or

[Table of Contents](#)

(b) in the case of an Asset Sale, the Company has complied with and fully satisfied its obligations in accordance with the covenant under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales”;

7. the purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of Equity Interests of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary representing fractional shares of such Equity Interests in connection with a merger or consolidation involving the Company or Restricted Subsidiary or any other transaction permitted by the indenture;
8. the purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of Equity Interests deemed to occur upon the exercise or conversion of stock options, warrants or other convertible securities if such Equity Interests represents a portion of the exercise or conversion price thereof;
9. the declaration and payment of regularly scheduled or accrued dividends to holders of any class or series of Disqualified Stock of the Company or any preferred securities of any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company issued on or after the Issue Date in accordance with the

Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test described below under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock”;

- 10. the payment of any dividend or any similar distribution by a Restricted Subsidiary to the holders (other than the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary) of Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) of such Restricted Subsidiary; *provided* that such dividend or similar distribution is paid to all holders of such Equity Interests (including, to the extent holding such Equity Interests, the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries) on a *pro rata* basis based on their respective holdings of such Equity Interests;
- 11. the purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of any Equity Interests of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary held by any current or former officers, directors or employees of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in connection with the exercise or vesting of any equity compensation (including, without limitation, stock options, restricted stock and phantom stock) in order to satisfy any tax withholding obligation with respect to such exercise or vesting;
- 12. any payments to dissenting equityholders not to exceed \$5.0 million in the aggregate after the Issue Date (x) pursuant to applicable law or (y) in connection with the settlement or other satisfaction of claims made pursuant to or in connection with a consolidation, merger or transfer of assets in connection with a transaction that is not prohibited by the indenture;
- 13. any redemption of share purchase rights at a redemption price not to exceed \$0.01 per right;
- 14. the purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value of any Acquired Debt of the Company or any Guarantor that is subordinated or junior in right of payment to the notes or such Guarantor’s Subsidiary Guarantee, as the case may be, by application of (i) cash provided from operations in the ordinary course of business or (ii) proceeds from borrowings under the revolving portion of a Credit Facility (so long as within 30 days prior to such purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value, a corresponding amount of borrowings under the revolving portion of a Credit Facility was repaid from cash provided from operations in the ordinary course of business); *provided*, in any such case, that the Company is able to incur an additional \$1.00 of Indebtedness pursuant to the first paragraph of the covenant described under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock” after giving effect to such purchase or redemption; *provided* further, that this clause (14) shall not permit the application of any proceeds from any other borrowings under any Credit Facility to effect any such purchase, redemption or other acquisition or retirement for value; or
- 15. any other Restricted Payments not otherwise permitted pursuant to this covenant in an aggregate outstanding amount not to exceed \$10.0 million.

S-63

[Table of Contents](#)

The amount of all Restricted Payments (other than cash) will be the fair market value on the date of the Restricted Payment of the Restricted Investment proposed to be made or the asset(s) or securities proposed to be transferred or issued by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, as the case may be, pursuant to the Restricted Payment. The fair market value of any Restricted Investment, assets or securities that are required to be valued by this covenant will be determined, in the case of amounts under \$30.0 million, by an officer of the General Partner and, in the case of amounts over \$30.0 million, by the Board of Directors of the Company, whose determination shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution. In determining the aggregate net cash proceeds or fair market value of Property other than cash received by the Company from the issuance and sale of Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock) in accordance with clause (1)(b) of the second preceding paragraph, amounts of cash received by the Company pursuant to clause (2) of the preceding paragraph or clause (5) of the definition of “Permitted Investments” shall be excluded from such calculation. For purposes of determining compliance with this covenant, (x) in the event that a Restricted Payment meets the criteria of more than one of the exceptions described in (1) through (15) of the immediately preceding paragraph or is entitled to be made pursuant to the first paragraph of this covenant, the Company shall be permitted, in its sole discretion, to classify such Restricted Payment, or later classify, reclassify or re-divide all or a portion of such Restricted Payment, in any manner that complies with this covenant; and (y) in the event a Restricted Payment is made pursuant to clause (1) or (2) of the second preceding paragraph, the Company will be permitted to classify whether all or any portion thereof is being (and in the absence of such classification shall be deemed to have classified the minimum amount possible as having been) made with Incremental Funds. Not later than the date of making any Restricted Payment (excluding any Restricted Payment described in clauses (2) through (15) of the preceding paragraph) the Company will deliver to the trustee an officers’ certificate stating that such Restricted Payment is permitted and setting forth the basis upon which the calculations required by this “Restricted Payments” covenant were computed.

Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly, create, incur, issue, assume, guarantee or otherwise become directly or indirectly liable, contingently or otherwise, with respect to (collectively, “incur”) any Indebtedness (including Acquired Debt), the Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, issue any Disqualified Stock, and the Company will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to issue any preferred securities; *provided, however*, that the Company and any of the Restricted Subsidiaries may incur Indebtedness (including Acquired Debt) or issue Disqualified Stock or preferred securities, if, for the Company’s most recently ended four full fiscal quarters for which internal financial statements are available immediately preceding the date on which such additional Indebtedness is incurred or such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities are issued, the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio would have been at least 2.0 to 1.0, determined on a pro forma basis (including a pro forma application of the net proceeds therefrom), as if the additional

Indebtedness had been incurred or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities had been issued, as the case may be, at the beginning of such four-quarter period.

The first paragraph of this covenant will not prohibit incurrence or issuance of any of the following items of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities (collectively, “Permitted Debt”) described below:

- 1. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of additional Indebtedness (including letters of credit) under one or more Credit Facilities, provided that, after giving effect to any such incurrence, the aggregate principal amount of all Indebtedness incurred under this clause (1) (with letters of credit being deemed to have a principal amount equal to the maximum potential liability of the Company and its Subsidiaries thereunder) and then outstanding does not exceed the greater of (a) \$1.7 billion or (b) \$750 million plus 20.0% of the Company’s Consolidated Net Tangible Assets as of the date of incurrence;
- 2. the incurrence by the Company or its Restricted Subsidiaries of the Existing Indebtedness;

S-64

[Table of Contents](#)

- 3. the incurrence by the Company and the Guarantors of Indebtedness represented by the notes and the related Subsidiary Guarantees issued on the Issue Date;
- 4. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Indebtedness represented by Capital Lease Obligations, mortgage financings or purchase money obligations, in each case, incurred for the purpose of financing all or any part of the purchase price or cost of construction or improvement of property, plant or equipment used in the business of the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, including all Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness incurred to extend, refinance, renew, replace, defease or refund any Indebtedness incurred pursuant to this clause (4), *provided* that after giving effect to any such incurrence, the principal amount of all Indebtedness incurred pursuant to this clause (4) and then outstanding does not exceed the greater of (a) \$25.0 million or (b) 2.5% of the Company’s Consolidated Net Tangible Assets as of the date of incurrence;
- 5. the incurrence or issuance by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness in exchange for, or the net proceeds of which are used to, extend, refinance, renew, replace, defease or refund Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock that was permitted by the indenture to be incurred under the first paragraph of this covenant or clauses (2), (3), (13) or (16) of this paragraph or this clause (5);
- 6. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of intercompany Indebtedness between or among the Company and any of its Restricted Subsidiaries; *provided, however*, that:
 - a. if the Company is the obligor on such Indebtedness and a Guarantor is not the obligee, such Indebtedness must be expressly subordinated to the prior payment in full in cash of all Obligations with respect to the notes, or if a Guarantor is the obligor on such Indebtedness and neither the Company nor another Guarantor is the obligee, such Indebtedness must be expressly subordinated to the prior payment in full in cash of all Obligations with respect to the Subsidiary Guarantee of such Guarantor; and
 - b. (i) any subsequent issuance or transfer of Equity Interests that results in any such Indebtedness being held by a Person other than the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company and (ii) any sale or other transfer of any such Indebtedness to a Person that is neither the Company nor a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company will be deemed, in each case, to constitute an incurrence (as of the date of such issuance or transfer) of such Indebtedness by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary, as the case may be, that was not permitted by this clause (6);
- 7. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of obligations under Hedging Contracts in the ordinary course of business and not for speculative purposes;
- 8. the guarantee by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries that was permitted to be incurred by another provision of this covenant;
- 9. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of obligations relating to net Hydrocarbon balancing positions arising in the ordinary course of business and consistent with past practice;
- 10. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Indebtedness in respect of self-insurance, bid, performance, surety and similar bonds issued for the account of the Company and any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business, including guarantees and obligations of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries with respect to letters of credit supporting such obligations (in each case other than an obligation for money borrowed);
- 11. the issuance by (x) any of the Company’s Restricted Subsidiaries to the Company or to any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of any Disqualified Stock or preferred securities or (y) the Company or

S-65

[Table of Contents](#)

any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of any Disqualified Stock; *provided, however*, that, in the case of (x) or (y):

- a. any subsequent issuance or transfer of Equity Interests that results in any such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities being held by a Person other than the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company; and
 - b. any sale or other transfer of any such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities to a Person that is not either the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, shall be deemed, in each case, to constitute an issuance of such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities by such Restricted Subsidiary or the Company, as applicable, that was not permitted by this clause (11);
12. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of liability in respect of the Indebtedness of any Unrestricted Subsidiary of the Company or any Joint Venture but only to the extent that such liability is the result of the Company’s or any such Restricted Subsidiary’s being a general partner of such Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture and not as guarantor of such Indebtedness and provided that, after giving effect to any such incurrence, the aggregate principal amount of all Indebtedness incurred under this clause (12) and then outstanding does not exceed \$25.0 million;
13. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Acquired Debt in connection with a merger or consolidation satisfying either one of the financial tests set forth in clause (4) under the caption “— Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets”;
14. the incurrence of Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries arising from the honoring by a bank or other financial institution of a check, draft or similar instrument inadvertently (except in the case of daylight overdrafts) drawn against insufficient funds in the ordinary course of business; *provided, however*, that such Indebtedness is extinguished within five Business Days of incurrence;
15. the incurrence of Indebtedness or the issuance of Disqualified Stock or preferred securities of any of the Company and the Restricted Subsidiaries to the extent the net proceeds thereof are concurrently (a) used to redeem all of the outstanding notes or (b) deposited to effect Covenant Defeasance or Legal Defeasance or satisfy and discharge the indenture as described below under the caption “— Legal Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge”;
16. the incurrence of Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries consisting of the financing of insurance premiums in customary amounts consistent with the operations and business of the Company and the Restricted Subsidiaries; and
17. the incurrence by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of additional Indebtedness or the issuance by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of Disqualified Stock; *provided* that, after giving effect to any such incurrence or issuance, the aggregate principal amount of all Indebtedness incurred and Disqualified Stock issued under this clause (17) and then outstanding does not exceed the greater of (a) \$50.0 million or (b) 5.0% of the Company’s Consolidated Net Tangible Assets as of the date of incurrence or issuance.

For purposes of determining compliance with this “Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock” covenant, in the event that an item of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities (including Acquired Debt) meets the criteria of more than one of the categories of Permitted Debt described in clauses (1) through (17) above, or is entitled to be incurred pursuant to the first paragraph of this covenant, the Company will be permitted to classify (or later classify or reclassify in whole or in part in its sole discretion) such item of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities in any manner (including by dividing and classifying such item of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities in more than one type of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities permitted

[Table of Contents](#)

under such covenant) that complies with this covenant. The dollar equivalent principal amount of any Indebtedness denominated in a foreign currency and incurred pursuant to any dollar-denominated restriction on the incurrence of Indebtedness shall be calculated based on the relevant exchange rates in effect at the time of incurrence. Any Indebtedness under Credit Facilities on the Issue Date shall be considered incurred under the first paragraph of this covenant, subject to any subsequent classification or reclassification permitted pursuant to this paragraph.

The accrual of interest, the accretion or amortization of original issue discount, the accretion of principal with respect to a non-interest bearing or other discount security, the payment of interest on any Indebtedness in the form of additional Indebtedness with the same terms, and the payment of dividends on Disqualified Stock or preferred securities in the form of additional shares of the same class of Disqualified Stock or preferred securities will not be deemed to be an incurrence of Indebtedness or an issuance of Disqualified Stock or preferred securities for purposes of this covenant, *provided*, in each such case, that the amount thereof is included in Fixed Charges of the Company as accrued (adjusted, in the case of dividends, by the fraction specified in clause (4)(b) of the definition of “Fixed Charges”). For purposes of this covenant, (i) the accrual of an obligation to pay a premium in respect of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities arising in connection with the issuance of a notice of redemption or making of a mandatory offer to purchase such Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities and (ii) unrealized losses or charges in respect of Hedging Contracts (including those resulting from the application of SFAS 133) will, in case of (i) or (ii), not be deemed to be an incurrence of Indebtedness or issuance of Disqualified Stock or preferred securities. Further, the accounting reclassification of any obligation or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries as Indebtedness

or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities will not be deemed an incurrence of Indebtedness or issuance of Disqualified Stock or preferred securities for purposes of this covenant.

For purposes of determining any particular amount of Indebtedness under this covenant, (i) guarantees of, or obligations in respect of letters of credit relating to, Indebtedness otherwise included in the determination of such amount shall not also be included and (ii) if obligations in respect of letters of credit are incurred pursuant to a Credit Facility and are being treated as incurred pursuant to clause (1) of the definition of “Permitted Debt” and the letters of credit relate to other Indebtedness, then such other Indebtedness shall not be included.

Liens

The Company will not and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, create, incur, assume or otherwise cause or suffer to exist or become effective any Lien of any kind (other than Permitted Liens) securing Indebtedness upon any of their property or assets, now owned or hereafter acquired, unless the notes or any Subsidiary Guarantee of such Restricted Subsidiary, as applicable, is secured on an equal and ratable basis with (or on a senior basis (to at least the same extent as the notes are senior in right of payment) to, in the case of obligations subordinated in right of payment to the notes or such Subsidiary Guarantee, as the case may be) the obligations so secured until such time as such obligations are no longer secured by a Lien. Any Lien created for the benefit of the Holders of the notes pursuant to the preceding sentence shall provide by its terms that such Lien shall be automatically and unconditionally released and discharged upon the release and discharge of the initial Lien.

Dividend and Other Payment Restrictions Affecting Subsidiaries

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, directly or indirectly, create or permit to exist or become effective any consensual encumbrance or restriction on the ability of any Restricted Subsidiary to:

- 1. pay dividends or make any other distributions on its Capital Stock to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, or pay any Indebtedness or other obligations owed to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries;

S-67

[Table of Contents](#)

- 2. make loans or advances to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries; or
- 3. transfer any of its properties or assets to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries.

However, the preceding restrictions will not apply to encumbrances or restrictions existing under or by reason of:

- 1. agreements (including the Credit Agreement) as in effect on the Issue Date and any amendments, modifications, restatements, renewals, increases, supplements, refundings, replacements or refinancings of those agreements or the Indebtedness to which they relate, provided that the amendments, modifications, restatements, renewals, increases, supplements, refundings, replacements or refinancings are no more restrictive, taken as a whole, with respect to such dividend, distribution and other payment and transfer restrictions than those contained in those agreements on the Issue Date;
- 2. the indenture, the notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees;
- 3. applicable law;
- 4. any instrument of a Person acquired by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries as in effect at the time of such acquisition, which encumbrance or restriction is not applicable to any Person, or the properties or assets of any Person, other than the Person, or the property or assets of the Person, so acquired, *provided* that, in the case of any instrument governing Indebtedness, such Indebtedness was otherwise permitted by the terms of the indenture to be incurred;
- 5. customary non-assignment provisions in Hydrocarbon purchase and sale or exchange agreements or similar operational agreements or in licenses or leases, in each case entered into in the ordinary course of business and consistent with past practices;
- 6. Capital Lease Obligations, mortgage financings or purchase money obligations, in each case for property acquired in the ordinary course of business that impose restrictions on that property of the nature described in clause (3) of the preceding paragraph;
- 7. any agreement for the sale or other disposition of all or substantially all the Capital Stock or assets of a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company as to restrictions on distributions by that Restricted Subsidiary pending its sale or other disposition or other customary restrictions pursuant thereto;
- 8. Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness, *provided* that the restrictions contained in the agreements governing such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness are no more restrictive, taken as a whole, than those contained in the agreements governing the Indebtedness being Refinanced;
- 9. Liens securing Indebtedness otherwise permitted to be incurred under the provisions of the covenant described above under the caption “— Liens” that limit the right of the debtor to dispose of the assets subject to such Liens;
- 10. customary provisions with respect to the disposition or distribution of assets or property in joint venture agreements, asset sale

agreements, stock sale agreements and other similar agreements or other customary provisions;

- 11. any agreement or instrument relating to any property or assets acquired after the Issue Date, so long as such encumbrance or restriction relates only to the property or assets so acquired and is not and was not created in anticipation of such acquisitions;
- 12. restrictions on cash, Cash Equivalents or other deposits or net worth imposed by customers under contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business;
- 13. any other agreement governing Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities of the Company or any Guarantor that is permitted to be incurred or issued by the covenant described under “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock”; *provided, however*, that such encumbrances or restrictions are not materially more restrictive, taken as a whole, than those contained in the indenture or the Credit Agreement as it exists on the Issue Date;

S-68

[Table of Contents](#)

- 14. encumbrances and restrictions contained in contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business, not relating to any Indebtedness, and that do not, individually or in the aggregate, detract from the value of, or from the ability of the Company and the Restricted Subsidiaries to realize the value of, property or assets of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary in any manner material to the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary; and
- 15. Hedging Contracts permitted from time to time under the indenture.

Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets

Neither of the Issuers may, directly or indirectly: (1) consolidate or merge with or into another Person (whether or not such Issuer is the survivor); or (2) sell, assign, transfer, lease, convey or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its properties or assets in one or more related transactions, to another Person, unless:

- 1. either: (a) such Issuer is the survivor; or (b) the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than such Issuer) or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made is a Person organized or existing under the laws of the United States, any state of the United States or the District of Columbia; *provided, however*, that Finance Corp. may not consolidate or merge with or into any Person unless the Person formed by or surviving such consolidation or merger is a corporation satisfying such requirement so long as the Company is not a corporation;
- 2. the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than such Issuer) or the Person to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made assumes all the obligations of such Issuer under the notes and the indenture pursuant to agreements reasonably satisfactory to the trustee;
- 3. immediately after such transaction no Default or Event of Default exists;
- 4. in the case of a transaction involving the Company and not Finance Corp., either
 - a. the Company or the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Company), or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made will, on the date of such transaction immediately after giving pro forma effect thereto and to any related financing transactions as if the same had occurred at the beginning of the applicable four-quarter period, be permitted to incur at least \$1.00 of additional Indebtedness pursuant to the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test set forth in the first paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock”; or
 - b. immediately after giving effect to such transaction and any related financing transactions on a pro forma basis as if the same had occurred at the beginning of the applicable four-quarter period, the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio of the Company or the Person formed by or surviving any such consolidation or merger (if other than the Company), or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease, conveyance or other disposition has been made, will be equal to or greater than the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio of the Company immediately before such transactions; and
- 5. such Issuer has delivered to the trustee an officers’ certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger or disposition and such supplemental indenture (if any) comply with the indenture; *provided, however*, that such counsel may rely, as to matters of fact, on a certificate or certificates of officers of the General Partner.

Notwithstanding the restrictions described in the foregoing clause (4), (i) any Restricted Subsidiary (other than Finance Corp.) may consolidate with, merge into or dispose of all or part of its properties and assets to the Company or (ii) the Company may consolidate or merge with or into a Subsidiary of the

S-69

[Table of Contents](#)

Company, in each case, without the Company being required to comply with the preceding clause (4) in connection with any such consolidation, merger or disposition.

Notwithstanding the second preceding paragraph, the Company is permitted to reorganize as any other form of entity in accordance with the following procedures, *provided* that:

1. the reorganization involves the conversion (by merger, sale, contribution or exchange of assets or otherwise) of the Company into a form of entity other than a limited partnership formed under Delaware law;
2. the entity so formed by or resulting from such reorganization is an entity organized or existing under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia;
3. the entity so formed by or resulting from such reorganization assumes all the obligations of the Company under the notes and the indenture pursuant to agreements reasonably satisfactory to the trustee;
4. immediately after such reorganization no Default or Event of Default exists; and
5. such reorganization is not materially adverse to the Holders or Beneficial Owners of the notes (for purposes of this clause (5), a reorganization will not be considered materially adverse to the Holders or Beneficial Owners of the notes solely because the successor or survivor of such reorganization (a) is subject to federal or state income taxation as an entity or (b) is considered to be an “includible corporation” of an affiliated group of corporations within the meaning of Section 1504(b) of the Code or any similar state or local law).

Upon any consolidation or merger or any disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company in accordance with the foregoing, in which the Company is not the surviving entity, the surviving entity formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such disposition is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under the indenture and the notes with the same effect as if such surviving entity had been named as such, and thereafter (except in the case of a lease of all or substantially all of the Company’s properties or assets) the Company will be relieved of all obligations and covenants under the indenture and the notes.

Although there is a limited body of case law interpreting the phrase “substantially all,” there is no precise established definition of the phrase under applicable law. Accordingly, in certain circumstances there may be a degree of uncertainty as to whether a particular transaction would involve “all or substantially all” of the properties or assets of a Person.

The covenant described under “Mergers and Similar Transactions” in the accompanying base prospectus will not apply to the notes except as and to the extent of the covenant described above.

Transactions with Affiliates

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, make any payment to, or sell, lease, transfer or otherwise dispose of any of its properties or assets to, or purchase any property or assets from, or enter into or make or amend any transaction, contract, agreement, understanding, loan, advance or guarantee with, or for the benefit of, any Affiliate of the Company (each, an “Affiliate Transaction”), unless:

1. the Affiliate Transaction is on terms, taken as a whole, that are no less favorable to the Company or the relevant Restricted Subsidiary than those that would have been obtained in a comparable transaction by the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary with an unrelated Person; and
2. the Company delivers to the trustee, with respect to any Affiliate Transaction or series of related Affiliate Transactions involving aggregate consideration in excess of \$25.0 million, an officers’ certificate certifying that such Affiliate Transaction complies with this covenant and that such Affiliate

[Table of Contents](#)

Transaction has been approved by a majority of the disinterested members of the Board of Directors of the Company or the Company’s Conflicts Committee (or other committee serving a similar function).

The following items will not be deemed to be Affiliate Transactions and, therefore, will not be subject to the provisions of the prior paragraph:

1. any employment, severance, employee benefit, director or officer indemnification, equity award, equity option or equity appreciation or other compensation agreement or plan entered into by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business and payments, awards, grants or issuances of securities pursuant thereto;

- 2. transactions between or among any of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries;
- 3. transactions with a Person that is an Affiliate of the Company solely because the Company owns, directly or through a Restricted Subsidiary, an Equity Interest in, or otherwise controls, such Person;
- 4. transactions effected in accordance with the terms of (a) agreements described in the annual report on Form 10-K of Genesis Energy, L.P. for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016 under the caption “Transactions with Related Persons” or in note 13 to our audited historical financial statements included in such annual report, in each case, as such agreements are in effect on the Issue Date, (b) any amendment or replacement of any of such agreements or (c) any agreements entered into hereafter that are similar to any of such agreements, so long as, in the case of clause (b) or (c), the terms of any such amendment or replacement agreement or future agreement are, on the whole no less advantageous to the Company, or no less favorable to the Holders, in any material respect than the agreement so amended or replaced or the similar agreement referred to in the preceding clause (a), respectively;
- 5. customary compensation, indemnification and other benefits made available to officers, directors or employees of the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company, including reimbursement or advancement of out-of-pocket expenses and provisions of officers’ and directors’ liability insurance;
- 6. sales of Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) to Affiliates of the Company, or receipt by the Company of capital contributions from holders of its Equity Interests;
- 7. Permitted Investments or Restricted Payments that are permitted by the provisions of the indenture described above under the caption “— Restricted Payments”;
- 8. payments to the General Partner with respect to reimbursement for expenses in accordance with the Partnership Agreement as in effect on the Issue Date and as it may be amended, modified or supplemented from time to time, so long as any such amendment, modification or supplement is no less favorable to the Company in any material respect than the agreement prior to such amendment, modification or supplement;
- 9. in the case of contracts for gathering, transporting, treating, processing, marketing, distributing, storing or otherwise handling Hydrocarbons, or activities or services reasonably related or ancillary thereto, or other operational contracts, any such contracts are entered into in the ordinary course of business on terms substantially similar to those contained in similar contracts entered into by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary and third parties, or if neither the Company nor any Restricted Subsidiary has entered into a similar contract with a third party, then the terms are no less favorable than those available from third parties on an arm’s-length basis;
- 10. (a) guarantees by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries of performance of obligations of Unrestricted Subsidiaries or Joint Ventures in the ordinary course of business, except for guarantees of Indebtedness in respect of borrowed money, and (b) pledges by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of Capital Stock in Unrestricted Subsidiaries or Joint Ventures for the benefit of

[Table of Contents](#)

- lenders or other creditors of Unrestricted Subsidiaries or Joint Ventures as contemplated by clause (9) of the definition of “Permitted Liens” with respect to clause (b) so long as any such transaction, if involving aggregate consideration in excess of \$25.0 million, has been approved by a majority of the disinterested members of the Board of Directors of the Company;
- 11. transactions between the Company and any Person, a director of which is also a director of the General Partner or, if applicable, the Company; *provided, however*, that such director abstains from voting as a director of the General Partner or, if applicable, the Company on any matter involving such other Person; and
 - 12. any transaction in which the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, as the case may be, delivers to the trustee a letter from an Independent Advisor stating that such transaction is fair to the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary from a financial point of view or that such transaction meets the requirements of the first paragraph of this covenant.

Designation of Restricted and Unrestricted Subsidiaries

The Board of Directors of the Company may designate any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company to be an Unrestricted Subsidiary if that designation would not cause a Default. If a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company is designated as an Unrestricted Subsidiary, the aggregate fair market value of all outstanding Investments owned by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries in the Subsidiary properly designated will either be deemed to be an Investment made as of the time of the designation that will reduce the amount available for Restricted Payments under the first paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption “— Restricted Payments” or represent Permitted Investments, as determined by the Company. That designation will only be permitted if the Investment would be permitted at that time and if the Subsidiary so designated otherwise meets the definition of an Unrestricted Subsidiary.

The Board of Directors of the Company may at any time designate any Unrestricted Subsidiary to be a Restricted Subsidiary, provided that such designation will be deemed to be an incurrence of Indebtedness by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company of any outstanding Indebtedness of such Unrestricted Subsidiary and such designation will only be permitted if (1) such Indebtedness is permitted under the covenant described above

under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock,” either as “Permitted Debt” or pursuant to the first paragraph thereof with the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio, calculated on a pro forma basis as if such designation had occurred at the beginning of the four-quarter reference period, and (2) no Default or Event of Default would be in existence following such designation.

Additional Subsidiary Guarantees

If, after the Issue Date, any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that is not already a Guarantor guarantees any other Indebtedness of either of the Issuers or any other Guarantor which, when combined with any other Indebtedness for which such Restricted Subsidiary is an obligor or guarantor, is at least \$10.0 million in aggregate principal amount, then that Subsidiary will become a Guarantor by executing a supplemental indenture and delivering it to the trustee within 20 Business Days of the date on which it guaranteed or incurred such Indebtedness, as the case may be; *provided, however*, that the preceding shall not apply to Subsidiaries of the Company that have properly been designated as Unrestricted Subsidiaries in accordance with the indenture for so long as they continue to constitute Unrestricted Subsidiaries. Notwithstanding the preceding, any Subsidiary Guarantee of a Restricted Subsidiary that was incurred pursuant to this paragraph will be released in the circumstances under “— Subsidiary Guarantees.”

S-72

[Table of Contents](#)

Sale and Leaseback Transactions

The Company will not, and will not permit any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to, enter into any Sale and Leaseback Transaction other than an Equipment Lease Transaction; *provided, however*, that the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries may enter into a Sale and Leaseback Transaction if:

1. the Company or that Restricted Subsidiary, as applicable, could have (a) incurred Indebtedness in an amount equal to the Attributable Debt relating to such Sale and Leaseback Transaction under the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test in the first paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock” and (b) incurred a Lien to secure such Indebtedness pursuant to the covenant described above under the caption “— Liens”;
2. the gross cash proceeds of that Sale and Leaseback Transaction are at least equal to the fair market value, as determined in accordance with the definition of that term and set forth in an officers’ certificate delivered to the trustee, of the property that is the subject of that Sale and Leaseback Transaction; and
3. the transfer of assets in that Sale and Leaseback Transaction is permitted by, and the Company applies the proceeds of such transaction in compliance with, the covenant described above under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales.”

Business Activities

The Company will not, and will not permit any Restricted Subsidiary to, engage in any business other than a Permitted Business, except to such extent as would not be material to the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole.

Finance Corp. may not incur Indebtedness unless (1) the Company is an obligor or a co-obligor or guarantor of such Indebtedness or (2) the net proceeds of such Indebtedness are loaned to the Company, used to acquire outstanding debt securities issued by the Company or used to repay Indebtedness of the Company as permitted under the covenant described under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock.” Finance Corp. may not engage in any business not related directly or indirectly to obtaining money or arranging financing for the Company or its Restricted Subsidiaries.

Reports

Whether or not required by the Commission, so long as any notes are outstanding, the Company will file with the Commission for public availability within the time periods specified in the Commission’s rules and regulations (unless the Commission will not accept such a filing), and, if the Commission will not accept such a filing, the Company will furnish to the trustee and, upon its prior request, to any of the Holders or Beneficial Owners of notes (by hard copy or internet access), within five Business Days of the date such filing would otherwise be required to be made with the Commission:

1. quarterly and annual financial and other information with respect to the Company and its Subsidiaries that would be required to be contained in a filing with the Commission on Forms 10-Q and 10-K if the Company were required to file such Forms, prepared in all material respects in accordance with the rules and regulations applicable to such Forms, and, with respect to the annual information only, a report on the annual financial statements that would be required to be contained in a Form 10-K by the Company’s certified independent accountants; and
2. all current reports that would be required to be filed with the Commission on Form 8-K if the Company were required to file such reports.

If the Company has designated any of its Subsidiaries as Unrestricted Subsidiaries (other than Unrestricted Subsidiaries that, when taken

together with all other Unrestricted Subsidiaries, are “minor” within the meaning of Rule 3-10 of Regulation S-X, substituting 5% for 3% where applicable), then, the

[Table of Contents](#)

quarterly and annual financial information required by the preceding paragraph will include a reasonably detailed presentation, either on the face of the financial statements or in the footnotes thereto, or in Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations, of the financial condition and results of operations of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries separate from the financial condition and results of operations of the Unrestricted Subsidiaries of the Company.

The Company will be deemed to have furnished to the Holders and Beneficial Owners of notes and securities analysts and prospective investors the reports referred to in clauses (1) and (2) of the first paragraph of this covenant or the information referred to in the third paragraph of this covenant if the Company has posted such reports or information on the Company Website and issued a press release in respect thereof. For purposes of this covenant, the term “Company Website” means the collection of web pages that may be accessed on the World Wide Web using the URL address *http://www.genesisenergy.com* or such other address as the Company may from time to time designate in writing to the Trustee.

Covenant Termination

If at any time (a) the rating assigned to the notes by S&P and Moody’s is an Investment Grade Rating, (b) no Event of Default has occurred and is continuing under the indenture and (c) the Issuers have delivered to the trustee an officers’ certificate certifying to the matters specified in clauses (a) and (b) of this sentence as of the date of such certificate, the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries will no longer be subject to the provisions of the indenture described under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales” and the following provisions of the indenture described under the caption “— Certain Covenants”:

- “— Restricted Payments,”
- “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock,”
- “— Dividend and Other Payment Restrictions Affecting Subsidiaries,”
- “— Transactions with Affiliates,”
- “— Business Activities,”
- “— Designation of Restricted and Unrestricted Subsidiaries,”
- clause (4) of the first paragraph of “— Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets,” and
- “— Sale and Leaseback Transactions.”

However, the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries will remain subject to the provisions of the indenture described above under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Change of Control,” and the following provisions of the indenture described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants”:

- “— Liens,”
- “— Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets” (other than clause (4) of the first paragraph of such covenant),
- “— Additional Subsidiary Guarantees,”
- “— Reports,” and
- the covenant respecting payments for consent described below in the last paragraph under the caption “— Amendment, Supplement and Waiver.”

Events of Default and Remedies

Each of the following is an “Event of Default”:

1. default for 30 days in the payment when due of interest on the notes;

[Table of Contents](#)

2. default in payment when due of the principal of, or premium, if any, on the notes;

3. failure by the Company to comply with the provisions described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets”;

4. failure by the Company for 180 days after notice as provided below to comply with the provisions described under “— Certain Covenants — Reports”;

5. failure by the Company for 60 days after notice as provided below to comply with any of its other agreements in the indenture (including the provisions described under the captions “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales” and “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders —Change of Control”);

6. default under any mortgage, indenture or instrument under which there may be issued or by which there may be secured or evidenced any Indebtedness for money borrowed by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (or the payment of which is guaranteed by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries), whether such Indebtedness or guarantee now exists, or is created after the Issue Date, if that default:

a. is caused by a failure to pay principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on such Indebtedness prior to the expiration of the grace period provided in such Indebtedness (a “Payment Default”); or

b. results in the acceleration of such Indebtedness prior to its Stated Maturity, and, in each case, the principal amount of any such Indebtedness, together with the principal amount of any other such Indebtedness under which there has been a Payment Default or the maturity of which has been so accelerated, aggregates \$20.0 million or more; *provided, however*, that if any such Payment Default is cured or waived or any such acceleration rescinded, or such Indebtedness is repaid, within a period of 60 days from the continuation of such Payment Default beyond the applicable grace period or the occurrence of such acceleration, as the case may be, such Event of Default and any consequential acceleration of the notes shall be automatically rescinded, so long as such rescission does not conflict with any judgment or decree;

7. failure by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to pay final judgments aggregating in excess of \$20.0 million (to the extent not covered by insurance by a reputable and creditworthy insurer as to which the insurer has not disclaimed coverage), which judgments are not paid, discharged or stayed for a period of 60 days;

8. any Subsidiary Guarantee shall be held in any judicial proceeding to be unenforceable or invalid or shall cease for any reason to be in full force and effect or any Guarantor, or any Person acting on behalf of any Guarantor, shall deny or disaffirm its obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee (other than, in any such case, by reason of release of a Guarantor in accordance with the terms of the indenture); and

9. certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization described in the indenture with respect to Finance Corp., the Company or any of the Company’s Restricted Subsidiaries that is a Significant Subsidiary or any group of its Restricted Subsidiaries that, taken as a whole, would constitute a Significant Subsidiary of the Company.

In the case of an Event of Default arising from certain events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization described in the indenture, with respect to Finance Corp., the Company, any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that is a Significant Subsidiary or any group of its Restricted Subsidiaries that, taken together, would constitute a Significant Subsidiary of the Company, all outstanding notes will become due and payable immediately without further action or notice. If any other Event of Default occurs and is continuing, the trustee or the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the then outstanding notes (including any additional notes) may declare all the notes to be due and payable immediately. However, a default under clauses (4) and (5) of this paragraph will not constitute an Event of Default until

[Table of Contents](#)

the trustee or the holders of 25% in principal amount of the outstanding notes (including any additional notes) notify the Issuers in writing and, in the case of a notice given by the holders, the trustee of the default and the Issuers do not cure such default within the respective times specified in clauses (4) and (5) of this paragraph after receipt of such notice.

The indenture will provide that, at any time after a declaration of acceleration with respect to the notes as described in the preceding paragraph, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the notes (including any additional notes) may rescind and cancel such declaration and its consequences if:

- 1. the rescission would not conflict with any judgment or decree;
- 2. all existing Events of Default have been cured or waived except nonpayment of principal or interest that has become due solely because of such acceleration;
- 3. to the extent the payment of such interest is lawful, interest on overdue installments of interest and overdue principal, which has become due other than by such declaration of acceleration, has been paid; and
- 4. the Issuers have paid the trustee its reasonable compensation and reimbursed the trustee for its expenses, disbursements and advances.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent Default or impair any right consequent thereto.

Holders of the notes may not enforce the indenture or the notes except as will be provided in the indenture. Subject to certain limitations, Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding notes (including any additional notes) may direct the trustee in its exercise of any trust or power. The trustee may withhold notice of any continuing Default or Event of Default from Holders of the notes if it determines that withholding notice is in their interest, except a Default or Event of Default relating to the payment of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on, the notes.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the notes (including any additional notes) then outstanding (including, without limitation, waivers obtained in connection with a purchase of, or tender offer or exchange offer for, notes) by notice to the trustee may on behalf of the Holders of all of the notes waive any existing Default or Event of Default and its consequences under the indenture except a continuing Default or Event of Default in the payment of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on, the notes.

The Issuers will be required to deliver to the trustee annually a statement regarding compliance with the indenture. Upon any officer of the General Partner or Finance Corp. becoming aware of any Default or Event of Default, the Issuers are required to deliver to the trustee a statement specifying such Default or Event of Default.

The matters described under “Default, Remedies and Waiver of Default” in the accompanying base prospectus will not apply to the notes except as and to the extent described above.

No Personal Liability of Directors, Officers, Employees and Unitholders and No Recourse to General Partners

None of the General Partner or any director, officer, partner, employee, incorporator, manager or unitholder or other owner of Capital Stock of the General Partner, Issuers or any Guarantor, as such, will have any liability for any obligations of the Issuers or any Guarantor under the notes, the indenture or the Subsidiary Guarantees, or for any claim based on, in respect of, or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. Each Holder of notes by accepting a note waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for issuance of the notes. The waiver may not be effective to waive liabilities under the federal securities laws.

S-76

[Table of Contents](#)

Legal Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge

The Issuers may, at their option and at any time, elect to have all of their obligations discharged with respect to the outstanding notes and all obligations of the Guarantors discharged with respect to their Subsidiary Guarantees (“Legal Defeasance”), except for:

1. the rights of Holders of outstanding notes to receive payments in respect of the principal of, and interest or premium, if any, on, such notes when such payments are due from the trust referred to below;
2. the Issuers’ obligations with respect to the notes concerning issuing temporary notes, registration of notes, mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen notes and the maintenance of an office or agency for payment and money for security payments held in trust;
3. the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the trustee, and the Issuers’ obligations in connection therewith; and
4. the Legal Defeasance provisions of the indenture.

In addition, the Issuers may, at their option and at any time, elect to terminate their obligations under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders” and under all of the covenants that are described under the caption “— Certain Covenants” (other than the covenant described in the first paragraph under the caption “— Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets,” except to the extent described below) and the operation of clause (3) through (8) under the caption “— Events of Default and Remedies” and the limitations described in clause (4) of the first paragraph under the caption “— Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets” (“Covenant Defeasance”) and thereafter any failure to comply with those covenants will not constitute a Default or Event of Default with respect to the notes. In the event Covenant Defeasance occurs, certain events (not including non-payment, bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization events) described under “— Events of Default and Remedies” will no longer constitute an Event of Default with respect to the notes. If the Issuers exercise either their Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance option, each Guarantor will be released and relieved of any obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee and any security for the notes (other than the trust) will be released.

In order to exercise either Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance:

1. the Issuers must irrevocably deposit with the trustee, in trust, for the benefit of the Holders of the notes, cash in U.S. dollars, non-callable Government Securities, or a combination of cash in U.S. dollars and non-callable Government Securities, in amounts as will be sufficient in the opinion of a nationally recognized investment bank, appraisal firm or firm of independent public accountants to pay the principal of, and interest and premium, if any, on, the outstanding notes on the date of fixed maturity or on the applicable redemption date, as the case may be, and the Issuers must specify whether the notes are being defeased to the date of fixed maturity or to a particular redemption date;
2. in the case of Legal Defeasance, the Issuers must deliver to the trustee an opinion of counsel reasonably acceptable to the trustee confirming that:

- a. the Issuers have received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling; or
 - b. since the Issue Date, there has been a change in the applicable federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion of counsel will confirm that, the Holders of the outstanding notes will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Legal Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Legal Defeasance had not occurred; *provided, however*, that such counsel may rely, as to matters of fact, on a certificate or certificates of officers of the General Partner;
3. in the case of Covenant Defeasance, the Issuers must deliver to the trustee an opinion of counsel reasonably acceptable to the trustee confirming that the Holders of the outstanding notes will

S-77

[Table of Contents](#)

- not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such Covenant Defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such Covenant Defeasance had not occurred; *provided, however*, that such counsel may rely, as to matters of fact, on a certificate or certificates of officers of the General Partner;
- 4. no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing on the date of such deposit (other than a Default or Event of Default resulting from the incurrence of Indebtedness or other borrowing of funds, or the grant of Liens securing such Indebtedness or other borrowing, all or a portion of which are to be applied to such deposit);
 - 5. such Legal Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any material agreement or instrument (other than the indenture) to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or by which the company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound;
 - 6. the Issuers must deliver to the trustee an officers' certificate stating that the deposit was not made by the Issuers with the intent of preferring the Holders of notes over the other creditors of the Issuers with the intent of defeating, hindering, delaying or defrauding creditors of the Issuers or others; and
 - 7. the Issuers must deliver to the trustee an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent relating to the Legal Defeasance or the Covenant Defeasance have been complied with ; *provided, however*, that such counsel may rely, as to matters of fact, on a certificate or certificates of officers of the General Partner.

The indenture will be discharged and will cease to be of further effect as to all notes issued thereunder (except as to surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of the notes and as otherwise specified in the indenture), when:

- 1. either:
 - a. all notes that have been authenticated, except lost, stolen or destroyed notes that have been replaced or paid and notes for whose payment money has been deposited in trust and thereafter repaid to the Issuers, have been delivered to the trustee for cancellation; or
 - b. all notes that have not been delivered to the trustee for cancellation have become due and payable or will become due and payable within one year by reason of the mailing of a notice of redemption or otherwise and the Issuers or any Guarantor has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with the trustee as trust funds in trust solely for the benefit of the Holders, cash in U.S. dollars, non-callable Government Securities, or a combination of cash in U.S. dollars and non-callable Government Securities, in amounts as will be sufficient without consideration of any reinvestment of interest, to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on the notes not delivered to the trustee for cancellation for principal, premium, if any, and accrued interest to the date of fixed maturity or redemption;
- 2. no Default or Event of Default has occurred and is continuing on the date of the deposit or will occur as a result of the deposit (other than a Default or Event of Default resulting from the incurrence of Indebtedness or other borrowing of funds, or the granting of Liens securing such Indebtedness or other borrowing of funds, all or a portion of which are to be applied to such deposit) and the deposit will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, any material agreement or instrument (other than the indenture) to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound;
- 3. the Issuers or any Guarantor has paid or caused to be paid all sums payable by it under the indenture; and

S-78

[Table of Contents](#)

4. the Issuers have delivered irrevocable instructions to the trustee to apply the deposited money toward the payment of the notes at fixed maturity or the redemption date, as the case may be.

In addition, the Issuers must deliver an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel to the trustee stating that all conditions precedent to satisfaction and discharge have been satisfied; *provided, however*, that such counsel may rely, as to matters of fact, on a certificate or certificates of officers of the General Partner.

The matters described under "Legal Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge" in the accompanying base prospectus will not apply to the notes except as and to the extent of the matters described above.

Amendment, Supplement and Waiver

Except as provided in the next two succeeding paragraphs, the indenture or the notes may be amended or supplemented with the consent of the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding notes (including any additional notes) issued under the indenture (including, without limitation, consents obtained in connection with a purchase of, or tender offer or exchange offer for, notes), and any existing default or compliance with any provision of the indenture or the notes may be waived with the consent of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding notes (including any additional notes) issued under the indenture including, without limitation, consents obtained in connection with a purchase of, or tender offer or exchange offer for, notes.

Without the consent of each Holder affected, an amendment, supplement or waiver may not (with respect to any notes held by a non-consenting Holder):

1. reduce the principal amount of notes whose Holders must consent to an amendment, supplement or waiver;
2. reduce the principal of or change the fixed maturity of any note or alter the provisions with respect to the redemption of the notes (other than provisions relating to the covenants described above under the caption "— Repurchase at the Option of Holders");
3. reduce the rate of or change the time for payment of interest on any note;
4. waive a Default or Event of Default in the payment of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on the notes (except a rescission of acceleration of the notes by the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of the notes and a waiver of the payment default that resulted from such acceleration);
5. make any note payable in currency other than that stated in the notes;
6. make any change in the provisions of the indenture relating to waivers of past Defaults or the rights of Holders of notes to receive payments of principal of, or interest or premium, if any, on the notes (other than payments required by one of the covenants described under the caption "— Repurchase at the Option of Holders");
7. waive a redemption payment with respect to any note (other than a payment required by one of the covenants described above under the caption "— Repurchase at the Option of Holders");
8. release any Guarantor from any of its obligations under its Subsidiary Guarantee or the indenture, except in accordance with the terms of the indenture; or
9. make any change in the preceding amendment, supplement and waiver provisions.

Notwithstanding the preceding, without the consent of any Holder of notes, the Issuers, the Guarantors and the trustee may amend or supplement the indenture or the notes:

1. to cure any ambiguity, defect or inconsistency;

[Table of Contents](#)

2. to provide for uncertificated notes in addition to or in place of certificated notes;
3. to provide for the assumption of an Issuer's obligations to Holders of notes in the case of a merger or consolidation or sale of all or substantially all of such Issuer's properties or assets;
4. to make any change that would provide any additional rights or benefits to the Holders of notes or that does not adversely affect the legal rights under the indenture of any such Holder or to conform the indenture to this prospectus supplement;
5. to secure the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees pursuant to the requirements of the covenant described above under the subheading "— Certain Covenants — Liens";
6. to provide for the issuance of additional notes in accordance with the limitations set forth in the indenture;
7. to add any additional Guarantor or to evidence the release of any Guarantor from its Subsidiary Guarantee, in each case as provided in the indenture;

- 8. to comply with requirements of the Commission in order to effect or maintain the qualification of the indenture under the Trust Indenture Act;
- 9. to evidence or provide for the acceptance of appointment under the indenture of a successor trustee;
- 10. to conform the text of the indenture or the notes to any provision of the “Description of Notes” contained in this prospectus supplement; or
- 11. to provide for the reorganization of the Company as any other form of entity in accordance with the third paragraph of “— Certain Covenants — Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets.”

Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries shall, directly or indirectly, pay or cause to be paid any consideration, whether by way of interest, fee or otherwise, to any Beneficial Owner or Holder of any notes for or as an inducement to any consent to any waiver, supplement or amendment of any terms or provisions of the indenture or the notes, unless such consideration is offered to be paid or agreed to be paid to all Beneficial Owners and Holders of the notes which so consent in the time frame set forth in solicitation documents relating to such consent.

The consent of the Holders is not necessary under the indenture to approve the particular form of any proposed amendment, supplement or waiver. It is sufficient if such consent approves the substance of the proposed amendment, supplement or waiver. After an amendment, supplement or waiver under the indenture becomes effective, the Company is required to mail to the Holders a notice briefly describing the amendment, supplement or waiver. However, the failure to give such notice, or any defect in the notice, will not impair or affect the validity of the amendment, supplement or waiver.

The matters described under “Modifications and Waivers” in the accompanying base prospectus will not apply to the notes except as and to the extent of the matters described above.

Concerning the Trustee

If the trustee becomes a creditor of an Issuer or any Guarantor, the indenture limits its right to obtain payment of claims in certain cases, or to realize on certain property received in respect of any such claim as security or otherwise. The trustee will be permitted to engage in other transactions; however, if it acquires any conflicting interest (as defined in the Trust Indenture Act) after a Default has occurred and is continuing, it must eliminate such conflict within 90 days, apply to the Commission for permission to continue as trustee (if the indenture has been qualified under the Trust Indenture Act) or resign.

The Holders of a majority in principal amount of the then outstanding notes will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for exercising any remedy available to the trustee, subject to certain exceptions. The indenture provides that in case an Event of Default occurs and is

S-80

[Table of Contents](#)

continuing, the trustee will be required, in the exercise of its powers, to use the degree of care of a prudent man in the conduct of his own affairs. Subject to such provisions, the trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the indenture at the request of any Holder of notes, unless such Holder has offered to the trustee security or indemnity satisfactory to it against any loss, liability or expense.

Governing Law

The indenture, the notes and the Subsidiary Guarantees will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the laws of the State of New York.

Additional Information

Anyone who receives this prospectus supplement may obtain a copy of the indenture without charge by writing to Genesis Energy, L.P., 919 Milam, Suite 2100, Houston, Texas 77002, Attention: Chief Financial Officer.

Book Entry, Delivery and Form

Except as set forth below, the notes will be issued in registered, global form in minimum denominations of \$2,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess of \$2,000. The notes will be issued at the closing of this offering only against payment in immediately available funds.

The notes initially will be represented by one or more notes in registered, global form without interest coupons (the “global notes”). The global notes will be deposited upon issuance with the trustee as custodian for DTC and registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of DTC, in each case, for credit to an account of a direct or indirect participant in DTC as described below.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a global note is limited to institutions that have accounts with DTC or its nominee, or persons that may hold interests through those participants. In addition, ownership of beneficial interests by participants in a global note will be evidenced only by, and the transfer of that ownership interest will be effected only through, records maintained by DTC or its nominee for a global note. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global note by persons that hold those interests through participants will be evidenced only by, and the transfer of that

ownership interest within that participant will be effected only through, records maintained by that participant. DTC has no knowledge of the actual beneficial owners of the notes. Beneficial owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase, but beneficial owners are expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the participants through which the beneficial owners entered the transaction. The laws of some jurisdictions require that certain purchasers of notes take physical delivery of notes they purchase in definitive form. These laws may impair your ability to transfer beneficial interests in a global note.

We will make payment of principal of, and interest on, notes represented by a global note registered in the name of or held by DTC or its nominee to DTC or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner and holder of the global note representing those notes. DTC has advised us that upon receipt of any payment of principal of, or interest on, a global note, DTC immediately will credit accounts of participants on its book-entry registration and transfer system with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective interests in the principal amount of that global note, as shown in the records of DTC. Payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in a global note held through those participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with notes held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in “street name,” and will be the sole responsibility of those participants, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements that may be in effect from time to time.

Neither we, any trustee nor any of our respective agents will be responsible for any aspect of the records of DTC, any nominee or any participant relating to, or payments made on account of, beneficial

S-81

[Table of Contents](#)

interests in a permanent global note or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any of the records of DTC, any nominee or any participant relating to such beneficial interests.

A global note is exchangeable for definitive notes registered in the name of, and a transfer of a global note may be registered to, any person other than DTC or its nominee, only if:

- DTC notifies us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as depositary for that global security or has ceased to be a registered clearing agency and we do not appoint another institution to act as depositary within 90 days; or
- we notify the trustee that we wish to terminate that global security.

Any global note that is exchangeable pursuant to the preceding sentence will be exchangeable in whole for definitive notes in registered form, of like tenor and of an equal aggregate principal amount as the global note, in denominations specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if other than \$2,000 and multiples of \$1,000. The definitive notes will be registered by the registrar in the name or names instructed by DTC. We expect that these instructions may be based upon directions received by DTC from its participants with respect to ownership of beneficial interests in the global note.

Except as provided above, owners of the beneficial interests in a global note will not be entitled to receive physical delivery of notes in definitive form and will not be considered the holders of notes for any purpose under the indenture. No global note shall be exchangeable except for another global note of like denomination and tenor to be registered in the name of DTC or its nominee. Accordingly, each person owning a beneficial interest in a global note must rely on the procedures of DTC and, if that person is not a participant, on the procedures of the participant through which that person owns its interest, to exercise any rights of a holder under the global note or the indenture.

We understand that, under existing industry practices, in the event that we request any action of holders, or an owner of a beneficial interest in a global note desires to give or take any action that a holder is entitled to give or take under the notes or the indenture, DTC would authorize the participants holding the relevant beneficial interests to give or take that action. Additionally, those participants would authorize beneficial owners owning through those participants to give or take that action or would otherwise act upon the instructions of beneficial owners owning through them.

DTC has advised us that it is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a “banking organization” within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a “clearing corporation” within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a “clearing agency” registered under the Exchange Act. DTC was created to hold securities of its participants and to facilitate the clearance and settlement of transactions among its participants in notes through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of the participants. By doing so, DTC eliminates the need for physical movement of notes certificates. DTC’s participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is owned by a number of its participants and by the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., NYSE Amex Equities. Access to DTC’s book-entry system is also available to others, such as banks, brokers, dealers, and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a participant, either directly or indirectly. The rules applicable to DTC and its participants are on file with the Commission.

Investors may hold interests in the notes outside the U.S. through the Euroclear System (“Euroclear”) or Clearstream Banking (“Clearstream”) if they are participants in those systems, or indirectly through organizations which are participants in those systems. Euroclear and Clearstream will hold interests on behalf of their participants through customers’ securities accounts in Euroclear’s and Clearstream’s names on the books of their respective depositaries, which in turn will hold such interests in customers’ securities accounts in the depositaries’ names on the

books of DTC.

Euroclear advises that it was created in 1968 to hold securities for participants of Euroclear (“Euroclear Participants”) and to clear and settle transactions between Euroclear Participants through simultaneous

[Table of Contents](#)

electronic book-entry delivery against payment, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates and any risk from lack of simultaneous transfers of securities and cash. Euroclear includes various other services, including securities lending and borrowing and interfaces with domestic markets in several countries. Euroclear is operated by the Euroclear S.A./N.V. (the “Euroclear Operator”), under contract with Euroclear Clearance Systems S.C., a Belgian cooperative corporation (the “Cooperative”). All operations are conducted by the Euroclear Operator, and all Euroclear securities clearance accounts and Euroclear cash accounts are accounts with the Euroclear Operator, not the Cooperative. The Cooperative establishes policy for Euroclear on behalf of Euroclear Participants. Euroclear Participants include banks (including central banks), securities brokers and dealers, and other professional financial intermediaries and may include any agents. Indirect access to Euroclear is also available to other firms that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Euroclear Participant, either directly or indirectly.

Securities clearance accounts and cash accounts with the Euroclear Operator are governed by the Terms and Conditions Governing Use of Euroclear, the related Operating Procedures of the Euroclear System, and applicable Belgian law (collectively, the “Terms and Conditions”). The Terms and Conditions govern transfers of securities and cash within Euroclear, withdrawals of securities and cash within Euroclear, withdrawals of securities and cash from Euroclear, and receipts of payments with respect to securities in Euroclear. All securities in Euroclear are held on a fungible basis without attribution of specific certificates to specific securities clearance accounts. The Euroclear Operator acts under the Terms and Conditions only on behalf of Euroclear Participants and has no record of or relationship with persons holding through Euroclear Participants.

Distributions with respect to notes held beneficially through Euroclear will be credited to the cash accounts of Euroclear Participants in accordance with the Terms and Conditions, to the extent received by the U.S. depository for Euroclear.

Clearstream advises that it is incorporated under the laws of Luxembourg as a professional depository. Clearstream holds securities for its participating organizations (“Clearstream Participants”) and facilitates the clearance and settlement of securities transactions between Clearstream Participants through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of Clearstream Participants, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates. Clearstream provides to Clearstream Participants, among other things, services for safekeeping, administration, clearance, and settlement of internationally traded securities and securities lending and borrowing. Clearstream interfaces with domestic markets in several countries. As a professional depository, Clearstream is subject to regulation by the Luxembourg Monetary Institute. Clearstream Participants are recognized financial institutions around the world, including agents, securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations and may include any agents. Indirect access to Clearstream is also available to others, such as banks, brokers, dealers, and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Clearstream Participant either directly or indirectly.

Distributions with respect to notes held beneficially through Clearstream will be credited to cash accounts of Clearstream Participants in accordance with its rules and procedures, to the extent received by the U.S. depository for Clearstream.

We have provided the descriptions herein of the operations and procedures of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream solely as a matter of convenience. These operations and procedures are solely within the control of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream and are subject to change by them from time to time. We believe that the sources from which the information in this section and elsewhere in this prospectus concerning DTC, Euroclear, the Euroclear Operator, the Cooperative, Euroclear’s system, Clearstream and Clearstream’s system has been obtained are reliable, but neither we, any underwriters nor the trustee takes any responsibility for the accuracy of the information.

Initial settlement for the notes will be made in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading between DTC participants will occur in the ordinary way in accordance with DTC’s rules and will be settled in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading between Euroclear Participants and/or

[Table of Contents](#)

Clearstream Participants will occur in the ordinary way in accordance with the applicable rules and operating procedures of Euroclear and Clearstream, as applicable, and will be settled using the procedures applicable to conventional eurobonds in immediately available funds.

Cross-market transfers between persons holding directly or indirectly through DTC, on the one hand, and directly or indirectly through Euroclear Participants or Clearstream Participants, on the other, will be effected in DTC in accordance with DTC rules on behalf of the relevant European international clearing system by its U.S. depository; however, such cross-market transactions will require delivery of instructions to the relevant European international clearing system by the counterparty in such system in accordance with its rules and procedures and within its

established deadlines (European time). The relevant European international clearing system will, if the transaction meets its settlement requirements, deliver instructions to its U.S. depositary to take action to effect final settlement on its behalf by delivering or receiving notes in DTC, and making or receiving payment in accordance with normal procedures for same-day funds settlement applicable to DTC. Euroclear Participants and Clearstream Participants may not deliver instructions directly to their respective U.S. depositaries.

Because of time-zone differences, credits of securities received in Euroclear or Clearstream as a result of a transaction with a DTC participant will be made during subsequent securities settlement processing and dated the business day following the DTC settlement date. Credits or any transactions in securities settled during this processing will be reported to the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream Participants on that following business day. Cash received in Euroclear or Clearstream as a result of sales of notes by or through a Euroclear Participant or a Clearstream Participant to a DTC participant will be received with value on the DTC settlement date but will be available in the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream cash account only as of the business day following settlement in DTC.

Although DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream have agreed to the foregoing procedures to facilitate transfers of securities among participants of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream, they are under no obligation to perform or continue to perform these procedures and these procedures may be discontinued at any time.

Certain Definitions

Set forth below are certain defined terms that will be used in the indenture. Reference is made to the indenture for a full disclosure of all such terms, as well as any other capitalized terms used herein for which no definition is provided.

“*Acquired Debt*” means, with respect to any specified Person:

1. Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock of any other Person existing at the time such other Person was merged with or into or became a Restricted Subsidiary of such specified Person, whether or not such Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock is incurred or issued in connection with, or in contemplation of, such other Person merging with or into, or becoming a Restricted Subsidiary of, such specified Person, but excluding Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock which is extinguished, retired, cancelled or repaid in connection with such Person merging with or into or becoming a Restricted Subsidiary of such specified Person; and
2. Indebtedness secured by a Lien encumbering any asset acquired by such specified Person but excluding Indebtedness which is extinguished, retired, cancelled or repaid in connection with such asset being acquired by such specified Person.

“*Affiliate*” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For purposes of this definition, “control,” as used with respect to any Person, means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management or policies of such Person, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by agreement or otherwise; *provided, however*, that beneficial ownership of 10% or more of the Voting Stock of a Person will be deemed to be control by the other Person; and further, that any third Person which also beneficially owns 10% or more of the Voting Stock of a specified Person

[Table of Contents](#)

shall not be deemed to be an Affiliate of either the specified Person or the other Person merely because of such common ownership in such specified Person. For purposes of this definition, the terms “controlling,” “controlled by” and “under common control with” have correlative meanings.

“*Alkali Business Acquisition*” shall mean the acquisition by the Company of all of the issued and outstanding stock of Tronox Alkali Corporation pursuant to the Alkali Business Acquisition Agreement.

“*Alkali Business Acquisition Agreement*” shall mean that certain Stock Purchase Agreement, dated as of August 2, 2017, by and among the Company, Tronox US Holdings Inc., Tronox Alkali Corporation, and Tronox Limited (for the limited purposes set forth therein), as the same may be amended, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time in accordance with its terms in a manner not materially adverse to the Holders of notes as determined in good faith by the Company.

“*Asset Sale*” means:

1. the sale, lease, conveyance or other disposition of any properties or assets (including by way of a merger or consolidation or by way of a Sale and Leaseback Transaction); and
2. the issuance of Equity Interests in any of the Company’s Restricted Subsidiaries or the sale of Equity Interests in any of its Restricted Subsidiaries; *provided, however*, that, in the case of clause (1) or (2), the disposition of all or substantially all of the properties or assets of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole will not constitute an “Asset Sale” but will be governed by the provisions of the indenture described under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Change of Control” and/or the provisions described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets” and not by the provisions of the Asset Sales covenant;

Notwithstanding the preceding, the following items will not be deemed to be Asset Sales:

1. any single transaction or series of related transactions that involves properties or assets having a fair market value of less than \$25.0 million;
2. a transfer of properties or assets between or among any of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries;
3. an issuance or sale of Equity Interests by a Restricted Subsidiary to the Company or to another Restricted Subsidiary;
4. the sale, lease or other disposition of equipment, inventory, accounts receivable or other properties or assets in the ordinary course of business;
5. the sale or other disposition of cash or Cash Equivalents, Hedging Contracts or other financial instruments in the ordinary course of business;
6. a Restricted Payment that is permitted by the covenant described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments” or a Permitted Investment (including, without limitation, unwinding any Hedging Contracts);
7. the creation or perfection of a Lien that is not prohibited by the covenant described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Liens”;
8. dispositions in connection with Permitted Liens;
9. surrender or waiver of contract rights or the settlement, release or surrender of contract, tort or other claims of any kind;
10. the grant in the ordinary course of business of any non-exclusive license of patents, trademarks, registrations therefor and other similar intellectual property;
11. an Asset Swap; and
12. an Equipment Lease Transaction.

S-85

[Table of Contents](#)

“*Asset Swap*” means any substantially contemporaneous (and in any event occurring within 180 days of each other) purchase and sale or exchange of any assets or properties used or useful in a Permitted Business between the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries and another Person; *provided* that any Net Proceeds received must be applied in accordance with the covenant described above under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales” as if the Asset Swap were an Asset Sale.

“*Attributable Debt*” in respect of a Sale and Leaseback Transaction means, at the time of determination, the present value of the obligation of the lessee for net rental payments during the remaining term of the lease included in such Sale and Leaseback Transaction including any period for which such lease has been extended or may, at the option of the lessor, be extended. Such present value shall be calculated using a discount rate equal to the rate of interest implicit in such transaction, determined in accordance with GAAP. As used in the preceding sentence, the “net rental payments” under any lease for any such period shall mean the sum of rental and other payments required to be paid with respect to such period by the lessee thereunder, excluding any amounts required to be paid by such lessee on account of maintenance and repairs, insurance, taxes, assessments, water rates or similar charges. In the case of any lease that is terminable by the lessee upon payment of penalty, such net rental payment shall also include the amount of such penalty, but no rent shall be considered as required to be paid under such lease subsequent to the first date upon which it may be so terminated.

“*Available Cash*” has the meaning assigned to such term in the Partnership Agreement, as in effect on the Issue Date.

“*Beneficial Owner*” has the meaning assigned to such term in Rule 13d-3 and Rule 13d-5 under the Exchange Act, except that in calculating the beneficial ownership of any particular “person” (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), such “person” will be deemed to have beneficial ownership of all securities that such “person” has the right to acquire by conversion or exercise of other securities, whether such right is currently exercisable or is exercisable only upon the occurrence of a subsequent condition. The terms “Beneficially Owns,” “Beneficially Owned,” and “Beneficial Ownership” have correlative meanings.

“*Board of Directors*” means:

1. with respect to Finance Corp., its board of directors;
2. with respect to the Company, the Board of Directors of the General Partner (or any other Person serving a similar function for the Company) or any authorized committee thereof; and
3. with respect to any other Person, the board or committee of such Person serving a similar function.

“*Board Resolution*” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the applicable Person to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors of such Person and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the trustee.

“*Business Day*” means each day that is not a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in Houston, Texas or in New York, New York or another place of payment are authorized or required by law to close.

“*Capital Lease Obligation*” means, at the time any determination is to be made, the amount of the liability in respect of a capital lease that would at that time be required to be capitalized on a balance sheet in accordance with GAAP (other than any obligation that is required to be classified and accounted for as an operating lease for financial reporting purposes in accordance with GAAP as in effect on the Issue Date), and the amount of Indebtedness represented by such obligation shall be the capitalized amount of such obligation determined in accordance with GAAP; and the stated maturity thereof shall be the date of the last payment of rent or any other amount due under such lease prior to the first date upon which such lease may be terminated by the lessee without payment of a penalty. For purposes of the covenant described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Liens,” a Capital Lease Obligation will be deemed to be secured by a Lien on the property being leased.

S-86

[Table of Contents](#)

“*Capital Stock*” means:

- 1. in the case of a corporation, corporate stock;
- 2. in the case of an association or business entity, any and all shares, interests, participations, rights or other equivalents (however designated) of corporate stock;
- 3. in the case of a partnership or limited liability company, partnership interests (whether general or limited) or membership interests; and
- 4. any other interest or participation that confers on a Person the right to receive a share of the profits and losses of, or distributions of assets of, the issuing Person.

“*Cash Equivalents*” means:

- 1. United States dollars;
- 2. securities issued or directly and fully guaranteed or insured by the United States government or any agency or instrumentality of the United States government (provided that the full faith and credit of the United States is pledged in support of those securities) having maturities of not more than one year from the date of acquisition;
- 3. marketable general obligations issued by any state of the United States of America or any political subdivision of any such state or any public instrumentality thereof maturing within one year from the date of acquisition thereof and, at the time of acquisition thereof, having a credit rating of “A” or better from either S&P or Moody’s;
- 4. certificates of deposit, demand deposits and eurodollar time deposits with maturities of one year or less from the date of acquisition, bankers’ acceptances with maturities not exceeding one year and overnight bank deposits, in each case, with any lender party to the Credit Agreement or with any domestic commercial bank or any United States branch of a foreign bank having capital and surplus in excess of \$500.0 million and a Thomson Bank Watch Rating of “B” or better;
- 5. repurchase obligations with a term of not more than seven days for underlying securities of the types described in clauses (2), (3) and (4) above entered into with any financial institution meeting the qualifications specified in clause (4) above;
- 6. commercial paper having one of the two highest ratings obtainable from Moody’s or S&P and in each case maturing within one year after the date of acquisition;
- 7. money market funds at least 95% of the assets of which constitute Cash Equivalents of the kinds described in clauses (1) through (6) of this definition; and
- 8. marketable short-term money market and similar securities having a rating of at least P-2 or A-2 from either Moody’s or S&P, respectively, and in each case maturing within 24 months after the date of creation thereof.

“*Change of Control*” means the occurrence of any of the following:

- 1. the direct or indirect sale, lease, transfer, conveyance or other disposition (other than by way of merger or consolidation), in one or a series of related transactions, of all or substantially all of the properties or assets (including Capital Stock of the Restricted Subsidiaries) of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries taken as a whole, to any “person” (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act), which occurrence is followed within 60 days thereafter by a Rating Decline;
- 2. the adoption of a plan relating to the liquidation or dissolution of the Company or removal of the General Partner by the limited partners of the Company;
- 3. the consummation of any transaction (including, without limitation, any merger or consolidation), the result of which is that any “person” (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the

[Table of Contents](#)

Exchange Act) becomes the Beneficial Owner, directly or indirectly, of more than 50% of the Voting Stock of the Company, measured by voting power rather than number of shares, units or the like, which occurrence is followed within 60 days thereafter by a Rating Decline; *provided, however*, that a Change of Control shall not have occurred as a result of the Beneficial Ownership of more than 50% of the Voting Stock of the Company by the Qualified Owners, so long as at least 20% of the common units of the Company remain registered and listed for trading on a national securities exchange or quoted on an established automated over-the-counter trading market in the United States; or

4. the Company consolidates or merges with or into another Person or any Person consolidates or merges with or into the Company, in either case under this clause (4), in one transaction or a series of related transactions in which immediately after the consummation thereof Persons Beneficially Owning, directly or indirectly, Voting Stock representing in the aggregate a majority of the total voting power of the Voting Stock of the Company immediately prior to such consummation do not Beneficially Own, directly or indirectly, Voting Stock representing a majority of the total voting power of the Voting Stock of the Company or the surviving or transferee Person, which occurrence is followed within 60 days thereafter by a Rating Decline.

Notwithstanding the preceding, a conversion of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries from a limited liability company, corporation, limited partnership or other form of entity to a limited liability company, corporation, limited partnership or other form of entity or an exchange of all of the outstanding Equity Interests in one form of entity for Equity Interests in another form of entity shall not constitute a Change of Control, so long as following such conversion or exchange the “persons” (as that term is used in Section 13(d)(3) of the Exchange Act) who Beneficially Owned, directly or indirectly, the Voting Stock of the Company immediately prior to such transactions continue to Beneficially Own, directly or indirectly, in the aggregate more than 50% of the Voting Stock of such entity, or continue to Beneficially Own, directly or indirectly, sufficient Equity Interests in such entity to elect a majority of its directors, managers, trustees or other persons serving in a similar capacity for such entity or its general partner, as applicable, and, in either case no “person” Beneficially Owns, directly or indirectly, more than 50% of the Voting Stock of such entity or its general partner, as applicable; *provided, however*, that a Change of Control shall not have occurred as a result of the Beneficial Ownership of more than 50% of the Voting Stock of the Company by the Qualified Owners, so long as at least 20% of the common units, or other comparable common equity, of such entity remains registered and listed for trading on a national securities exchange or quoted on an established automated over-the-counter trading market in the United States.

“*Change of Control Offer*” means, upon a Change of Control, an offer required to be made by the Company to repurchase all or any part of each Holder’s notes on the terms set forth in the indenture.

“*Code*” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended from time to time, or any successor statute or statutes thereto.

“*Commission*” or “*SEC*” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“*Consolidated Cash Flow*” means, with respect to any specified Person for any period, the Consolidated Net Income of such Person for such period plus, without duplication:

- 1. an amount equal to any net loss realized by such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in connection with an Asset Sale, to the extent such losses were deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; *plus*
- 2. provision for taxes based on income or profits of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, to the extent that such provision for taxes was deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; *plus*
- 3. consolidated interest expense of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, whether paid or accrued and whether or not capitalized (including, without limitation, amortization of

[Table of Contents](#)

debt issuance costs and original issue discount, non-cash interest payments, the interest component of any deferred payment obligations, the interest component of all payments associated with Capital Lease Obligations, imputed interest with respect to Attributable Debt, commissions, discounts and other fees and charges incurred in respect of letter of credit or bankers’ acceptance financings), and net of the effect of all payments made or received pursuant to interest rate Hedging Contracts, to the extent that any such expense was deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; *plus*

4. depreciation, depletion and amortization (including amortization of intangibles but excluding amortization of prepaid cash expenses that were paid in a prior period), impairment, non-cash equity based compensation expense and other non-cash items (excluding any such non-cash item to the extent that it represents an accrual of or reserve for cash expenses in any future period or amortization of a

prepaid cash expense that was paid in a prior period) of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period to the extent that such depreciation and amortization, impairment and other non-cash items that were deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; *plus*

- 5. unrealized non-cash losses resulting from foreign currency balance sheet adjustments required by GAAP to the extent such losses were deducted in computing such Consolidated Net Income; *plus*
- 6. all extraordinary, unusual or non-recurring items of gain or loss, or revenue or expense and, without duplication, Transaction Costs; *plus*
- 7. any cash received by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary pursuant to any Direct Financing Lease during such period; *plus*
- 8. any deferred or non-cash equity compensation or stock option or similar compensation expense, including all expense recorded for the Company's equity appreciation rights plan in excess of cash payments for exercised rights, in each case during such period; provided, however, that actual cash payments made with respect to such deferred compensation during such period shall reduce Consolidated Cash Flow for such period; *plus*
- 9. an amount equal to dividends or distributions paid during such period in cash to such Person or any of its Restated Subsidiaries by a Person that is not a Restricted Subsidiary or that is accounted for by the equity method of accounting; *minus*
- 10. non-cash items increasing such Consolidated Net Income for such period, in each case, on a consolidated basis and determined in accordance with GAAP.

“*Consolidated Net Income*” means, with respect to any specified Person for any period, the aggregate of the Net Income of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, on a consolidated basis, determined in accordance with GAAP, *provided that*:

- 1. the aggregate Net Income (but not net loss in excess of such aggregate Net Income) of each of the Persons that is not a Restricted Subsidiary or that is accounted for by the equity method of accounting will be excluded;
- 2. the Net Income of any Restricted Subsidiary will be excluded to the extent that the declaration or payment of dividends or similar distributions by that Restricted Subsidiary of that Net Income is not at the date of determination permitted without any prior governmental approval (that has not been obtained) or, directly or indirectly, by operation of the terms of its charter or any judgment, decree, order, statute, rule or governmental regulation applicable to that Restricted Subsidiary or its stockholders, partners or members;
- 3. the cumulative effect of a change in accounting principles will be excluded;
- 4. unrealized losses and gains under derivative instruments included in the determination of Consolidated Net Income, including, without limitation those resulting from the application of Statement of Financial Accounting Standards No. 133 will be excluded;

[Table of Contents](#)

- 5. any nonrecurring charges relating to any premium or penalty paid, write off of deferred finance costs or other charges in connection with redeeming or retiring any Indebtedness prior to its Stated Maturity will be excluded;
- 6. any asset (including goodwill) impairment or writedown on or related to non-current assets under applicable GAAP or Commission guidelines will be excluded; and
- 7. any income or losses attributable to Direct Financing Leases will be excluded.

“*Consolidated Net Tangible Assets*” means, with respect to any Person at any date of determination, the aggregate amount of total assets included in such Person's most recent quarterly or annual consolidated balance sheet prepared in accordance with GAAP less applicable reserves reflected in such balance sheet, after deducting the following amounts: (a) all current liabilities reflected in such balance sheet, and (b) all goodwill, trademarks, patents, unamortized debt discounts and expenses and other like intangibles reflected in such balance sheet.

“*consolidation*” means, with respect to any Person, the consolidation of the accounts of the Restricted Subsidiaries of such Person with those of such Person, all in accordance with GAAP; *provided, however*, that “consolidation” will not include consolidation of the accounts of any Unrestricted Subsidiary of such Person with the accounts of such Person. The term “consolidated” has a correlative meaning to the foregoing.

“*Credit Agreement*” means the Fourth Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of June 30, 2014, by and among the Company, as borrower, Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as administrative agent, Bank of America N.A. and Bank of Montreal, as co-syndication agents, U.S. Bank National Association, as documentation agent, and each of the other lenders party thereto, as amended by the First Amendment thereto, dated August 25, 2014, the Second Amendment thereto, dated July 16, 2015, the Third Amendment thereto, dated September 17, 2015, the Fourth Amendment thereto, dated April 27, 2016, the Fifth Amendment thereto, dated May 9, 2017, and the Sixth Amendment thereto, dated July 28, 2017, or any successor or replacement agreements and whether by the same or any other agent, lender or group of lenders, together with the related documents thereto (including, without limitation, any guarantee agreements and security documents), in each case as such agreements may be amended (including any amendment and restatement thereof), supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time, including any agreements extending the maturity of, Refinancing, replacing, increasing or otherwise restructuring all or any portion of the Indebtedness under such agreements.

“*Credit Facilities*” means one or more debt facilities (including, without limitation, the Credit Agreement), commercial paper facilities or debt issuances, in each case with banks or other institutional lenders or institutional investors providing for revolving credit loans, term loans, receivables or inventory financing (including through the sale of receivables or inventory to such lenders or to special purpose entities formed to borrow from such lenders against such receivables or inventory), commercial paper, debt securities or letters of credit, in each case, as amended, restated, modified, or Refinanced (including Refinancing with any capital markets transaction) in whole or in part from time to time.

“*Davison Family*” means James E. Davison, James E. Davison, Jr., Steven Davison, Todd Davison and the members of their Families.

“*Davison Group*” means (i) any member of the Davison Family, (ii) any Related Person of any such member, and (iii) the James Ellis Davison, Jr. Grantor Retained Annuity Trust, the Steven Davison Family Trust, the Todd Davison Children’s Trust c/o Argent Trust, and the Todd Davison Legacy Trust-2010 c/o Argent Trust. For the avoidance of doubt, the Persons named in (iii) above may be Related Persons of members of the Davison Family.

“*Default*” means any event that is, or with the passage of time or the giving of notice or both would be, an Event of Default.

“*Direct Financing Lease*” means (i) the note of Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC owing to Genesis NEJD Holdings, LLC and related financing lease between Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC and Denbury Onshore,

S-90

[Table of Contents](#)

LLC and (ii) any other arrangement, in the case of (i) or (ii) in respect of which cash received pursuant to such arrangements is shown on the Company’s consolidated statement of cash flows as being attributable to “direct financing leases.”

“*Disqualified Stock*” means any Capital Stock that, by its terms (or by the terms of any security into which it is convertible, or for which it is exchangeable, in each case at the option of the holder of the Capital Stock), or upon the happening of any event, matures or is mandatorily redeemable, pursuant to a sinking fund obligation or otherwise, or redeemable at the option of the holder of the Capital Stock, in whole or in part, on or prior to the date that is 91 days after the final Stated Maturity of the notes. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, (a) any Capital Stock that would constitute Disqualified Stock solely because the holders of the Capital Stock have the right to require the Company to repurchase or redeem such Capital Stock upon the occurrence of a change of control or an asset sale will not constitute Disqualified Stock if the terms of such Capital Stock provide that the Company may not repurchase or redeem any such Capital Stock pursuant to such provisions unless such repurchase or redemption complies with the covenant described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments” and (b) any Capital Stock issued pursuant to any plan of the Company or any of its Affiliates for the benefit of one or more employees will not constitute Disqualified Stock solely because it may be required to be repurchased by the Company or any of its Affiliates in order to satisfy applicable contractual, statutory or regulatory obligations.

For purposes of the covenant under the caption “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock,” the “amount” or “principal amount” of any Disqualified Stock or preferred securities shall equal the greater of its voluntary or involuntary liquidation preference and its maximum fixed repurchase price, in each case, exclusive of accrued dividends. For purposes hereof, the “maximum fixed repurchase price” of any Disqualified Stock or preferred securities which do not have a fixed repurchase price shall be calculated in accordance with the terms of such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities as if such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities were redeemed, repaid or repurchased on the date on which the “amount” or “principal amount” thereof shall be required to be determined pursuant to the indenture; *provided, however*, that if such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities could not be required to be redeemed, repaid or repurchased at the time of such determination, the redemption, repayment or repurchase price will be the book value of such Disqualified Stock or preferred securities as reflected in the most recent financial statements of such Person.

“*Equipment Lease Transactions*” means sales or transfers of new equipment within 30 days of its acquisition by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business consistent with historical practice to any Person whereby the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries shall then or thereafter rent or lease as lessee such new equipment or any part thereof to use for substantially the same purpose or purposes as such new equipment sold or transferred.

“*Equity Interests*” means Capital Stock and all warrants, options or other rights to acquire Capital Stock (but excluding any debt security that is convertible into, or exchangeable for, Capital Stock).

“*Equity Offering*” means (i) any public or private sale of Capital Stock (other than Disqualified Stock) made for cash on a primary basis by the Company after the Issue Date; or (ii) any contribution to capital of the Company in respect of Capital Stock of the Company, *provided* that at any time on or after Change of Control, any sale of Capital Stock to, or contribution to capital by, an Affiliate of the Company shall not be deemed an Equity Offering.

“*Exchange Act*” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any successor statute or statutes thereto.

“*Existing Indebtedness*” means the aggregate principal amount of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries (other than Indebtedness under the Credit Agreement, which is considered incurred under the first paragraph under the covenant entitled “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock,” and other than intercompany Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock) in

existence on the Issue Date, until such amounts are repaid.

[Table of Contents](#)

“Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries” means Genesis Free State Pipeline, LLC, Genesis NEJD Pipeline, LLC, Independence Hub, LLC, Poseidon Oil Pipeline Company, LLC, TDC Americas, LLC, TDC Chile, SpA, TDC Energy Canada Ltd., TDC Peru S.A.C., and TDC South America, LLC.

“fair market value” means the value that would be paid by a willing buyer to an unaffiliated willing seller in a transaction not involving distress or necessity of either party, determined in good faith by the Board of Directors of the Company in the case of amounts of \$30.0 million or more and otherwise by an officer of the General Partner, which determination will be conclusive for all purposes under the indenture.

“Family” means, with respect to any natural person, (i) such Person, (ii) any spouse or descendant of such Person, (iii) any other natural person who is a member of the family of any such Person referenced in (i)-(ii) above and (iv) any other natural person who has been adopted by such person referenced in (i)-(iii) above.

“Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio” means with respect to any specified Person for any four-quarter reference period, the ratio of the Consolidated Cash Flow of such Person for such period to the Fixed Charges of such Person for such period. In the event that the specified Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries incurs, assumes, guarantees, repays, repurchases, redeems, defeases or otherwise discharges any Indebtedness (other than ordinary working capital borrowings) or issues, repurchases or redeems preferred securities subsequent to the commencement of the applicable four-quarter reference period and on or prior to the date on which the event for which the calculation of the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio is made (the “Calculation Date”), then the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio will be calculated giving pro forma effect to such incurrence, assumption, guarantee, repayment, repurchase, redemption, defeasance or other discharge of Indebtedness, or such issuance, repurchase or redemption of preferred securities, and the use of the proceeds therefrom as if the same had occurred at the beginning of such period.

In addition, for purposes of calculating the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio:

1. acquisitions that have been made by the specified Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (or by any Person acquired by such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries), including through mergers, consolidations or otherwise (including acquisitions of assets used in a Permitted Business), and including in each case any related financing transactions (including repayment of Indebtedness) during the four-quarter reference period or subsequent to such reference period and on or prior to the Calculation Date, will be given pro forma effect as if they had occurred on the first day of the four-quarter reference period, including any Consolidated Cash Flow and any pro forma expense and cost reductions that have occurred or are reasonably expected to occur within the next 12 months, in the reasonable judgment of the chief financial or accounting officer of the General Partner (regardless of whether those cost savings or operating improvements could then be reflected in pro forma financial statements in accordance with Regulation S-X promulgated under the Securities Act or any other regulation or policy of the Commission related thereto);
2. the Consolidated Cash Flow attributable to discontinued operations, as determined in accordance with GAAP, and operations or businesses (and ownership interests therein) disposed of prior to the Calculation Date, will be excluded;
3. the Fixed Charges attributable to discontinued operations, as determined in accordance with GAAP, and operations or businesses disposed of prior to the Calculation Date, will be excluded, but only to the extent that the obligations giving rise to such Fixed Charges will not be obligations of the specified Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries following the Calculation Date; and
4. interest income reasonably anticipated by such Person to be received during the applicable four-quarter period from cash or Cash Equivalents held by such Person or any Restricted Subsidiary of such Person, which cash or Cash Equivalents exist on the Calculation Date or will exist as a result of the transaction giving rise to the need to calculate the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio, will be included.

For purposes of this definition, (a) any Person that is a Restricted Subsidiary on the Calculation Date will be deemed to have been a Restricted Subsidiary at all times during the reference period; and (b) any

[Table of Contents](#)

Person that is not a Restricted Subsidiary on the Calculation Date will be deemed not to have been a Restricted Subsidiary at any time during the reference period.

“Fixed Charges” means, with respect to any specified Person for any period, the sum, without duplication, of:

1. the consolidated interest expense of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries for such period, whether paid or accrued (including, without limitation, the interest component of any deferred payment obligations, the interest component of all payments associated with

Capital Lease Obligations, imputed interest with respect to Attributable Debt, commissions, discounts and other fees and charges incurred in respect of letter of credit or bankers' acceptance financings), and net of the effect of all payments made or received pursuant to interest rate Hedging Contracts; *plus*

- 2. the consolidated interest expense of such Person and its Restricted Subsidiaries that was capitalized during such period; *plus*
- 3. any interest expense on Indebtedness of another Person that is guaranteed by such Person or one of its Restricted Subsidiaries or secured by a Lien on assets of such Person or one of its Restricted Subsidiaries, whether or not such guarantee or Lien is called upon; *plus*
- 4. the product of (a) all dividends, whether paid or accrued and whether or not in cash, on any series of Disqualified Stock of such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries, other than dividends on Equity Interests payable solely in Equity Interests of the Company (other than Disqualified Stock) or to the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, times (b) a fraction, the numerator of which is one and the denominator of which is one minus the then current combined federal, state and local statutory tax rate of such Person, expressed as a decimal, in each case, on a consolidated basis and determined in accordance with GAAP.

Furthermore, in calculating "Fixed Charges" for purposes of determining the "Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio":

- a. interest on outstanding Indebtedness determined on a fluctuating basis as of the Calculation Date and which will continue to be so determined thereafter shall be deemed to have accrued at a fixed rate per annum equal to the rate of interest on such Indebtedness in effect on the Calculation Date;
- b. if interest on any Indebtedness actually incurred on the Calculation Date may optionally be determined at an interest rate based upon a factor of a prime or similar rate, a eurocurrency interbank offered rate, or other rates, then the interest rate in effect on the Calculation Date will be deemed to have been in effect during the reference period;
- c. notwithstanding clauses (1) and (2) above, interest on Indebtedness determined on a fluctuating basis, to the extent such interest is covered by Hedging Contracts, shall be deemed to accrue at the rate per annum resulting after giving effect to the operation of such agreements; and
- d. interest on Indebtedness referred to in clause (3) will be included only to the extent attributable to the portion of such Indebtedness that is so guaranteed by such Person or its Restricted Subsidiaries or so secured by a lien on the assets thereof (provided that the amount of such Indebtedness so secured will be the lesser of (a) the fair market value of such assets at the date of determination and (b) the amount of such Indebtedness).

"GAAP" means generally accepted accounting principles in the United States, which are in effect from time to time.

"General Partner" means Genesis Energy, LLC and its successors and permitted assigns as general partner of the Company.

"Genesis Energy, LLC" means Genesis Energy, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company, and any successor thereto.

[Table of Contents](#)

"Government Securities" means securities that are:

- 1. direct obligations of the United States of America for the timely payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged; or
- 2. obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America the timely payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, which, in either case, are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuers thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act), as custodian with respect to any such Government Securities or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Government Securities held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depository receipt; provided that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Government Securities or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Government Securities evidenced by such depository receipt.

"guarantee" means a guarantee other than by endorsement of negotiable instruments for collection in the ordinary course of business, direct or indirect, in any manner including, without limitation, by way of a pledge of assets, acting as co-obligor or through letters of credit or reimbursement agreements in respect thereof, of all or any part of any Indebtedness; *provided, however*, that the term "guarantee" shall not include endorsements for collection or deposit in the ordinary course of business. When used as a verb, "guarantee" has a correlative meaning.

"Guarantors" means each of:

- 1. the Subsidiaries of the Company, other than Finance Corp., executing the indenture as initial Guarantors; and
- 2. any other Restricted Subsidiary of the Company that becomes a Guarantor in accordance with the provisions of the indenture; and their respective successors and assigns, in each case, until the Subsidiary Guarantee of such Person is released in accordance with the provisions of the indenture.

“*Hedging Contracts*” means, with respect to any specified Person:

1. (i) any agreement of such Person with any other Person, whereby, directly or indirectly, such Person is entitled to receive from time to time periodic payments calculated by applying either a floating or a fixed rate of interest on a stated notional amount in exchange for periodic payments made by such other Person calculated by applying a fixed or a floating rate of interest on the same notional amount or (ii) any interest rate swap agreement, interest rate future agreement, interest rate option agreement, interest rate cap agreement or interest rate collar agreement entered into with one or more financial institutions and designed to protect the Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries entering into the agreement against fluctuations in interest rates with respect to Indebtedness incurred;
2. any foreign exchange contract or similar currency protection agreement entered into with one or more financial institutions and designed to protect the Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries entering into the agreement against fluctuations in currency exchange rates with respect to Indebtedness incurred;
3. any commodity futures contract, forward contract, commodity swap agreement, commodity option or other similar agreement or arrangement or any combination thereof designed to protect against fluctuations in the price of Hydrocarbons purchased, used, produced, processed or sold by that Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries at the time; and
4. any other agreement or arrangement designed to protect such Person or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries against fluctuations in interest rates, commodity prices or currency exchange rates.

S-94

[Table of Contents](#)

“*Holder*” means a Person in whose name a note is registered.

“*Hydrocarbons*” means (i) crude oil, natural gas, casinghead gas, drip gasoline, natural gasoline, condensate, distillate, liquid hydrocarbons, gaseous hydrocarbons and all constituents, elements or compounds thereof and all products, by-products and all other substances (whether or not hydrocarbon in nature) produced in connection therewith or refined, separated, settled or derived therefrom or the processing thereof, and (ii) all other minerals and substances, including, but not limited to, liquefied petroleum gas, natural gas, kerosene, sulphur, lignite, coal, uranium, thorium, iron, geothermal steam, water, carbon dioxide, helium, and (iii) any and all other minerals, ores, or substances of value, and the products and proceeds therefrom.

“*Indebtedness*” means, with respect to any specified Person, any indebtedness of such Person, without duplication and whether or not contingent:

1. in respect of borrowed money;
2. evidenced by bonds, notes, debentures or similar instruments;
3. in respect of all outstanding letters of credit issued for the account of such Person that support obligations that constitute Indebtedness (provided that the amount of such letters of credit included in Indebtedness shall not exceed the amount of the Indebtedness being supported) and, without duplication, the unreimbursed amount of all drafts drawn under such letters of credit issued for the account of such Person;
4. in respect of bankers’ acceptances;
5. representing Capital Lease Obligations;
6. representing the balance deferred and unpaid of the purchase price of any property, except any such balance that constitutes an accrued expense or trade payable;
7. representing any obligations under Hedging Contracts,

if and to the extent any of the preceding items (other than letters of credit and obligations under Hedging Contracts) would appear as a liability upon a balance sheet of the specified Person prepared in accordance with GAAP; *provided, however*, that any indebtedness which has been defeased in accordance with GAAP or defeased pursuant to the irrevocable deposit of cash or Cash Equivalents (in an amount sufficient to satisfy all such indebtedness obligations at maturity or redemption, as applicable, and all payments of interest and premium, if any) in a trust or account created or pledged for the sole benefit of the holders of such indebtedness (and subject to no other Liens) and the other applicable terms of the instrument governing such indebtedness shall not constitute “Indebtedness.” In addition, the term “Indebtedness” includes, with respect to any Person, all Indebtedness of other Persons secured by a Lien on any asset of the specified Person (other than Indebtedness of an Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture of the specified Person to the extent secured by a Lien on or pledge of Equity Interests of such Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture as contemplated by clause (9) of the definition of “Permitted Liens”), whether or not such Indebtedness is assumed by the specified Person (*provided* that the amount of such Indebtedness will be the lesser of (a) the fair market value of such asset at such date of determination and (b) the amount of such Indebtedness of such other Persons) and, to the extent not otherwise included, the guarantee by the specified Person of any Indebtedness of any other Person. For the avoidance of doubt, the term “Indebtedness” excludes

- (i) any obligation arising from any agreement providing for indemnities, purchase price adjustments, holdbacks, contingency payment obligations based on a final financial statement or report or the performance of the acquired or disposed assets or similar obligations (other than guarantees of Indebtedness) incurred by the specified Person in connection with the acquisition or disposition of assets;
- (ii) accrued expenses and trade accounts payable arising in the ordinary course of business;

S-95

[Table of Contents](#)

- (iii) any unrealized losses or charges in respect of Hedging Contracts (including those resulting from the application of FAS 133);
- (iv) any obligations in respect of (a) bid, performance, completion, surety, appeal and similar bonds, (b) obligations in respect of bankers’ acceptances, (c) insurance obligations or bonds and other similar bonds and obligations and (d) any guarantees or letters of credit functioning as or supporting any of the foregoing bonds or obligations; *provided, however* that such bonds or obligations mentioned in subclause (a), (b), (c) or (d) of this clause (iv) are incurred in the ordinary course of the business of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries and do not relate to obligations for borrowed money;
- (v) any obligations in respect of completion bonds, performance bonds, bid bonds, appeal bonds, surety bonds, bankers’ acceptances, letters of credit, insurance obligations or bonds and other similar bonds and obligations incurred by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary in the ordinary course of business and any guarantees and obligations of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary with respect to or letters of credit functioning as or supporting any of the foregoing bonds or obligations; and
- (vi) any contracts and other obligations, agreements instruments or arrangements described in clause (11) of the definition of “Permitted Liens.”

The “amount” or “principal amount” of any Indebtedness outstanding as of any date will be, except as specified below, determined in accordance with GAAP:

- 1. in the case of any Indebtedness issued with original issue discount, the accreted value of the Indebtedness;
- 2. in the case of obligations under any Hedging Contracts, the termination value of the agreement or arrangement giving rise to such obligations that would be payable by such Person at such date;
- 3. in the case of any Capitalized Lease Obligation, the amount determined in accordance with the definition thereof;
- 4. in the case of other unconditional obligations (other than those specified in clauses (1) or (2) of the first paragraph of this definition), the amount of the liability thereof determined in accordance with GAAP;
- 5. in the case of other contingent obligations (other than those specified in clauses (1) or (2) of the first paragraph of this definition), the maximum liability at such date of such Person; and
- 6. the principal amount of the Indebtedness, together with any interest on the Indebtedness that is more than 30 days past due, in the case of any other Indebtedness.

“*Independent Advisor*” means a reputable accounting, appraisal or nationally recognized investment banking, engineering or consulting firm (a) which does not, and whose directors, officers and employees or Affiliates do not, have a direct or indirect material financial interest in the Company and (b) which, in the judgment of the Board of Directors of the Company, is otherwise disinterested, independent and qualified to perform the task for which it is to be engaged.

“*Investment Grade Rating*” means a rating equal to or higher than Baa3 (or the equivalent) by Moody’s and BBB- (or the equivalent) by S&P, or, if either such rating agency ceases to rate the notes for reasons outside of the Company’s control, the equivalent investment grade credit rating from any other nationally recognized statistical rating agency selected by the Company.

“*Investments*” means, with respect to any Person, all direct or indirect investments by such Person in other Persons (including Affiliates) in the forms of loans (including guarantees or other obligations), advances or capital contributions (excluding (1) commission, travel and similar advances to officers and

S-96

[Table of Contents](#)

employees made in the ordinary course of business and (2) advances to customers in the ordinary course of business that are recorded as accounts receivable on the balance sheet of the lender), purchases or other acquisitions for consideration of Indebtedness, Equity Interests or other securities, together with all items that are or would be classified as investments on a balance sheet prepared in accordance with GAAP. Except as otherwise provided in the indenture, the amount of any Investment shall be its fair market value at the time the investment is made and shall not be adjusted

for increases or decreases in value, or write-ups, write-downs or write-offs with respect to such Investment. If the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company sells or otherwise disposes of any Equity Interests of any direct or indirect Restricted Subsidiary of the Company such that, after giving effect to any such sale or disposition, such Person is no longer a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, the Company will be deemed to have made an Investment on the date of any such sale or disposition in an amount equal to the fair market value of the Equity Interests of such Restricted Subsidiary not sold or disposed of in an amount determined as provided in the final paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments.” The acquisition by the Company or any Subsidiary of the Company of a Person that holds an Investment in a third Person will be deemed to be an Investment made by the Company or such Subsidiary in such third Person in an amount equal to the fair market value of the Investment held by the acquired Person in such third Person on the date of any such acquisition in an amount determined as provided in the final paragraph of the covenant described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments.”

“*Issue Date*” means the date of original issuance of the notes (excluding, for such purposes, any additional notes).

“*Joint Venture*” means any Person that is not a direct or indirect Subsidiary of the Company in which the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries makes any Investment.

“*Lien*” means, with respect to any asset, any mortgage, lien, pledge, charge, security interest or encumbrance of any kind in respect of such asset, whether or not filed, recorded or otherwise perfected under applicable law, including any conditional sale or other title retention agreement, any lease in the nature thereof, any option or other agreement to sell or give a security interest in and any filing of or agreement to give any financing statement under the Uniform Commercial Code (or equivalent statutes) of any jurisdiction other than a precautionary financing statement respecting a lease not intended as a security agreement.

“*Make-Whole Premium*” means, with respect to a note at any time, the excess, if any, of (a) the present value at such time of (i) the redemption price of such note at October 1, 2020 (such redemption price being set forth in the table appearing under the caption “— Optional Redemption”) plus (ii) any required interest payments due on such note through October 1, 2020 (except for accrued and unpaid interest at such time), computed using a discount rate equal to the Treasury Rate at such time plus 50 basis points, discounted to the redemption date on a semi-annual basis (assuming a 360-day year consisting of twelve 30-day months), over (b) the principal amount of such note.

“*Measuring Date*” means November 18, 2010.

“*Moody’s*” means Moody’s Investors Service, Inc. or any successor to the rating agency business thereof.

“*Net Income*” means, with respect to any specified Person, the net income (loss) of such Person, determined in accordance with GAAP and before any reduction in respect of preferred securities dividends, excluding, however:

1. any gain (or loss), together with any related provision for taxes on such gain (or loss), realized in connection with: (a) any Asset Sale; or (b) the disposition of any securities by such Person or the extinguishment of any Indebtedness of such Person; and
2. any extraordinary gain (or loss), together with any related provision for taxes on such extraordinary gain (or loss).

[Table of Contents](#)

“*Net Proceeds*” means the aggregate cash proceeds received by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in respect of any Asset Sale (including, without limitation, any cash received upon the sale or other disposition of any non-cash consideration received in any Asset Sale), net of:

1. the direct costs relating to such Asset Sale, including, without limitation, legal, accounting and investment banking fees and sales commissions, severance costs and any relocation expenses incurred as a result of the Asset Sale;
2. taxes paid or payable, or taxes required to be accrued as a liability under GAAP, as a result of the Asset Sale, in each case, after taking into account any available tax credits or deductions and any tax sharing arrangements;
3. amounts required to be applied to the repayment of Indebtedness secured by a Lien on the properties or assets that were the subject of such Asset Sale, in accordance with the terms of any Lien upon or other security agreement of any kind with respect to such assets, or which must by its terms, or in order to obtain a necessary consent to such Asset Sale, or by applicable law, be repaid out of the proceeds from such Asset Sale;
4. any amounts to be set aside in any reserve established in accordance with GAAP or any amount placed in escrow, in either case for adjustment in respect of the sale price of such properties or assets or for liabilities associated with such Asset Sale and retained by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries until such time as such reserve is reversed or such escrow arrangement is terminated, in which case Net Proceeds shall include only the amount of the reserve so reversed or the amount returned to the Company or its Restricted Subsidiaries from such escrow arrangement, as the case may be; and
5. all distributions and other payments required to be made to minority interest holders in the Restricted Subsidiaries or Joint Ventures that are the subject of such Asset Sale.

“*Non-Recourse Debt*” means Indebtedness:

1. as to which neither the Company nor any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (a) provides credit support of any kind (including any undertaking, agreement or instrument that would constitute Indebtedness), (b) is directly or indirectly liable as a guarantor or otherwise, or (c) is the lender;
2. no default with respect to which (including any rights that the holders of the Indebtedness may have to take enforcement action against an Unrestricted Subsidiary) would permit upon notice, lapse of time or both any holder of any other Indebtedness (other than the notes) of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to declare a default on such other Indebtedness or cause the payment of the Indebtedness to be accelerated or payable prior to its Stated Maturity; and
3. the explicit terms of which provide there is no recourse against any of the Capital Stock or assets of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries except as contemplated by clause (9) of the definition of “Permitted Liens.”

For purposes of determining compliance with the covenant described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock” above, in the event that any Non-Recourse Debt of any of the Company’s Unrestricted Subsidiaries ceases to be Non-Recourse Debt of such Unrestricted Subsidiary, such event will be deemed to constitute an incurrence of Indebtedness by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company.

“*Obligations*” means any principal, premium, if any, interest (including interest accruing on or after the filing of any petition in bankruptcy or for reorganization, whether or not a claim for post-filing interest is allowed in such proceeding), penalties, fees, charges, expenses, indemnifications, reimbursement obligations, damages, guarantees, and other liabilities or amounts payable under the documentation governing any Indebtedness or in respect thereto.

“*pari passu Indebtedness*” means any Indebtedness of the Issuers or any Guarantor that ranks pari passu in right of payment with the notes or such Guarantor’s Subsidiary Guarantees, as applicable.

S-98

[Table of Contents](#)

“*Partnership Agreement*” means the Fifth Amended and Restated Agreement of Limited Partnership of the Company, dated as of December 28, 2010, as in effect on the Issue Date and as such may be further amended, modified or supplemented from time to time.

“*Permitted Business*” means either (1) gathering, transporting, compressing, treating, processing, marketing, distributing, storing or otherwise handling Hydrocarbons, or activities or services reasonably related or ancillary thereto including entering into Hedging Contracts in the ordinary course of business and not for speculative purposes to support these businesses and the development, manufacture and sale of equipment or technology related to these activities, (2) any other business that generates gross income that constitutes “qualifying income” under Section 7704(d) of the Code, or (3) any activity that is ancillary, complementary or incidental to or necessary or appropriate for the activities described in clauses (1) or (2) of this definition.

“*Permitted Business Investments*” means Investments by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries in any Unrestricted Subsidiary of the Company or in any Joint Venture; *provided* that:

1. either (a) at the time of such Investment and immediately thereafter, the Company could incur \$1.00 of additional Indebtedness under the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test set forth in the first paragraph of the covenant described under “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock” above or (b) such Investment does not exceed the aggregate amount of Incremental Funds (as defined in the covenant described under “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments”) not previously expended at the time of making such Investment;
2. if such Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture has outstanding Indebtedness at the time of such Investment, either (a) all such Indebtedness is Non-Recourse Debt or (b) any such Indebtedness of such Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture that is recourse to the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (which shall include, without limitation, all Indebtedness of such Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture for which the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries may be directly or indirectly, contingently or otherwise, obligated to pay, whether pursuant to the terms of such Indebtedness, by law or pursuant to any guarantee, including, without limitation, any “claw-back,” “make-well” or “keep-well” arrangement) at the time such Investment is made, constitutes Permitted Debt or could be incurred at that time by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries under the Fixed Charge Coverage Ratio test set forth in the first paragraph of the covenant described under “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock”; and
3. such Unrestricted Subsidiary’s or Joint Venture’s activities are not outside the scope of the Permitted Business.

“*Permitted Investments*” means:

1. any Investment in the Company (including, without limitation, through purchases of notes) or in a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company;
2. any Investment in Cash Equivalents;

- 3. any Investment by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company in a Person, if as a result of such Investment:
 - a. such Person becomes a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, or
 - b. such Person is merged, consolidated or amalgamated with or into, or transfers or conveys substantially all of its properties or assets to, or is liquidated into, the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company;
- 4. any Investment made as a result of the receipt of non-cash consideration from (a) an Asset Sale that was made pursuant to and in compliance with the covenant described above under the caption “— Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Asset Sales” or (b) pursuant to clause (6) of the items deemed not to be Asset Sales under the definition of “Asset Sale”;

S-99

[Table of Contents](#)

- 5. any Investment in any Person solely in exchange for the issuance of, or out of the net cash proceeds of the substantially concurrent (a) contribution (other than from a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company) to the equity capital of the Company in respect of or (b) sale (other than to a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company) of, Equity Interests (other than Disqualified Stock) of the Company; *provided, however*, that such amounts are not included in Incremental Funds;
- 6. any Investments received (a) in compromise of or resolution of, or upon satisfaction of judgments with respect to, (i) obligations of trade creditors or customers that were incurred in the ordinary course of business, including pursuant to any plan of reorganization or similar arrangement upon the bankruptcy or insolvency of any trade creditor or customer, or (ii) litigation, arbitration or other disputes (including pursuant to any bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings) with Persons who are not Affiliates or (b) as a result of a foreclosure by the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries with respect to any secured Investment in default;
- 7. Hedging Contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business and not for speculative purposes;
- 8. Permitted Business Investments;
- 9. payroll, travel and similar advances to cover matters that are expected at the time of such advances ultimately to be treated as expenses for accounting purposes and that are made in the ordinary course of business;
- 10. loans or advances to officers, directors or employees made in compliance with law and in the ordinary course of business consistent with past practices of the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary and otherwise in compliance with the covenant described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Transactions with Affiliates”;
- 11. any Investment in any Person to the extent such Investment consists of prepaid expenses, negotiable instruments held for collection and lease, utility and workers’ compensation or performance and other similar deposits made in the ordinary course of business by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary;
- 12. Investments that are in existence on the Issue Date, and any extension, modification or renewal of any such Investments, but only to the extent not involving additional advances, contributions or other Investments of cash or other assets or other increases of such Investments (other than as a result of the accrual or accretion of interest or original issue discount or the issuance of pay-in-kind securities, in each case, pursuant to the terms of such Investments as in effect on the Issue Date);
- 13. guarantees of performance of operating leases or other obligations (other than Indebtedness) arising in the ordinary course of business;
- 14. Investments of a Restricted Subsidiary existing on the date such entity became a Restricted Subsidiary acquired after the Issue Date or of any entity merged into or consolidated with the Company or a Restricted Subsidiary in accordance with the covenants described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets” to the extent that such Investments were not made in contemplation of or in connection with such acquisition, merger or consolidation and were in existence on the date of such acquisition, merger or consolidation;
- 15. repurchases of or other Investments in the notes;
- 16. Guarantees of Indebtedness other than Indebtedness of an Affiliate permitted under the covenant described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock”; and
- 17. other Investments in any Person having an aggregate fair market value (measured on the date each such Investment was made and without giving effect to subsequent changes in value), when

S-100

[Table of Contents](#)

taken together with all other Investments made pursuant to this clause (17) that are at the time outstanding, do not exceed the greater of (a) \$50.0 million or (b) 5.0% of the Company’s Consolidated Net Tangible Assets.

“Permitted Liens” means:

- 1. Liens securing Indebtedness under the Credit Agreement or any other Credit Facilities;
- 2. Liens in favor of the Company or the Guarantors;
- 3. Liens on property of a Person existing at the time such Person (a) becomes a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company or (b) is merged with or into or consolidated with the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, *provided* that, in the case of subclause (b), such Liens were in existence prior to the contemplation of such merger or consolidation and do not extend to any assets (other than improvements thereon, accessions thereto and proceeds thereof) other than those of the Person merged into or consolidated with the Company or the Restricted Subsidiary;
- 4. Liens on property existing at the time of acquisition of the property by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company; *provided* that such Liens were in existence prior to the contemplation of such acquisition;
- 5. any interest or title of a lessor to the property subject to a Capital Lease Obligation;
- 6. Liens for the purpose of securing the payment of all or a part of the purchase price of, or Capital Lease Obligations, purchase money obligations or other payments incurred to finance the acquisition, lease, improvement or construction of or repairs or additions to, assets or property acquired or constructed in the ordinary course of business; *provided* that:
 - a. the aggregate principal amount of Indebtedness secured by such Liens is otherwise permitted to be incurred under the indenture and does not exceed the cost of the assets or property so acquired or constructed; and
 - b. such Liens are created within 360 days of the later of the acquisition, lease, completion of improvements, construction, repairs or additions or commencement of full operation of the assets or property subject to such Lien and do not encumber any other assets or property of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary other than such assets or property and assets affixed or appurtenant thereto;
- 7. Liens existing on the Issue Date;
- 8. Liens incurred in the ordinary course of business (a) to secure the performance of tenders, bids, statutory obligations, surety or appeal bonds, trade contracts, government contracts, operating leases, performance bonds or other obligations of a like nature, or (b) in connection with workers’ compensation, unemployment insurance and other social security or similar legislation;
- 9. Liens on and pledges of the Equity Interests of any Unrestricted Subsidiary or any Joint Venture owned by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company to the extent securing Non-Recourse Debt or other Indebtedness of such Unrestricted Subsidiary or Joint Venture;
- 10. Liens on pipelines or pipeline facilities that arise by operation of law;
- 11. Liens arising under operating agreements, joint venture agreements, partnership agreements, oil and gas leases, farmout agreements, division orders, contracts for sale, transportation or exchange of crude oil and natural gas, unitization and pooling declarations and agreements, area of mutual interest agreements and other agreements arising in the ordinary course of business of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries that are customary in the Permitted Business;
- 12. Liens upon specific items of inventory, receivables or other goods or proceeds of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries securing such Person’s obligations in respect of bankers’

[Table of Contents](#)

acceptances or receivables securitizations issued or created for the account of such Person to facilitate the purchase, shipment or storage of such inventory, receivables or other goods or proceeds and permitted by the covenant “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock”;

- 13. Liens securing Obligations of the Issuers or any Guarantor under the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees or otherwise under the indenture, as the case may be;
- 14. Liens securing any Indebtedness equally and ratably with all Obligations due under the notes or any Subsidiary Guarantee pursuant to a contractual covenant that limits Liens in a manner substantially similar to the covenant described above under “— Certain Covenants — Liens”;
- 15. Liens to secure performance of Hedging Contracts of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries entered into in the ordinary course of business and not for speculative purposes;
- 16. Liens securing any insurance premium financing under customary terms and conditions, provided that no such Lien may extend

to or cover any assets or property other than the insurance being acquired with such financing, the proceeds thereof and any unearned or refunded insurance premiums related thereto;

17. Liens for taxes, assessments or governmental charges or claims that are not yet delinquent or that are being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings promptly instituted and diligently concluded; *provided* that any reserve or other appropriate provision as is required in conformity with GAAP has been made therefor;

18. any attachment or judgment Lien that does not constitute an Event of Default;

19. survey exceptions, easements or reservations of, or rights of others for, licenses, rights-of-way, sewers, electric lines, telegraph and telephone lines and other similar purposes, or zoning or other restrictions as to the use of real property that were not incurred in connection with the Indebtedness and that do not in the aggregate materially adversely affect the value of said properties or materially impair their use in the operation of the business of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries;

20. Liens arising from Uniform Commercial Code financing statement filings regarding operating leases entered into by the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of business;

21. leases or subleases granted to others that do not materially interfere with the ordinary course of business of the Company and its Restricted Subsidiaries, taken as a whole;

22. Liens (other than Liens securing Indebtedness) on, or related to, assets to secure all or part of the costs incurred in the ordinary course of the Permitted Business for the gathering, compression, treating, distribution, production, processing, transportation, marketing, storage or otherwise handling of Hydrocarbons;

23. statutory and contractual Liens of landlords to secure rent arising in the ordinary course of business and Liens of carriers, warehousemen, mechanics, suppliers, materialmen, repairmen and other Liens imposed by law incurred in the ordinary course of business for sums not yet delinquent or being contested in good faith;

24. Liens arising solely by virtue of any statutory or common law provision relating to banker's Liens, rights of set-off or similar rights and remedies as to deposit accounts or other funds maintained with a creditor depository institution; *provided, however*, that (a) such deposit account is not a dedicated cash collateral account and is not subject to restrictions against access by the Issuers in excess of those set forth by regulations promulgated by the Federal Reserve Board and (b) such deposit account is not intended by the Issuers or any Restricted Subsidiary to provide collateral to the depository institution;

[Table of Contents](#)

25. Liens in favor of collecting or payor banks having a right of setoff, revocation, refund or chargeback with respect to money or instruments of the Issuers or any Restricted Subsidiary on deposit with or in possession of such bank;

26. Liens arising under the indenture in favor of the trustee thereunder for its own benefit and similar Liens in favor of other trustees, agents and representatives arising under instruments governing Indebtedness permitted to be incurred under the indenture; *provided, however*, that such Liens are solely for the benefit of the trustees, agents or representatives in their capacities as such and not for the benefit of the holders of such Indebtedness;

27. Liens arising from the deposit of funds or securities in trust for the purpose of decreasing or defeasing Indebtedness so long as such deposit of funds or securities and such decreasing or defeasing of Indebtedness are permitted under the covenant described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments”;

28. other Liens incurred by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company, *provided* that, after giving effect to any such incurrence, the aggregate principal amount of all Indebtedness then outstanding and secured by any Liens incurred pursuant to this clause (28) does not exceed the greater of (a) \$50.0 million or (b) 5.0% of the Company's Consolidated Net Tangible Assets; and

29. any Lien renewing, extending, refinancing or refunding a Lien permitted by clauses (1) through (27) above, provided that (a) the principal amount of the Indebtedness secured by such Lien is not increased except by an amount equal to a reasonable premium or other reasonable amount paid, and fees and expenses reasonably incurred, in connection therewith and by an amount equal to any existing commitments unutilized thereunder and (b) no assets encumbered by any such Lien other than the assets permitted to be encumbered immediately prior to such renewal, extension, refinance or refund are encumbered thereby (other than improvements thereon, accessions thereto and proceeds thereof).

In each case set forth above, notwithstanding any stated limitation on the assets that may be subject to such Lien, a Permitted Lien on a specified asset or group or type of assets may include Liens on all improvements, additions and accessions thereto and all products and proceeds thereof (including dividends, distributions and increases in respect thereof).

“*Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness*” means any Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries issued in a Refinancing of other Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries (other than intercompany Indebtedness), provided that:

1. the principal amount of such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness does not exceed the principal amount of the Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities being Refinanced (plus all accrued interest on the Indebtedness or accrued and unpaid dividends on preferred securities and the amount of all expenses and premiums incurred in connection therewith);
2. such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness has a final maturity date later than the final maturity date of, and has a Weighted Average Life to Maturity equal to or greater than the Weighted Average Life to Maturity of, the Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities being Refinanced;
3. if the Indebtedness being Refinanced is subordinated in right of payment to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees, such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness is subordinated in right of payment to the notes or the Subsidiary Guarantees on terms at least as favorable to the Holders of notes as those contained in the documentation governing the Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or preferred securities being Refinanced or shall be Disqualified Stock or preferred securities of the obligor on the Indebtedness being Refinanced;

S-103

[Table of Contents](#)

4. if such Indebtedness being Refinanced is Indebtedness of the Issuers or one or more Guarantors, then such Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness shall be Indebtedness solely of the Issuers or such Guarantors which were obligors or guarantors of such Indebtedness being Refinanced;
5. if any preferred securities being Refinanced were not Disqualified Stock of the Issuers, the Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness shall not be Disqualified Stock of the Issuers; and
6. if any preferred securities being Refinanced were preferred securities of a Restricted Subsidiary, the Refinancing Indebtedness shall be preferred securities of such Restricted Subsidiary.

Notwithstanding the preceding, any Indebtedness incurred under Credit Facilities pursuant to the covenant “— Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock” shall be subject only to the refinancing provision in the definition of Credit Facilities and not pursuant to the requirements set forth in the definition of “Permitted Refinancing Indebtedness.”

“*Person*” means any individual, corporation, partnership, joint venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization, limited liability company or government or other entity.

“*preferred securities*” of any Person means any Capital Stock of any class or classes (however designated) of such Person that has preferential rights to any other Capital Stock of any class of such Person with respect to dividends or redemptions or as to the distribution of assets upon any voluntary or involuntary liquidation or dissolution of such Person.

“*Qualified Owners*” means the (i) Company and its Subsidiaries, (ii) the Davison Group, and (iii) any Related Persons with respect to any Person specified in clauses (i) or (ii) of this definition. Any person or group whose acquisition of beneficial ownership constitutes a Change of Control in respect of which a Change of Control Offer is (or pursuant to the seventh paragraph under the caption “— Change of Control” is not required to be) made in accordance with the requirements of the indenture will thereafter, together with its Affiliates, constitute an additional Qualified Owner.

“*Rating Agency*” means each of S&P and Moody’s, or if (and only if) either or both of S&P and Moody’s shall not make a rating on the notes publicly available, a nationally recognized statistical rating agency or agencies, as the case may be, selected by the Company, which shall be substituted for S&P or Moody’s, as the case may be.

“*Rating Decline*” means a decrease in the rating of the notes by each of the two Rating Agencies by one or more gradations (including gradations within rating categories as well as between rating categories). In determining whether the rating of the notes has decreased by one or more gradations, gradations within rating categories, such as + or — for S&P, and 1, 2, and 3 for Moody’s, will be taken into account; for example, in the case of S&P, a rating decline either from BB+ to BB or BB — to B+ will constitute a decrease of one gradation.

“*Refinance*” means, in respect of any Indebtedness or preferred securities, to refinance, extend, renew, refund, repay, prepay, redeem, effect a change by amendment or modification, defease or retire, or to issue Indebtedness or preferred securities in exchange or replacement for (or the net proceeds of which are used to Refinance), such Indebtedness or preferred securities in whole or in part. “*Refinanced*” and “*Refinancing*” shall have correlative meanings.

“*Related Person*” means, with respect to a particular Qualified Owner: (i) to the extent such Person is an individual, (a) each other member of such Qualified Owner’s Family; (b) any Person that is directly or indirectly Controlled by such Qualified Owner and/or any one or more members of such Qualified Owner’s Family; (c) any Person with respect to which such Qualified Owner and/or one or more members of such Qualified Owner’s Family and/or all Related Persons thereto, collectively, constitute at least a majority of the executors or trustees thereof (or in a similar capacity); and (d) any person that is an estate planning vehicle (such as a trust) of which such Qualified Owner and/or one or more members of such Qualified Owner’s Family and/or any Related Persons thereto, collectively, are substantial beneficiaries; or (ii) to the extent such Qualified Owner is not an individual, (x) any controlling stockholder, partner, member, 51% (or

[Table of Contents](#)

more) owned Subsidiary or immediate family member (in the case of an individual) of such Qualified Owner; or (y) any trust, corporation, partnership, limited liability company or other Person (other than any individual), the beneficiaries, stockholders, partners, members, owners or Persons beneficially holding (directly or through one or more subsidiaries) a 51% or more controlling interest of which consist of any one or more Qualified Owners or such other Persons referred to in the immediately preceding clause (x) or this clause (y).

“*Reporting Default*” means a Default described in clause (4) under “— Events of Default and Remedies.”

“*Restricted Investment*” means an Investment other than a Permitted Investment.

“*Restricted Subsidiary*” of a Person means any Subsidiary of the referent Person that is not an Unrestricted Subsidiary. Notwithstanding anything in the indenture to the contrary, Finance Corp. shall be a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company.

“*S&P*” refers to Standard & Poor’s Ratings Services, a division of The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc., or any successor to the rating agency business thereof.

“*Sale and Leaseback Transaction*” means any direct or indirect arrangement with any Person or to which any such Person is a party, providing for the leasing to the Issuers or a Restricted Subsidiary of any Property, whether owned by the Issuers or any Restricted Subsidiary at the Issue Date or later acquired which has been or is to be sold or transferred by the Issuers or such Restricted Subsidiary to such Person or to any other Person from whom funds have been or are to be advanced by such Person on the security of such Property.

“*Securities Act*” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

“*Senior Debt*” means

1. all Indebtedness of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary outstanding under Credit Facilities and all obligations under Hedging Contracts with respect thereto;
2. any other Indebtedness of the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary permitted to be incurred under the terms of the indenture, unless the instrument under which such Indebtedness is incurred expressly provides that it is subordinated in right of payment to the notes or any Subsidiary Guarantee; and
3. all Obligations with respect to the items listed in the preceding clauses (1) and (2).

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the preceding sentence, Senior Debt will not include:

1. any intercompany Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries to the Company or any of its Affiliates; or
2. any Indebtedness that is incurred in violation of the indenture.

For the avoidance of doubt, “Senior Debt” will not include any trade payables or taxes owed or owing by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary.

“*Significant Subsidiary*” means any Subsidiary that would be a “significant subsidiary” as defined in Article 1, Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X, promulgated pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Regulation is in effect on the Issue Date.

“*Special Mandatory Redemption Price*” shall mean 100% of the aggregate issue price of the notes being redeemed plus accrued and unpaid interest to, but not including, the redemption date. For purposes of this definition, “*issue price*” means the public offering price of the notes as set forth on the cover of this prospectus supplement excluding any accrued interest from August 14, 2017 if settlement occurs after such date.

“*Stated Maturity*” means, with respect to any installment of interest or principal on any series of Indebtedness, the date on which the payment of interest or principal was scheduled to be paid in the

[Table of Contents](#)

original documentation governing such Indebtedness, and will not include any contingent obligations to repay, redeem or repurchase any such interest or principal prior to the date originally scheduled for the payment thereof.

“*Subsidiary*” means, with respect to any specified Person:

1. any corporation, association or other business entity (other than a partnership or limited liability company) of which more than 50% of the total voting power of Voting Stock is at the time owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by that Person or one or more of the other Subsidiaries of that Person (or a combination thereof); and

2. any partnership (whether general or limited) or limited liability company (a) the sole general partner or member of which is such Person or a Subsidiary of such Person, or (b) if there is more than a single general partner or member, either (x) the only managing general partners or managing members of which are such Person or one or more Subsidiaries of such Person (or any combination thereof) or (y) such Person owns or controls, directly or indirectly, a majority of the outstanding general partner interests, member interests or other Voting Stock of such partnership or limited liability company, respectively.

“*Subsidiary Guarantee*” means any guarantee by a Guarantor of the Issuers’ Obligations under the indenture and on the notes.

“*Transaction Costs*” means any legal, professional and advisory fees or other transaction costs and expenses paid (whether or not incurred) by the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary in connection with any incurrence of Indebtedness or Disqualified Stock or any issuance of other equity securities or any Refinancing thereof.

“*Treasury Rate*” means, as of any redemption date, the yield to maturity at such redemption date of United States Treasury securities with a constant maturity (as compiled and published in the most recent Federal Reserve Statistical Release H.15(519) which has become publicly available at least two Business Days prior to the date fixed for redemption (or, if such Statistical Release is no longer published, any publicly available source of similar market data)) most nearly equal to the period from such redemption date to October 1, 2020; *provided, however*, that if such period is not equal to the constant maturity of a United States Treasury security for which a weekly average yield is given, the Company shall obtain the Treasury Rate by linear interpolation (calculated to the nearest one-twelfth of a year) from the weekly average yields of United States Treasury securities for which such yields are given, except that if the period from such redemption date to October 1, 2020 is less than one year, the weekly average yield on actually traded United States Treasury securities adjusted to a constant maturity of one year shall be used. The Company will (a) calculate the Treasury Rate on the second Business Day preceding the applicable redemption date and (b) prior to such redemption date file with the trustee an officers’ certificate setting forth the Make-Whole Premium and the Treasury Rate and showing the calculation of each in reasonable detail.

“*Unrestricted Subsidiary*” means (i) the Existing Unrestricted Subsidiaries and (ii) any other Subsidiary of the Company (other than Finance Corp.) that is designated by the Board of Directors of the Company as an Unrestricted Subsidiary pursuant to a Board Resolution, but only to the extent that, in the case of (i) or (ii), such Subsidiary:

- 1. except to the extent permitted by subclause (2)(b) of the definition of “Permitted Business Investments,” has no Indebtedness other than Non-Recourse Debt owing to any Person other than the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries;
- 2. is not party to any agreement, contract, arrangement or understanding with the Company or any Restricted Subsidiary of the Company unless the terms of any such agreement, contract, arrangement or understanding are no less favorable to the Company or such Restricted Subsidiary than those that might be obtained at the time from Persons who are not Affiliates of the Company;

[Table of Contents](#)

- 3. is a Person with respect to which neither the Company nor any of its Restricted Subsidiaries has any direct or indirect obligation (a) to subscribe for additional Equity Interests or (b) to maintain or preserve such Person’s financial condition or to cause such Person to achieve any specified levels of operating results; and
- 4. has not guaranteed or otherwise directly or indirectly provided credit support for any Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Restricted Subsidiaries.

All Subsidiaries of an Unrestricted Subsidiary shall also be Unrestricted Subsidiaries.

Any designation of a Subsidiary of the Company as an Unrestricted Subsidiary will be evidenced to the trustee by filing with the trustee a Board Resolution giving effect to such designation and an officers’ certificate certifying that such designation complied with the preceding conditions and was permitted by the covenant described above under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Restricted Payments.” If, at any time, any Unrestricted Subsidiary would fail to meet the preceding requirements as an Unrestricted Subsidiary, it will thereafter cease to be an Unrestricted Subsidiary for purposes of the indenture and any Indebtedness of such Subsidiary will be deemed to be incurred by a Restricted Subsidiary of the Company as of such date and, if such Indebtedness is not permitted to be incurred as of such date under the covenant described under the caption “— Certain Covenants — Incurrence of Indebtedness and Issuance of Preferred Stock,” the Company will be in default of such covenant.

“*Voting Stock*” of any Person as of any date means the Capital Stock of such Person that (or, if such Person is a limited partnership, such Person or its general partner, as applicable) is at the time entitled (without regard to the occurrence of any contingency) to vote in the election of the Board of Directors of such Person (or, if such Person is a limited partnership, its general partner).

“*Weighted Average Life to Maturity*” means, when applied to any Indebtedness or preferred securities at any date, the number of years obtained by dividing:

- 1. the sum of the products obtained by multiplying (a) the amount of each then remaining installment, sinking fund, serial maturity or other required payments of principal or (with respect to preferred securities) redemption or similar payment, including payment at final

maturity, in respect of the Indebtedness or preferred securities, by (b) the number of years (calculated to the nearest one-twelfth) that will elapse between such date and the making of such payment; by

- 2. the then outstanding principal amount of such Indebtedness.

[Table of Contents](#)

CERTAIN UNITED STATES FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS

The following general discussion summarizes certain U.S. federal income tax considerations of purchasing, owning and disposing of the notes. This discussion applies only to the initial holders of the notes who acquire the notes in the original offering for a price equal to the issue price of the notes and who hold the notes as capital assets (generally, property held for investment). The issue price of the notes is the first price at which a substantial amount of the notes is sold for cash other than to bond houses, brokers or similar persons or organizations acting in the capacity of underwriters, placement agents or wholesalers.

In this discussion, we do not purport to address all tax considerations that may be important to a particular holder in light of the holder’s circumstances, or to certain categories of investors that may be subject to special rules, such as:

- persons subject to the alternative minimum tax;
- dealers in securities or currencies;
- traders in securities who mark their securities to market for U.S. federal income tax purposes;
- U.S. holders (as defined below) whose functional currency is not the U.S. dollar;
- persons holding notes as part of a hedge, straddle, conversion or other integrated transaction;
- certain U.S. expatriates;
- banks and other financial institutions;
- insurance companies;
- real estate investment trusts;
- regulated investment companies;
- foreign governments or international organizations;
- entities that are tax-exempt for U.S. federal income tax purposes; and
- pass-through entities (and other entities treated as partnerships for U.S. federal income tax purposes) and holders of interests therein.

This discussion is included for general information only and does not address all of the aspects of U.S. federal income taxation that may be relevant to you in light of your particular investment or other circumstances. In addition, this discussion does not address the 3.8% net investment income tax or any estate, gift, state, local or non-U.S. tax consequences. This discussion is based on U.S. federal income tax law, including the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Code”), Treasury Regulations, administrative rulings and judicial authority, all as in effect as of the date of this prospectus supplement. Subsequent developments in U.S. federal income tax law, including changes in law or differing interpretations, which may be applied retroactively could have a material effect on the U.S. federal income tax consequences of purchasing, owning and disposing of notes as described below. We have not sought any ruling from the Internal Revenue Service (“IRS”) with respect to the statements made and conclusions reached in this discussion, and there can be no assurance that the IRS will agree with and not challenge these statements and conclusions. Before you purchase notes, you should consult your own tax advisors regarding the particular U.S. federal income tax consequences to you of purchasing, holding and disposing of notes, any tax consequences that may arise under the laws of any relevant foreign, state, local, or other taxing jurisdiction or under any applicable tax treaty, as well as possible effects of changes in federal or other tax laws.

IF YOU ARE CONSIDERING BUYING NOTES, WE URGE YOU TO CONSULT YOUR TAX ADVISOR ABOUT THE PARTICULAR U.S. FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL AND FOREIGN TAX CONSEQUENCES OF THE PURCHASE, OWNERSHIP AND DISPOSITION OF THE NOTES, AND THE APPLICATION OF THE U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX LAWS TO YOUR PARTICULAR SITUATION.

[Table of Contents](#)

Certain Additional Payments

Certain debt instruments that provide for one or more contingent payments are subject to U.S. Treasury Regulations governing contingent payment debt instruments. A payment is not treated as a contingent payment under these regulations if, as of the issue date of the debt instrument, the likelihood that such payment will be made is remote. In certain circumstances (see the discussion under “Description of Notes — Optional Redemption,” and “Description of Notes — Repurchase at the Option of Holders — Change of Control”), we may pay amounts on the notes that are in excess of the stated interest or principal of the notes. We intend to take the position that the possibility that any such payment will be made is remote so that such possibility will not cause the notes to be treated as contingent payment debt instruments. However, additional income will be recognized if any such payment is made. Our determination that these contingencies are remote is binding on you unless you disclose your contrary position to the IRS in the manner that is required by applicable U.S. Treasury Regulations. Our determination is not, however, binding on the IRS. It is possible that the IRS might take a different position from that described above, in which case, if such position is sustained, a holder might be required to accrue ordinary interest income at a higher rate than the stated interest rate and to treat as ordinary income rather than capital gain any gain realized on the taxable disposition of the note. The remainder of this discussion assumes that the notes will not be treated as contingent payment debt instruments. Prospective investors should consult their own tax advisors regarding the possible application of the contingent payment debt instrument rules to the notes.

Tax Consequences to U.S. Holders

The following is a summary of certain U.S. federal income tax consequences that will apply to a U.S. holder (as defined below) of the notes.

Definition of a U.S. Holder

A “U.S. holder” is a beneficial owner of a note or notes who or which is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

- an individual citizen or resident of the United States, including an alien individual who is a lawful permanent resident of the United States or who meets the “substantial presence” test under Section 7701(b) of the Code;
- a corporation (or other entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) created or organized in or under the laws of the United States or of any political subdivision of the United States, including any state or the District of Columbia;
- an estate, the income of which is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of the source of that income; or
- a trust, if, in general, a U.S. court is able to exercise primary supervision over the trust’s administration and one or more United States persons (within the meaning of the Code) have the authority to control all of the trust’s substantial decisions, or the trust has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person.

If a partnership (or other entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) holds a note, the U.S. federal income tax treatment of a partner in the partnership generally will depend on the status and the activities of the partner and the partnership. Each partner in a partnership (or other entity treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes) should consult its tax advisor.

Taxation of Interest

Stated interest on the notes generally will be taxable to you as ordinary income:

- when it accrues, if you use the accrual method of accounting for U.S. federal income tax purposes; or
- when you receive it, if you use the cash method of accounting for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

[Table of Contents](#)

Sale or other disposition of notes

You generally must recognize taxable gain or loss on the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other taxable disposition of a note. The amount of your gain or loss equals the difference between the sum of the amount of cash plus the fair market value of all other property you receive for the note (to the extent such amount does not represent accrued but unpaid interest, which will be taxable as ordinary interest income to the extent you have not previously included such amounts in income) minus your adjusted tax basis in the note. Your adjusted tax basis in a note generally will equal the amount paid for the note. Any such gain or loss on a taxable disposition of a note will generally constitute capital gain or loss. This capital gain or loss will be long-term capital gain or loss if at the time of the sale or other taxable disposition you have held the notes for more than one year. The deductibility of capital losses is subject to limitations.

Information reporting and backup withholding

Information reporting will generally apply to payments of interest on, or the proceeds of the sale or other disposition of, notes held by you unless you are an exempt recipient. Additionally, backup withholding (currently at a rate of 28%) will apply to such payments if you fail to provide us or the appropriate intermediary with a taxpayer identification number, certified under penalties of perjury, as well as certain other information or certification of exempt status, fail to report full dividend and interest income, or otherwise fail to comply with applicable requirements of the

backup withholding rules. U.S. backup withholding tax is not an additional tax. Any amount withheld under the backup withholding rules is allowable as a credit against your U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, and a refund may be obtained if the amounts withheld exceed your actual U.S. federal income tax liability and you timely provide the required information or appropriate claim form to the IRS.

Tax Consequences to Non-U.S. Holders

You are a non-U.S. holder for purposes of this discussion if you are a beneficial owner of notes and are for U.S. federal income tax purposes an individual, corporation, estate or trust that is not a U.S. holder.

Interest on the notes

Subject to the discussion of backup withholding and FATCA below, you will generally not be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding tax on payments of interest on a note under the “portfolio interest exception,” provided that:

- you are not:
 - an actual or constructive owner of 10% or more of our capital or profits interests; or
 - a controlled foreign corporation related (directly or indirectly) to us within the meaning of the Code;
 - such interest payments are not effectively connected with the conduct by you of a trade or business within the United States; and
- you properly certify as to your foreign status.

The portfolio interest exemption and several of the special rules for non-U.S. holders described below generally apply only if you appropriately certify as to your foreign status. You can generally meet this certification requirement by providing a properly executed IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E (or other applicable or successor form) to the applicable withholding agent. If you hold the notes through a financial institution or other agent acting on your behalf, you may be required to provide appropriate certifications to the agent. Your agent will then generally be required to provide appropriate certifications to the applicable withholding agent, either directly or through other intermediaries. Special rules apply to foreign partnerships, estates and trusts, and in certain circumstances certifications as to foreign status of partners, trust owners or beneficiaries may have to be provided to the withholding agent. In addition, special rules apply to qualified intermediaries that enter into withholding agreements with the IRS.

S-110

[**Table of Contents**](#)

If you cannot satisfy the requirements described above, payments of interest made to you will be subject to U.S. federal withholding tax at a 30% rate, unless (i) you provide the withholding agent with a properly executed IRS Form W-8BEN or W-8BEN-E (or other applicable or successor form) claiming an exemption from (or a reduction of) withholding under the benefits of an applicable income tax treaty or (ii) the payments of interest are effectively connected with your conduct of a trade or business in the U.S. and you meet the certification requirements described below, in which case such interest will be taxed as discussed below. (See “— Tax Consequences to Non-U.S. Holders — Income or gain effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business.”) The certification requirements described above and below must be provided to the applicable withholding agent prior to the payment of interest and must be updated periodically. If you do not timely provide the applicable withholding agent with the required certification, but you qualify for a reduced rate under an applicable income tax treaty, you may obtain a refund of any excess amounts withheld if you timely provide the required information or appropriate claim form to the IRS.

Sale or other disposition of notes

Subject to the discussion of backup withholding and FATCA withholding below, any gain realized by you on the sale, exchange, redemption, retirement or other disposition of a note generally will not be subject to U.S. federal income or withholding tax, unless:

- such gain is effectively connected with your conduct of a trade or business in the United States (and, if required by an applicable tax treaty, such gain is attributable to a permanent establishment or a fixed base maintained by you in the United States); or
- you are an individual who is present in the United States for 183 days or more in the taxable year of the disposition and certain other conditions are satisfied.

If the first bullet point applies, you generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax with respect to such gain in the same manner as U.S. holders, as described above, unless an applicable income tax treaty provides otherwise. In addition, if you are a corporation, you may also be subject to the branch profits tax described above. If the second bullet point applies, you generally will be subject to U.S. federal income tax at a rate of 30% (or at a reduced rate under an applicable income tax treaty) on the amount by which your capital gains from U.S. sources exceed capital losses allocable to U.S. sources.

Income or gain effectively connected with a U.S. trade or business

If you are engaged in trade or business in the United States, and if interest on, or gain on the sale, redemption, exchange, retirement or other

taxable disposition of a note is effectively connected with the conduct of that trade or business and, in the case of an applicable tax treaty, is attributable to a permanent establishment you maintain in the United States, you will be exempt from U.S. withholding tax but will be subject to regular U.S. federal income tax on such interest or gain on a net income basis generally in the same manner as if you were a U.S. holder. In order to establish an exemption from U.S. withholding tax, you must provide to us, our paying agent or the person who would otherwise be required to withhold U.S. federal income tax, a properly completed and executed IRS Form W-8ECI (or other successor form). In addition to regular U.S. federal income tax, if you are a corporation, you may be subject to U.S. branch profits tax on your effectively connected earnings and profits (subject to adjustments) at a 30% rate, unless an applicable tax treaty provides for a lower rate.

Information reporting and backup withholding

Payments to you of interest on a note, and amounts withheld from such payments, if any, generally will be required to be reported to the IRS and to you. Backup withholding generally will not apply to payments of interest on the notes by us or our paying agent or the person who would otherwise be required to withhold U.S. federal income tax to you if the certification described in “— Tax Consequences to Non-U.S. Holders- Interest on the notes” is duly provided or you otherwise establish an exemption.

S-111

[Table of Contents](#)

Payment of the proceeds on the sale or other disposition of a note (including redemption or retirement) by you within the United States or conducted through certain U.S. intermediaries generally will not be subject to information reporting requirements and backup withholding provided you properly certify under penalties of perjury as to your foreign status on IRS Form W-8BEN or IRS Form W-8BEN-E (or other applicable or successor form) and certain other conditions are met, or you otherwise establish an exemption. However, unless that broker has documentary evidence in its records of your non-U.S. status and certain other conditions are met, or you otherwise establish an exemption, information reporting will apply to a payment of the proceeds of the disposition of a note effected outside the United States by such a broker if it has certain relationships with the United States.

You are urged to consult your own tax advisors regarding the application of information reporting and backup withholding to your particular situation, the availability of an exemption therefrom, and the procedure for obtaining such an exemption, if available. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld from a payment to you under the backup withholding rules will be allowed as a credit against your U.S. federal income tax liability and may entitle you to a refund, provided you timely furnish the required information to the IRS.

Foreign Account Tax Compliance Act Withholding

Sections 1471 through 1474 of the Code (provisions which are commonly referred to as “FATCA”) and applicable Treasury Regulations and administrative guidance thereunder may require withholding at a rate of 30% on interest on the notes, and on the gross proceeds from the sale of notes (if such sale or other disposition occurs on or after January 1, 2019), if paid to (i) a foreign financial institution (whether such foreign financial institution is the beneficial owner or an intermediary with respect to the payments) unless such institution agrees to report and disclose, on an annual basis, information with respect to its U.S. accountholders and meets certain other specified requirements or (ii) a non-financial foreign entity (whether such foreign entity is the beneficial owner or an intermediary with respect to the payments) unless such entity certifies that it does not have any “substantial United States owners” or provides certain information regarding the entity’s “substantial United States owners” and such entity meets certain other specified requirements. Accordingly, the entity through which the notes are held will affect the determination of whether such withholding is required. You should consult your own tax advisors regarding this legislation and whether it may be relevant to your investment in the notes.

THE PRECEDING DISCUSSION OF CERTAIN U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX CONSIDERATIONS IS FOR GENERAL INFORMATION ONLY AND IS NOT TAX ADVICE. DUE TO THE COMPLEXITY OF THE U.S. FEDERAL INCOME TAX RULES APPLICABLE TO PROSPECTIVE INVESTOR AND THE CONSIDERABLE UNCERTAINTY THAT EXISTS WITH RESPECT TO MANY ASPECTS OF THOSE RULES, EACH PROSPECTIVE INVESTOR SHOULD CONSULT ITS OWN TAX ADVISOR REGARDING THE PARTICULAR FEDERAL, STATE, LOCAL AND NON-U.S. TAX CONSEQUENCES OF PURCHASING, HOLDING, AND DISPOSING OF OUR NOTES, INCLUDING THE CONSEQUENCES OF ANY PROPOSED CHANGE IN APPLICABLE LAWS.

S-112

[Table of Contents](#)

INVESTMENT IN THE NOTES BY EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND IRAs

The following is a summary of certain considerations associated with an investment in the notes by any employee benefit plan that is subject to Title I of the U.S. Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“ERISA”), any plan, individual retirement account (an

“IRA”) or other arrangement that is subject to Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code or provisions under any federal, state, local, non-U.S. or other laws or regulations that are similar to such provisions of ERISA or the Internal Revenue Code (collectively, “Similar Laws”), and any entity whose underlying assets are considered to include “plan assets” by reason of any such plan’s, account’s or arrangement’s investment in such entity (each of the foregoing, a “Plan”). This summary is based on the provisions of ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code, and the related regulations and administrative and judicial interpretations, as of the date hereof. This summary does not purport to be complete, and no assurance can be given that future legislation, court decisions or administrative regulations, rulings or pronouncements will not significantly modify the requirements summarized herein. Any such changes may be retroactive and thereby apply to transactions entered into before the date of their enactment or release.

General Fiduciary Matters

ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code impose certain duties on persons who are fiduciaries of a Plan subject to Title I of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code (an “ERISA Plan”) and prohibit certain transactions involving the assets of an ERISA Plan and its fiduciaries or other interested parties. Under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code, any person who exercises any discretionary authority or control over the administration of an ERISA Plan or the management or disposition of the assets of an ERISA Plan, or who renders investment advice for a fee or other compensation to an ERISA Plan, is generally considered to be a fiduciary of the ERISA Plan.

In considering an investment in the notes of a portion of the assets of any Plan, a fiduciary should consider the Plan’s particular circumstances and all of the facts and circumstances of the investment and determine whether the investment is in accordance with the documents and instruments governing the Plan and the applicable provisions of ERISA, the Internal Revenue Code or any Similar Law relating to a fiduciary’s duties to the Plan including, without limitation, the prudence, diversification, delegation of control and prohibited transaction provisions of ERISA, the Internal Revenue Code and any other applicable Similar Laws.

Any insurance company proposing to invest assets of its general account in the notes should consider the extent that the investment would be subject to the requirements of ERISA in light of the U.S. Supreme Court’s decision in *John Hancock Mutual Life Insurance v. Harris Trust and Savings Bank*, 114 S.Ct. 517 (1993), which in certain circumstances treats those general account assets as assets of an ERISA Plan for purposes of the fiduciary responsibility provisions of ERISA and the prohibited transaction provisions of ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code. In addition, such potential investor should consider the effect of any subsequent legislation or other guidance that has or may become available relating to that decision, including Section 401(c) of ERISA and the regulations thereunder.

Governmental plans (as defined in Section 3(32) of ERISA) and certain church plans (as defined in Section 3(33) of ERISA) and non-U.S. plans (as defined in Section 4(b)(4) of ERISA), while generally not subject to the fiduciary responsibility provisions of ERISA or the provisions of Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code, may nevertheless be subject to Similar Laws. Fiduciaries of any such plans should consult with their counsel before acquiring notes.

If any purchaser or subsequent transferee of a note is using assets of any ERISA Plan to acquire or hold the notes, such purchaser and subsequent transferee will be deemed to represent that (i) none of the Issuer, the underwriter or any of their respective affiliates has acted as the ERISA Plan’s fiduciary, or has been relied upon for any advice, with respect to the ERISA Plan’s decision to acquire, hold, sell, exchange, or provide any consent with respect to the notes or any interest therein and none of the Issuer, the underwriter or any of their respective affiliates shall at any time be relied upon as the ERISA Plan’s fiduciary with

[Table of Contents](#)

respect to any decision to acquire, continue to hold, sell, exchange, vote or provide any consent with respect to its interest in the notes, (ii) the ERISA Plan is aware of and acknowledges that (a) none of the Issuer, the underwriter or any of their respective affiliates is undertaking to provide impartial investment advice, or to give advice in a fiduciary capacity, in connection with the ERISA Plan’s investment in the notes and (b) the Issuer and the underwriter have a financial interest in the ERISA Plan’s investment in the notes and (iii) the decision to invest in the notes has been made at the recommendation or direction of an “independent fiduciary” (“Independent Fiduciary”) within the meaning of U.S. Code of Federal Regulations 29 C.F.R. Section 2510.3-21(c), as amended from time to time (the “Fiduciary Rule”) who (a) is independent of the Issuer and the underwriter; (b) is capable of evaluating investment risks independently, both in general and with respect to particular transactions and investment strategies (within the meaning of the Fiduciary Rule); (c) is a fiduciary (under ERISA and/or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code) with respect to the ERISA Plan’s investment in the notes and is responsible for exercising independent judgment in evaluating the ERISA Plan’s investment in the notes; (d) is either (A) a bank as defined in Section 202 of the Investment Advisers Act of 1940, as amended (the “Advisers Act”) or similar institution that is regulated and supervised and subject to periodic examination by a state or federal agency of the United States; (B) an insurance carrier which is qualified under the laws of more than one state of the United States to perform the services of managing, acquiring or disposing of assets of such an ERISA Plan; (C) an investment adviser registered under the Advisers Act or, if not registered an as investment adviser under the Advisers Act by reason of paragraph (1) of Section 203A of the Advisers Act, is registered as an investment adviser under the laws of the state (referred to in such paragraph (1)) in which it maintains its principal office and place of business; (D) a broker dealer registered under the Exchange Act; and/or (E) an Independent Fiduciary (not described in clauses (A), (B), (C) or (D) above) that holds or has under management or control total assets of at least \$50 million, and will at all times that such ERISA Plan holds an interest in the notes, hold or have

under management or control, total assets of at least \$50 million; and (e) is aware of and acknowledges that (I) none of the Issuer, the underwriter or any of their respective affiliates is undertaking to provide impartial investment advice, or to give advice in a fiduciary capacity, in connection with the ERISA Plan’s investment in the notes, and (II) the Issuer, the underwriter and their respective affiliates have a financial interest in the ERISA Plan’s investment in the notes.

Prohibited Transactions

Section 406 of ERISA and Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code (which also applies to IRAs of individuals) prohibit ERISA Plans from engaging in specified transactions involving “plan assets” with persons or entities who are “parties in interest” under ERISA or “disqualified persons” under Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code, unless an exemption is available. A party in interest or disqualified person who engages in a non-exempt prohibited transaction may be subject to excise taxes and other penalties and liabilities under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code. In addition, the fiduciary of the ERISA Plan that engaged in such a non-exempt prohibited transaction may be subject to excise taxes and other penalties and liabilities under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code.

The acquisition, holding or disposition of notes by an ERISA Plan with respect to which either we, our general partner, selling unitholders or any of their respective affiliates is considered a party in interest or a disqualified person may constitute or result in a direct or indirect prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code, unless the investment is acquired, is held and is disposed of in accordance with an applicable statutory, class or individual prohibited transaction exemption. In this regard, the United States Department of Labor (the “DOL”) has issued prohibited transaction class exemptions, or “PTCEs,” that may apply to the acquisition and holding of the notes. These class exemptions include, without limitation, PTCE 75-1, which exempts certain transactions between an ERISA Plan and certain broker-dealers, reporting dealers and banks, PTCE 84-14 respecting transactions determined by independent qualified professional asset managers, PTCE 90-1 respecting insurance company pooled separate accounts, PTCE 91-38 respecting bank collective investment funds, PTCE 95-60 respecting life insurance company general accounts and PTCE 96-23 respecting transactions determined by in-house asset managers, although there can be no assurance that all of the conditions of any such

S-114

[Table of Contents](#)

exemptions will be satisfied. In addition, the statutory service provider exemption provided by Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA and Section 4975(d)(20) of the Internal Revenue Code, which exempts certain transactions between ERISA Plans and parties in interest or disqualified persons that are not fiduciaries with respect to the transaction could apply.

Each of these class exemptions and statutory exemptions contains conditions and limitations with respect to its application. We cannot and do not provide any assurance that any of these class exemptions or statutory exemptions will apply with respect to any particular investment in the notes by, or on behalf of, an ERISA Plan or, even if it were deemed to apply, that any exemption would apply to all transactions that may occur in connection with the investment.

Because of the foregoing, the notes should not be purchased or held by any person investing “plan assets” of any Plan, unless such purchase, holding and subsequent disposition will not constitute or result in a non-exempt prohibited transaction under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code or a violation of any applicable Similar Laws. Each person investing in the notes will be deemed to represent that its acquisition, holding and disposition of such investment will not constitute a non-exempt prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code or a violation of any applicable Similar Law.

Plan Asset Issues

DOL regulations, as modified by Section 3(42) of ERISA, (the “Plan Asset Regulations”) generally provide that when an ERISA Plan acquires an equity interest in an entity that is neither a “publicly-offered security” nor a security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, the ERISA Plan’s assets include both the equity interest and an undivided interest in each of the underlying assets of the entity (the “look-through rule”), unless it is established either that equity participation in the entity by “benefit plan investors” is not “significant” or that the entity is an “operating company,” in each case as defined in Section 3(42) of ERISA and the Plan Asset Regulations.

Under the Plan Asset Regulations, the term “equity interest” means any interest in an entity other than an interest that is treated as indebtedness under applicable local law and that has no substantial equity features. To our knowledge, there are no regulations, published rulings or judicial decisions addressing the characterization for ERISA purposes of securities issued under the same circumstances and with substantially the same terms as the notes. If our assets were deemed to be “plan assets” under ERISA, it would result, among other things, in (i) the application of the prudence and other fiduciary responsibility standards of ERISA to investments made by us and (ii) the possibility that certain transactions in which we might seek to engage could constitute “prohibited transactions” under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code.

However, it is not anticipated that our assets will be considered plan assets because we are primarily engaged in business activities that we believe qualify us as an “operating company” under the Plan Asset Regulations (although no assurance can be or is given in this regard). In addition, our common units are “publicly-offered securities” and we believe that our debt securities are not “equity interests” for purposes of the Plan Asset Regulations, so that even significant investment by Benefit Plan Investors in the notes should not result in our assets being treated as plan assets under ERISA. Investment in each class of our securities by Benefit Plan Investors also may not be “significant” for purposes of the

Plan Asset Regulations, although it is unlikely that we will be in a position to monitor whether or not investment in any class of our securities by Benefit Plan Investors is or may become significant.

The foregoing discussion is general in nature and is not intended to be all-inclusive nor should it be construed as legal advice. Due to the complexity of these rules and the excise tax and other penalties and liabilities that may be imposed on persons involved in non-exempt prohibited transactions, it is particularly important that fiduciaries or other persons considering purchasing the notes on behalf of, or with the assets of, any Plan, consult with their own counsel regarding the potential applicability of ERISA, Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code and any Similar Laws to such investment and whether an exemption would be applicable to the purchase and holding of the notes and the subsequent disposition thereof.

S-115

[Table of Contents](#)

UNDERWRITING

Wells Fargo Securities, LLC is acting as representative of the underwriters named below. Subject to the terms and conditions stated in the underwriting agreement dated the date of this prospectus supplement, each underwriter named below has severally agreed to purchase, and we have agreed to sell to that underwriter, the principal amount of notes set forth opposite its name below:

Underwriters	Principal Amount
Wells Fargo Securities, LLC	\$ 82,500,000.00
BMO Capital Markets Corp.	\$ 55,000,000.00
Deutsche Bank Securities Inc.	\$ 55,000,000.00
SMBC Nikko Securities America, Inc.	\$ 29,975,000.00
ABN AMRO Securities (USA) LLC	\$ 29,975,000.00
BNP Paribas Securities Corp.	\$ 29,975,000.00
Merrill Lynch, Pierce, Fenner & Smith Incorporated	\$ 29,975,000.00
Capital One Securities, Inc.	\$ 29,975,000.00
Citigroup Global Markets Inc.	\$ 29,975,000.00
RBC Capital Markets, LLC	\$ 29,975,000.00
Scotia Capital (USA) Inc.	\$ 29,975,000.00
DNB Markets, Inc.	\$ 29,975,000.00
BBVA Securities Inc.	\$ 29,241,666.67
Fifth Third Securities, Inc.	\$ 29,241,666.67
Regions Securities LLC	\$ 29,241,666.66
Total	\$ 550,000,000

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the underwriting agreement, the underwriters have agreed, severally and not jointly, to purchase all of the notes being sold pursuant to the underwriting agreement if any of the notes are purchased. If an underwriter defaults, the underwriting agreement provides that the purchase commitments of the non-defaulting underwriters may be increased or the underwriting agreement may be terminated.

The underwriters have advised us that they propose initially to offer the notes at the price listed on the cover page of this prospectus supplement. After the initial offering of the notes, the underwriters may from time to time vary the offering price and selling terms. The underwriters may offer and sell through certain of their affiliates.

The following table shows the underwriting discounts and commissions that we are to pay to the underwriters in connection with this offering (expressed as a percentage of the principal amount of the notes and in total).

	Per note	Total
Underwriting discount	1.50%	\$8,250,000

We estimate that our total expenses of this offering, other than underwriting discounts and commissions, will be approximately \$1.3 million. We have also agreed to reimburse the underwriters for certain of their expenses as set forth in the underwriting agreement.

We have agreed to indemnify the underwriters against certain liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribute to payments the underwriters may be required to make in respect of those liabilities.

S-116

[Table of Contents](#)

The underwriters are offering the notes, subject to prior sale, if, as and when issued to and accepted by them, subject to approval of legal matters by their counsel, including the validity of the notes, and other conditions contained in the underwriting agreement, such as the receipt by the underwriters of certificates from certain of our officers and legal opinions. The underwriters reserve the right to withdraw, cancel or modify offers to investors and to reject orders in whole or in part.

We have agreed in the underwriting agreement that for a period of 60 days after the date of this prospectus supplement, we will not, without the prior written consent of Wells Fargo Securities, LLC, directly or indirectly, sell, offer, contract or grant any option to sell, pledge, transfer or establish an open “put equivalent position” within the meaning of Rule 16a-1 under the Exchange Act, or otherwise dispose of or transfer, or announce the offering of, or file any registration statement under the Securities Act in respect of, any of our debt securities or securities exchangeable for or convertible into our debt securities, except for the notes sold to the underwriters pursuant to the underwriting agreement. These restrictions do not apply to, among other things, the filing of a universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 to register debt securities or securities exchangeable for or convertible into our debt securities or other partnership securities, provided that we shall not issue any debt securities or securities exchangeable for or convertible into our debt securities thereunder until the expiration of the 60-day period.

The trading market for the notes is limited. The notes are not listed on any securities exchange or included on any automated dealer quotation system and we do not plan to apply for such listing or arrange for such inclusion. The underwriters have advised us that they presently intend to make a market in the notes as permitted by applicable laws; however, they are not obligated to do so and may discontinue such market-making at any time without providing any notice. Accordingly, no assurance can be given as to the liquidity of any trading market for the notes or that an active public market for the notes will develop. If an active public trading market for the notes does not develop, the market price and liquidity of the notes may be adversely affected. If the notes are traded, they may trade at a discount from their initial offering price, depending on prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities, our operating performance and financial condition, general economic conditions and other factors.

In connection with the offering, the underwriters may purchase and sell notes and/or our other debt securities in the open market. These transactions may include short sales, stabilizing transactions and purchases to cover positions created by short sales. Short sales involve the sale by the underwriters of a greater number of notes (or such other securities) than they are required to purchase in the offering or which they hold in inventory. A short position is more likely to be created if the underwriters are concerned that there may be downward pressure on the prices of the notes in the open market after pricing that could adversely affect investors who purchase in the offering. Stabilizing transactions consist of certain bids or purchases made for the purpose of preventing or retarding a decline in the market price of the notes while the offering is in progress.

The underwriters also may impose a penalty bid. This occurs when a particular underwriter repays to the other underwriters a portion of the commission received by it because Wells Fargo Securities, LLC or its affiliates have repurchased notes sold by or for the account of such underwriter in stabilizing or short covering transactions.

These activities by the underwriters may stabilize, maintain or otherwise affect the market price of the notes and/or other of our debt securities. As a result, the price of the notes (or such other securities) may be higher than the price that otherwise might exist in the open market. Neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation or prediction as to the direction or magnitude of any effect that the transactions described above may have on the price of the notes. In addition, neither we nor any of the underwriters make any representation that the representative will engage in these transactions and activities. If these activities are commenced, they may be discontinued by the underwriters at any time without notice. These transactions may be effected in the over-the-counter market or otherwise.

We expect that delivery of the notes will be made against payment therefor on or about the closing date specified on the cover page of this prospectus supplement, which will be the fifth business day

[Table of Contents](#)

following the date of this prospectus supplement. This settlement cycle is referred to as “T+5.” Under Rule 15c6-1 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, trades in the secondary market generally are required to settle in three business days, unless the parties to any such trade expressly agree otherwise. Accordingly, purchasers who wish to trade notes on the date of this prospectus supplement or the next succeeding business day will be required, by virtue of the fact that the notes initially will settle T+5, to specify an alternate settlement cycle at the time of any such trade to prevent a failed settlement. Purchasers of notes who wish to trade notes on the date of this prospectus supplement or the next succeeding business day should consult their own advisor.

Other Relationships

The underwriters and their respective affiliates are full service financial institutions engaged in various activities, which may include securities trading, commercial and investment banking, financial advisory, investment management, principal investment, hedging, financing and brokerage activities. The underwriters and their respective affiliates have in the past performed commercial banking, investment banking and advisory services for us from time to time for which they have received customary fees and reimbursement of expenses and may, from time to time, engage in transactions with and perform services for us in the ordinary course of their business for which they may receive customary fees

and reimbursement of expenses. Affiliates of each of the underwriters are lenders under our revolving credit facility, and as such may be entitled to be repaid with the net proceeds of this offering that are used to repay a portion of the borrowings outstanding under the revolving credit facility and may receive their pro rata portion of such repayment.

Certain of the underwriters or their affiliates that have a lending relationship with us routinely hedge their credit exposure to us consistent with their customary risk management policies. Typically, such underwriters and their affiliates would hedge such exposure by entering into transactions which consist of either the purchase of credit default swaps or the creation of short positions in our securities, including potentially the notes offered hereby. Any such credit default swaps or short positions could adversely affect future trading prices of the notes offered hereby. The underwriters and their affiliates may also make investment recommendations and/or publish or express independent research views in respect of such securities or financial instruments and may hold, or recommend to clients that they acquire, long and/or short positions in such securities and instruments.

Sales Outside of the United States

The notes are offered for sale in those jurisdictions in the United States, Europe, Asia and elsewhere where it is lawful to make such offers.

Each of the underwriters has represented and agreed that it has not offered, sold or delivered and will not offer, sell or deliver any of our notes directly or indirectly, or distribute this prospectus supplement or any other offering material relating to the notes, in or from any jurisdiction except under circumstances that will result in compliance with the applicable laws and regulations thereof and that will not impose any obligations on us except as set forth in the underwriting agreement.

Notice to Prospective Investors in the European Economic Area

In relation to each member state of the European Economic Area, no offer of notes which are the subject of the offering has been, or will be made to the public in that Member State, other than under the following exemptions under the Prospectus Directive:

- A. to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- B. to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the Representative for any such offer; or
- C. in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive,

S-118

[Table of Contents](#)

provided that no such offer of notes referred to in (a) to (c) above shall result in a requirement for the Company or any Representative to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive, or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

This prospectus has been prepared on the basis that any offer of notes in any Member State will be made pursuant to an exemption under the Prospectus Directive from the requirement to publish a prospectus for offers of notes. Accordingly any person making or intending to make an offer in that Member State of notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated in this prospectus may only do so in circumstances in which no obligation arises for the Company or the Representative to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive in relation to such offer. Neither the Company nor the Representative has authorized, nor do they authorize, the making of any offer of notes in circumstances in which an obligation arises for the Company or the Representative to publish a prospectus for such offer.

For the purposes of this provision, the expression “an offer of notes to the public” in relation to any notes in any Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe the notes, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measure implementing the Prospectus Directive that Relevant Member State, the expression “Prospectus Directive” means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended) and includes any relevant implementing measure each Member State.

The above selling restriction is in addition to any other selling restrictions set out below.

Notice to Prospective Investors in the United Kingdom

This prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus are only being distributed to, and are only directed at, persons in the United Kingdom that are qualified investors within the meaning of Article 2(1)(e) of the Prospectus Directive that are also (i) investment professionals falling within Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005 (the “Order”) or (ii) high net worth entities, and other persons to whom it may lawfully be communicated, falling within Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the Order (each such person being referred to as a “relevant person”). This prospectus supplement and its contents are confidential and should not be distributed, published or reproduced (in whole or in part) or disclosed by recipients to any other persons in the United Kingdom. Any person in the United Kingdom that is not a relevant person should not act or rely on this document or any of its contents.

This prospectus supplement and the accompanying base prospectus are only being distributed in the United Kingdom to, and are only directed at, (a) investment professionals falling within both Article 14(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Promotion of Collective

Investment Schemes) Order 2001, as amended (the “CIS Promotion Order”) and Article 19(5) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2005, as amended (the “General Promotion Order”), and (b) high net worth companies and other persons falling with both Article 22(2)(a) to (d) of the CIS Promotion Order and Article 49(2)(a) to (d) of the General Promotion Order (all such persons together being referred to as “relevant persons”).

S-119

[Table of Contents](#)

Notice to Prospective Investors in France

Neither this prospectus supplement nor any other offering material relating to the notes described in this prospectus supplement has been submitted to the clearance procedures of the Autorité des Marchés Financiers or of the competent authority of another member state of the European Economic Area and notified to the Autorité des Marchés Financiers. The notes have not been offered or sold and will not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, to the public in France. Neither this prospectus supplement nor any other offering material relating to the notes has been or will be:

- released, issued, distributed or caused to be released, issued or distributed to the public in France; or
- used in connection with any offer for subscription or sale of the notes to the public in France.

Such offers, sales and distributions will be made in France only:

- to qualified investors (*investisseurs qualifiés*) and/or to a restricted circle of investors (*cercle restreint d’investisseurs*), in each case investing for their own account, all as defined in, and in accordance with, articles L.411-2, D.411-1, D.411-2, D.734-1, D.744-1, D.754-1 and D.764-1 of the French Code monétaire et financier;
- to investment services providers authorized to engage in portfolio management on behalf of third parties; or
- in a transaction that, in accordance with article L.411-2-II-1o-or-2o-or 3o of the French Code monétaire et financier and article 211-2 of the General Regulations (*Règlement Général*) of the Autorité des Marchés Financiers, does not constitute a public offer (*appel public à l’épargne*).

The notes may be resold directly or indirectly, only in compliance with articles L.411-1, L.411-2, L.412-1 and L.621-8 through L.621-8-3 of the French Code monétaire et financier.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Hong Kong

The notes may not be offered or sold in Hong Kong by means of any document other than (i) in circumstances which do not constitute an offer to the public within the meaning of the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong), or (ii) to “professional investors” within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder, or (iii) in other circumstances which do not result in the document being a “prospectus” within the meaning of the Companies Ordinance (Cap. 32, Laws of Hong Kong) and no advertisement, invitation or document relating to the notes may be issued or may be in the possession of any person for the purpose of issue (in each case whether in Hong Kong or elsewhere), which is directed at, or the contents of which are likely to be accessed or read by, the public in Hong Kong (except if permitted to do so under the laws of Hong Kong) other than with respect to notes which are or are intended to be disposed of only to persons outside Hong Kong or only to “professional investors” within the meaning of the Securities and Futures Ordinance (Cap. 571, Laws of Hong Kong) and any rules made thereunder.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Japan

The notes offered in this prospectus supplement have not been registered under the Securities and Exchange Law of Japan. The notes have not been offered or sold and will not be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, in Japan or to or for the account of any resident of Japan, except (i) pursuant to an exemption from the registration requirements of the Securities and Exchange Law and (ii) in compliance with any other applicable requirements of Japanese law.

S-120

[Table of Contents](#)

Notice to Prospective Investors in Singapore

This prospectus supplement has not been registered as a prospectus with the Monetary Authority of Singapore. Accordingly, this prospectus supplement and any other document or material in connection with the offer or sale, or invitation for subscription or purchase, of the notes may not be circulated or distributed, nor may the notes be offered or sold, or be made the subject of an invitation for subscription or purchase, whether

directly or indirectly, to persons in Singapore other than (i) to an institutional investor under Section 274 of the Securities and Futures Act, Chapter 289 of Singapore (the “SFA”), (ii) to a relevant person pursuant to Section 275(1), or any person pursuant to Section 275(1A), and in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA or (iii) otherwise pursuant to, and in accordance with the conditions of, any other applicable provision of the SFA, in each case subject to compliance with conditions set forth in the SFA.

Where the notes are subscribed or purchased under Section 275 of the SFA by a relevant person which is:

- a corporation (which is not an accredited investor (as defined in Section 4A of the SFA)) the sole business of which is to hold investments and the entire share capital of which is owned by one or more individuals, each of whom is an accredited investor; or
- a trust (where the trustee is not an accredited investor) whose sole purpose is to hold investments and each beneficiary of the trust is an individual who is an accredited investor, shares, debentures and units of shares and debentures of that corporation or the beneficiaries’ rights and interest (howsoever described) in that trust shall not be transferred within six months after that corporation or that trust has acquired the notes pursuant to an offer made under Section 275 of the SFA except:
- to an institutional investor (for corporations, under Section 274 of the SFA) or to a relevant person defined in Section 275(2) of the SFA, or to any person pursuant to an offer that is made on terms that such shares, debentures and units of shares and debentures of that corporation or such rights and interest in that trust are acquired at a consideration of not less than S200,000 (or its equivalent in a foreign currency) for each transaction, whether such amount is to be paid for in cash or by exchange of securities or other assets, and further for corporations, in accordance with the conditions specified in Section 275 of the SFA;
- where no consideration is or will be given for the transfer; or
- where the transfer is by operation of law.

Notice to Prospective Investors in Switzerland

The notes may not and will not be publicly offered, distributed or re-distributed in or from Switzerland and neither this prospectus supplement nor any other solicitation for investments in the notes may be communicated or distributed in Switzerland in any way that could constitute a public offering within the meaning of Articles 1156 or 652a of the Swiss Code of Obligations. The notes are not a collective investment within the meaning of the Federal Collective Investment Schemes Act of June 23, 2006 (Bundesgesetz über die kollektiven Kapitalanlagen, KAG). This prospectus supplement may not be copied, reproduced, distributed or passed on to others without the prior written consent of Wells Fargo Securities, LLC. This prospectus supplement is not a prospectus within the meaning of Articles 1156 and 652a of the Swiss Code of Obligations or a listing prospectus according to article 27 of the Listing Rules of the Swiss Exchange and may not comply with the information standards required thereunder. We will not apply for a listing of the notes on any Swiss stock exchange or other Swiss regulated market and this prospectus supplement may not comply with the information required under the relevant listing rules. The notes offered hereby have not been and will not be registered with the Swiss Federal Financial Market Supervisory Authority (FINMA) and have not been and will not be authorized under the Federal Collective Investment Schemes Act of June 23, 2006 (Bundesgesetz über die kollektiven Kapitalanlagen, KAG). The investor protection afforded by the Federal Collective Investment Schemes Act (Bundesgesetz über die kollektiven Kapitalanlagen, KAG) does not extend to the acquirers of the notes.

S-121

[Table of Contents](#)

Notice to Prospective Investors in Dubai International Financial Centre

The Markets Law DIFC Law No. 1 of 2012 and the Markets Rules (MKT) of the Dubai Financial Services Authority (“DFSA”) Rulebook (“DFSA Rulebook”). This prospectus is intended for distribution only to persons of a type specified in the Markets Rules (MKT) of the DFSA Rulebook to whom Exempt Offers can be made. It must not be delivered to, or relied on by, any other person. The DFSA has no responsibility for reviewing or verifying any documents in connection with Exempt Offers. Accordingly, the DFSA has not approved this prospectus nor taken steps to verify the information set forth herein and has no responsibility for the prospectus. The notes to which this prospectus relates may be illiquid and/or subject to restrictions on their resale. Prospective purchasers of the notes should review this prospectus with due care and conduct their own due diligence on the common units. If you do not understand the contents of this prospectus you should consult an authorized financial advisor.

In relation to its use in the DIFC, this prospectus is strictly private and confidential and is being distributed to a limited number of investors and must not be provided to any person other than the original recipient, and may not be reproduced or used for any other purpose. The interests in the notes may not be offered or sold directly or indirectly to the public in the DIFC.

S-122

[Table of Contents](#)

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the notes offered hereby will be passed upon for us by Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP, Houston, Texas. The validity of certain of the offered notes and other matters arising under Alabama and Louisiana law will be passed upon by McDavid, Noblin & West PLLC and Liskow & Lewis, A Professional Law Corporation, respectively. Certain legal matters with respect to the notes offered hereby will be passed upon for the underwriters by Andrews Kurth Kenyon LLP, Houston, Texas.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements incorporated in this prospectus supplement by reference from Genesis Energy, L.P.'s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016 and the effectiveness of Genesis Energy, L.P.'s internal control over financial reporting have been audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in its report, which is incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements have been so incorporated in reliance upon the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

The financial statements of Poseidon Oil Pipeline Company, L.L.C. incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement by reference from Genesis Energy, L.P.'s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016, have been audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, independent auditors, as stated in its report which is incorporated herein by reference. Such financial statements have been so incorporated in reliance upon the report of such firm upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

The audited historical financial statements of the Alkali Chemicals Business as of December 31, 2016 and 2015 and for the year ended December 31, 2016 and for the nine-month period ended December 31, 2015, included in this prospectus supplement and included on Exhibit 99.5 of Genesis Energy, L.P.'s Current Report on Form 8-K dated August 7, 2017 have been so incorporated in reliance on the report (which contains an explanatory paragraph relating to the Alkali Chemicals Business' revision of its financial statements as described in Note 20 to the combined financial statements) of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, independent accountants, given on the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The audited financial statements of the Alkali Chemicals Business as of March 31, 2015, and for the quarter ended March 31, 2015, included and incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement by reference from Genesis Energy, L.P.'s Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on August 7, 2017 have been audited by RSM US LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report which is included and incorporated herein by reference. Such financial statements have been so incorporated in reliance upon the report of such firm upon its authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

S-123

[Table of Contents](#)

INFORMATION REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements in this prospectus or incorporated by reference into this prospectus that are not historical information may be "forward-looking statements" as defined under federal law.

All statements, other than historical facts, included in this prospectus and the documents incorporated in this prospectus by reference that address activities, events or developments that we expect or anticipate will or may occur in the future, including things such as plans for growth of the business, future capital expenditures, competitive strengths, goals, references to future goals or intentions, estimated or projected future financial performance, and other such references are forward-looking statements, and historical performance is not necessarily indicative of future performance. These forward-looking statements are identified as any statement that does not relate strictly to historical or current facts. They use words such as "anticipate," "believe," "continue," "estimate," "expect," "forecast," "goal," "intend," "may," "could," "plan," "position," "projection," "strategy," "should," or "will," or the negative of those terms or other variations of them or by comparable terminology. In particular, statements, expressed or implied, concerning future actions, conditions or events or future operating results or the ability to generate sales, income or cash flow are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements are not guarantees of performance. They involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions. Future actions, conditions or events and future results of operations may differ materially from those expressed in these forward-looking statements. Many of the factors that will determine these results are beyond our ability or the ability of our affiliates to control or predict. Specific factors that could cause actual results to differ from those in the forward-looking statements include, among others:

- demand for, the supply of, our assumptions about, changes in forecast data for, and price trends related to crude oil, liquid petroleum, natural gas, NaHS, caustic soda and CO₂, all of which may be affected by economic activity, capital expenditures by energy producers, weather, alternative energy sources, international events, conservation and technological advances;
- throughput levels and rates;
- changes in, or challenges to, our tariff rates;
- our ability to successfully identify and close strategic acquisitions, including the Alkali Business Acquisition, on acceptable terms (including obtaining third-party consents and waivers of preferential rights), develop or construct energy infrastructure assets, make cost saving changes in operations and integrate acquired assets or businesses into our existing operations;

- service interruptions in our pipeline transportation systems and processing operations;
- shutdowns or cutbacks at refineries, petrochemical plants, utilities or other businesses for which we transport crude oil, petroleum, natural gas or other products or to whom we sell such products;
- risks inherent in marine transportation and vessel operation, including accidents and discharge of pollutants;
- changes in laws and regulations to which we are subject, including tax withholding issues, regulations regarding qualifying income, accounting pronouncements, and safety, environmental and employment laws and regulations;
- the effects of production declines resulting from the suspension of drilling in the Gulf of Mexico and the effects of future laws and government regulation resulting from the Macondo accident and crude oil spill in the Gulf;
- planned capital expenditures and availability of capital resources to fund capital expenditures;
- our inability to borrow or otherwise access funds needed for operations, expansions or capital expenditures as a result of our credit agreement and the indentures governing our notes, which contain various affirmative and negative covenants;

S-124

[Table of Contents](#)

- loss of key personnel;
- cash from operations that we generate could decrease or fail to meet expectations, either of which could reduce our ability to pay quarterly cash distributions at the current level or continue to increase quarterly cash distributions in the future;
- an increase in the competition that our operations encounter;
- cost and availability of insurance;
- hazards and operating risks that may not be covered fully by insurance;
- our financial and commodity hedging arrangements, which may reduce our earnings, profitability and cash flow;
- changes in global economic conditions, including capital and credit markets conditions, inflation and interest rates;
- natural disasters, accidents or terrorism;
- changes in the financial condition of customers or counterparties;
- adverse rulings, judgments, or settlements in litigation or other legal or tax matters;
- the treatment of us as a corporation for federal income tax purposes or if we become subject to entity-level taxation for state tax purposes; and
- the potential that our internal controls may not be adequate, weaknesses may be discovered or remediation of any identified weaknesses may not be successful and the impact these could have on our unit price.

You should not put undue reliance on any forward-looking statements. When considering forward-looking statements, please review the risk factors identified in this prospectus under “Risk Factors,” as well as the section entitled “Risk Factors” included in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K and our subsequently filed Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and/or Current Reports on Form 8-K (or any amendments to those reports) and any other prospectus supplement we may file from time to time with the SEC with respect to this offering. Except as required by applicable securities laws, we do not intend to update these forward-looking statements and information.

S-125

[Table of Contents](#)

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We file annual, quarterly and other reports and other information with the SEC. You may read and copy any document we file at the SEC’s public reference room at 100 F. Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the SEC at 1-800-732-0330 for further information on their public reference room. Our SEC filings are also available at the SEC’s website at <http://www.sec.gov>.

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference information that we file with it. This procedure means that we can disclose important information to you by referring you to documents filed with the SEC. The information that we incorporate by reference is an integral part of this prospectus supplement, and references to this “prospectus supplement” include the documents (or portions of documents) incorporated by reference.

into this prospectus supplement. Any future filings we make with the SEC prior to the completion of this offering under Section 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, and which are deemed to be “filed,” are also incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement. Any statement contained in the filings (or portions of filings) incorporated by reference in this prospectus supplement will be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this prospectus supplement to the extent that a statement contained in this prospectus supplement or in any filing by us with the SEC prior to the completion of this offering modifies, conflicts with or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this prospectus supplement. We incorporate by reference, other than information furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of any Current Report on Form 8-K or exhibits filed under Item 9.01 relating to those Items, the documents listed below:

- Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016.
- Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q for the quarters ended March 31, 2017 and June 30, 2017.
- Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on January 12, 2017, March 24, 2017, May 15, 2017, June 29, 2017, and August 7, 2017.

You may request a copy of these filings at no cost by making written or telephone requests for copies to:

Investor Relations
Genesis Energy, L.P.
919 Milam, Suite 2100
Houston, Texas 77002
(713) 860-2500

We also make available free of charge on our internet website at <http://www.genesisenergy.com> our Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K, and any amendments to those reports, as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. Information contained on our website is not part of this prospectus supplement.

You should rely only on the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus supplement. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you with any information. You should not assume that the information incorporated by reference or provided in this prospectus supplement is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of each document.

[Table of Contents](#)

INDEX TO AUDITED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	Page(s)
Alkali Chemicals Business of Tronox Limited	
Report of Independent Auditors	F-2
Independent Auditor’s Report	F-3
Combined Statements of Operations for the year ended December 31, 2016 (Successor), the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 (Successor) and the three month period ended March 31, 2015 (Predecessor)	F-4
Combined Statements of Comprehensive Income for the year ended December 31, 2016 (Successor), the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 (Successor) and the three month period ended March 31, 2015 (Predecessor)	F-5
Combined Balance Sheets at December 31, 2016 and 2015	F-6
Combined Statements of Changes in Parent Company Equity for the year ended December 31, 2016 (Successor), the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 (Successor) and the three month period ended March 31, 2015 (Predecessor)	F-7
Combined Statements of Cash Flows for the year ended December 31, 2016 (Successor), the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 (Successor) and the three month period ended March 31, 2015 (Predecessor)	F-8
Notes to Combined Financial Statements	F-9

[Table of Contents](#)



Report of Independent Auditors

To the Management of Tronox Alkali Chemicals Business:

We have audited the accompanying combined financial statements of the Alkali Chemicals Business (a business of Tronox Limited) (Successor), which comprise the balance sheets as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the related statements of operations, comprehensive income, changes in parent company equity and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2016 and for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015.

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of combined financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditors’ Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the combined financial statements based on our audits. We conducted our audits in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the combined financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the combined financial statements. The procedures selected depend on our judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the combined financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, we consider internal control relevant to the Company’s preparation and fair presentation of the combined financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company’s internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the combined financial statements. We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the combined financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Alkali Chemicals Business (Successor) as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2016 and for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015, in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

Philadelphia, Pennsylvania
March 31, 2017, except for the effects of the revision discussed in Note 20 to the combined financial statements, as to which the date is August 2, 2017

PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, Two Commerce Square, Suite 1800, 2001 Market Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103-7042
T: (267) 330-3000, F: (267) 330-3300, www.pwc.com/us



Board of Directors
Alkali Chemicals Business

Report on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying combined financial statements of Alkali Chemicals Business (the Company), which comprise the combined balance sheet as of March 31, 2015, the related combined statement of operations, combined statement of comprehensive income, combined statement of changes in parent company equity and combined statement of cash flows for the period from January 1, 2015 through March 31, 2015, and the related notes to the combined financial statements (collectively, the financial statements).

Management’s Responsibility for the Financial Statements

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

Auditor’s Responsibility

Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor’s judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity’s preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity’s internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinion.

Opinion

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Alkali Chemicals Business as of March 31, 2015, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the period from January 1, 2015 through March 31, 2015 in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

RSM US LLP
Stamford, Connecticut
March 31, 2017

THE POWER OF BEING UNDERSTOOD
AUDIT | TAX | CONSULTING

RSM US LLP is the U.S. member firm of RSM International, a global network of independent audit, tax and consulting firms. Visit rsmus.com/aboutus for more information regarding RSM US LLP and RSM International.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
COMBINED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS
(In millions)

Successor		Predecessor
Year ended	Nine month	Three month
December 31,	period ended	period ended
2016	December 31,	March 31,
	2015	2015

Net Sales	\$	785.8	\$	601.6	\$	195.4
Cost of goods sold		(670.4)		(506.4)		(156.3)
Gross Profit		115.4		95.2		39.1
Selling, general and administrative expenses		(42.4)		(35.7)		(11.9)
Research and development expenses		(2.0)		(2.4)		(0.6)
Income from operations		71.0		57.1		26.6
Other expense, net		(1.5)		(0.5)		(1.1)
Income before tax and equity method investment		69.5		56.6		25.5
Loss and impairment in equity method investment		—		—		(19.9)
Income tax benefit (provision)		(28.8)		(22.5)		(5.2)
Net income	\$	40.7	\$	34.1	\$	0.4

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Combined Financial Statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
COMBINED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME
(In millions)

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Net income	\$ 40.7	\$ 34.1	\$ 0.4
Other comprehensive loss, net of tax:			

Unrealized gains on derivatives, net of taxes of \$1.1	1.9	—	—
Pension adjustments:			
Actuarial (losses) gains, net of taxes of \$0.3 for year ended December 31, 2016 and \$ (0.4) for nine month period ended December 31, 2015	(0.4)	0.6	—
Prior service cost, net of taxes of \$1.5 for year ended December 31, 2016 and \$0.7 for nine month period ended December 31, 2015	(2.5)	(1.1)	—
Total other comprehensive loss	(1.0)	(0.5)	—
Net comprehensive income	\$ 39.7	\$ 33.6	\$ 0.4

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Combined Financial Statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
COMBINED BALANCE SHEETS
(In millions)

	Successor	
	As of December 31,	
	2016	2015
ASSETS		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 37.2	\$ 33.7
Accounts receivable, net of allowance for doubtful accounts	84.9	89.9
Receivables from related parties and affiliates	60.0	47.5
Inventories, net	33.7	37.4
Prepaid and other assets	20.8	17.1
Total current assets	236.6	225.6

Noncurrent assets:		
Property, plant and equipment, net	738.0	758.5
Mineral leaseholds, net	729.2	734.6
Deferred tax assets	—	1.5
Other long-term assets	3.2	4.2
Total assets	<u><u>\$ 1,707.0</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 1,724.4</u></u>
LIABILITIES AND PARENT COMPANY EQUITY		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable	\$ 47.5	\$ 54.4
Net due to Parent	13.4	9.6
Accrued liabilities	32.1	29.2
Total current liabilities	93.0	93.2
Noncurrent liabilities:		
Accrued pension benefits	7.7	2.9
Deferred tax liabilities	18.8	—
Other long-term liabilities	11.9	9.2
Total liabilities	<u>131.4</u>	<u>105.3</u>
Parent company equity:		
Net investment of Parent	1,577.1	1,619.6
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(1.5)	(0.5)
Total parent company equity	<u>1,575.6</u>	<u>1,619.1</u>
Total liabilities and parent company equity	<u><u>\$ 1,707.0</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 1,724.4</u></u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Combined Financial Statements.

F-6

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
COMBINED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN PARENT COMPANY EQUITY
(In millions)

	Net investment of parent	Accumulated other comprehensive loss	Total
<i>Predecessor</i>			
Balance at January 1, 2015	\$ 452.9	\$ —	\$ 452.9
Net income	0.4	—	0.4
Other comprehensive loss	—	—	—
Net transfers to Parent	6.7	—	6.7
Balance at March 31, 2015	<u><u>\$ 460.0</u></u>	<u><u>\$ —</u></u>	<u><u>\$ 460.0</u></u>
<i>Successor</i>			
Balance at April 1, 2015	\$ 1,650.0	\$ —	\$ 1,650.0
Net income	34.1	—	34.1
Other comprehensive loss	—	(0.5)	(0.5)
Net transfers to Parent	(64.5)	—	(64.5)
Balance at December 31, 2015	1,619.6	(0.5)	1,619.1
Net income	40.7	—	40.7

Other comprehensive loss	—	(1.0)	(1.0)
Net transfers to Parent	(83.2)	—	(83.2)
Balance at December 31, 2016	<u>\$ 1,577.1</u>	<u>\$ (1.5)</u>	<u>\$1,575.6</u>

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Combined Financial Statements.

F-7

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
COMBINED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS
(In millions)

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:			
Net Income	\$ 40.7	\$ 34.1	\$ 0.4
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	60.4	42.9	8.8
Loss and impairment of equity method investment	—	—	19.9
Bad debt expense	0.1	0.8	—
Deferred income taxes	21.0	9.4	1.1
Share-based compensation expense	1.2	0.4	—
Pension expense	5.6	4.1	—
Loss on disposal of asset	—	3.7	0.2
Contributions to employee pensions	(5.4)	(2.0)	—
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:			
Accounts receivable	4.9	56.6	6.2
Receivables from related parties and affiliates, net	(12.4)	(34.1)	(0.7)
Inventories, net	3.7	10.9	(12.7)
Prepaid and other assets	(1.4)	(3.4)	(3.8)
Accounts payable	(7.6)	0.2	(17.5)
Net due to Parent	3.8	9.6	—
Accrued liabilities	2.9	7.2	(8.5)
Other long-term liabilities	2.7	(2.6)	3.5
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u>120.2</u>	<u>137.8</u>	<u>(3.1)</u>
Cash Flows from Investing Activities:			
Capital expenditures	(32.2)	(28.5)	(3.2)

Investments in non-consolidated affiliates	—	—	(0.3)
Net cash used in investing activities	(32.2)	(28.5)	(3.5)
Cash Flows from Financing Activities:			
Net transfers to Parent	(84.5)	(75.6)	6.6
Net cash used in financing activities	(84.5)	(75.6)	6.6
Increase in cash and cash equivalents	3.5	33.7	—
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	33.7	—	—
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	\$ 37.2	\$ 33.7	\$ —
Supplemental Cash Flow Information:			
Income taxes settled through Parent company equity	\$ 7.3	\$ 13.1	\$ 4.1
Supplemental Disclosures of Non-Cash Activities:			
Capital expenditures included in Accounts payable	0.6	5.1	4.3
Fixed asset transfers from parent company	0.2	—	0.1

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Combined Financial Statements.

F-8

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS
(In millions)

Note 1: Description of the Business

The accompanying combined financial statements include the historical accounts of Alkali Chemicals Business, (collectively referred to as “Alkali”, “Tronox Alkali Ltd.”, “We”, “Us”, “Our” or the “Company”) of Tronox Limited (“Tronox” or “Successor”), a public limited company registered under the laws of the State of Western Australia, Australia. The Company was acquired by Tronox on April 1, 2015 from FMC Corporation (“FMC” or “Predecessor”). Tronox is a public limited company registered under the laws of the State of Western Australia, Australia with mining operations in the South Africa and the United States, as well as chemical plants in Australia, Netherlands and the United States. FMC is a publicly traded chemical company incorporated in Delaware (United States) providing solutions, applications and products to the agricultural, industrial and consumer markets.

The accompanying combined financial statements (“Combined Financial Statements”) present separately the balance sheet, results of operations, cash flows and changes in parent company equity for the Company on a “Successor” basis, reflecting ownership by Tronox since April 1, 2015, and on a “Predecessor” basis, reflecting ownership by FMC for the three month period ended March 31, 2015. The financial information of the Company has been separated by a vertical line on the face of the Combined Financial Statements to identify the different basis of accounting. See Note 6 within the Combined Financial Statements for additional information related to the acquisition of the Company by Tronox.

On February 21, 2017, Tronox publically announced a plan to begin a process to consider divesting the Company (the “Transaction”). The Transaction would consist of the sale of Tronox Alkali Corporation, its wholly owned subsidiary Tronox Alkali Wyoming and its indirect wholly owned subsidiary Tronox Specialty Alkali LLC.

Nature of Operations

The Company mines and processes trona ore and manufactures natural soda ash and inorganic chemical products that include sodium bicarbonate, sodium sesquicarbonate and caustic soda (collectively referred to as “alkali products”). The alkali products are used in a variety of industries for glass manufacturing, water treatment, pulp and paper, textiles, food and pharmaceuticals and cosmetics. The alkali products are sold directly to various domestic and international customers as well as to the American Natural Soda Ash Corporation (“ANSAC”), the primary export customer of the Company. ANSAC is a third-party nonprofit corporation whose purpose is to promote export sales of U.S. produced soda ash in conformity with the Webb-Pomerene Act. All mining and processing activities of the Company take place at the facility located in the Green River Basin of Wyoming, United States. See Note 5 within these Combined Financial Statements for additional information related to ANSAC.

Note 2: Basis of Presentation

Throughout the periods covered by the accompanying Combined Financial Statements, the Company operated as a business unit of the Successor and Predecessor. Consequently, standalone financial statements were not historically prepared for the Company. The Combined Financial Statements have been derived from the accounting records of the Successor and Predecessor to a provide a historical carve-out presentation of the combined financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2016 and 2015 and its results of operations, changes in parent company equity and cash flows for the year ended December 31, 2016, for the post-acquisition nine month period ended December 31, 2015 and

the three month period ended March 31, 2015.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

The Combined Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (“U.S. GAAP”). The Combined Financial Statements include the assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses of the Company, as carved out from the historical results of operations and the historical bases of assets and liabilities of the Successor and Predecessor, adjusted to conform to U.S. GAAP.

As the Combined Financial Statements present the Company as a carve-out business derived from the historical records of the Successor and Predecessor, Net investment of Parent is shown in lieu of shareholders’ equity on the Combined Balance Sheets. With the exception of certain payables, intercompany balances and transactions between the Company and the Successor and the Company and the Predecessor during their respective periods of ownership have been presented in Net investment of Parent. Intracompany balances and accounts have been eliminated. Net investment of Parent represents the Successor and Predecessor interest in the recorded net assets of the Company.

The Combined Statements of Operations include all revenues and costs directly attributable to the Company, as well as costs for certain functions and services used by the Company that have been allocated from the Successor and Predecessor as further described below:

- During the year ended December 31, 2016 and the nine month period ended December 31, 2015, (collectively referred to herein as the “Successor period”), costs were allocated to the Combined Financial Statements for certain governance and corporate functions such as legal, investor relations, communications and administration. The costs for these services and support functions were allocated to the Company using either specific identification or a pro-rata allocation using net sales.
- During the three month period ended March 31, 2015 (referred to herein as the “Predecessor period”), costs were allocated to the Combined Financial Statements for governance and corporate functions such as legal, investor relations, communications and administration, as well as benefit expenses such as share-based compensation, defined benefit and defined contribution expenses. The costs for these services was determined using the historical annual amount allocated to the Company, pro-rated for the three month period ended March 31, 2015. The historical annual allocation of FMC costs were generally based on a blend of personnel count, net property, plant and equipment, and cost of sales.

The net costs allocated during the Successor and Predecessor periods are included in Selling, general and administrative expenses within the Combined Statements of Operations.

For purposes of the Combined Financial Statements, the income tax provision of the Company was prepared under the separate return method, as if the Company filed income tax returns on a stand-alone basis, separate from the Successor and Predecessor.

The results of the Predecessor period were adjusted to conform to the Successor period presentation. As a result, the Predecessor results reflect the sale of inventory using the first-in, first-out (“FIFO”) basis of accounting rather than the last-in, first-out (“LIFO”) basis historically used by FMC. Additionally, the Predecessor results do not reflect an allocation for capitalized interest.

Management believes the carve-out methodology for expense and cost allocations to be a reasonable reflection of common expenses incurred by the Successor and Predecessor on the Company’s behalf, relative to the total costs incurred by the Successor and Predecessor. These expenses were related to the provision of legal, investor relations, communications and administration services to the Company.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Additionally, the assets and liabilities assigned from the Successor and Predecessor have been deemed attributable to and reflective of the historical

operations of the Company. The Combined Financial Statements of the Company do not present the Successor’s historical debt or related interest expense. However, the amounts recorded may not be representative of the amounts that would have been incurred had the Company been an entity that operated independently of the Successor and Predecessor. Consequently, the Combined Financial Statements may not be indicative of future performance and do not necessarily reflect what the results of operations, financial position and cash flows would have been had the Company operated as a separate entity apart from the Successor and Predecessor during the periods presented. See Note 5 for further discussion of cost allocations included in the Combined Financial Statements.

Note 3: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Estimates and assumptions

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities, the disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the Combined Financial Statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results are likely to differ from those estimates.

Revenue recognition

Revenue is recognized when risk of loss and title to the product is transferred to the customer, pricing is fixed or determinable and collection is reasonably assured. All amounts billed to a customer in a sales transaction related to shipping and handling represent revenues earned and are reported as net sales. Accruals are made for sales returns, rebates and other allowances, which are recorded in “Net sales” in the Combined Statements of Operations and are based on historical experience and current business conditions.

Cost of goods sold

Cost of goods sold includes costs for purchasing, receiving, manufacturing and distributing products, including raw materials, energy, labor, depreciation, depletion, shipping and handling, freight, warehousing and other production costs.

Research and development

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred. These costs include salaries, building costs, utilities and administrative expenses.

Selling, general and administrative expenses

Selling, general and administrative expenses include costs related to marketing, agent commissions and legal and administrative functions such as corporate management, human resources, information technology, investor relations, accounting, treasury and tax compliance including the allocations from the Successor and Predecessor for governance and corporate services.

Share-based compensation

During the Successor Period, certain employees of the Company were eligible to participate in the Tronox Limited Management Equity Incentive Plan (the “MEIP”), which permits the grant of awards that

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

are comprised of incentive options, nonqualified options, share appreciation rights, restricted shares, restricted share units, performance awards and other share-based awards, cash payments and other forms as the compensation committee of the Board of Directors of Tronox (the “Board”) in its discretion deems appropriate, including any combination of the above. Where employees of the Company participate in the MEIP, the allocated cost is included in the Selling, general and administrative expenses based on the grant date fair value of each award, recognized over the requisite service period. The Combined Balance Sheets do not contain any equity amounts related to the MEIP.

The Company recorded stock-compensation expense related to the MEIP of \$1.2 for the year ended December 31, 2016 and \$0.4 for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015. None of the awards vested in 2015 or 2016 and therefore no income tax benefit was recorded for either period.

Pension benefits

During the Successor period, the Company sponsored a defined benefit plan. The defined benefit plan is accounted for using actuarial valuations as required by ASC 715, Compensation - Retirement Benefits. The Company recognizes the funded status of the defined pension plan on the balance sheet and recognizes changes in the funded status that arise during the period but are not recognized as components of net periodic

benefit cost within other comprehensive income or loss, net of income taxes.

Income taxes

Income taxes as presented herein attribute current and deferred income taxes of the Successor and Predecessor to standalone financial statements of the Company in a manner that is systematic, rational, and consistent with the asset and liability method prescribed by ASC 740, Income Taxes. Accordingly, the income tax provision of the Company was prepared under the separate return method whereby an income tax provision is prepared for each member of a consolidated group as if each group member were a separate taxpayer and a stand-alone enterprise. As a result, actual tax transactions included in the consolidated financial statements of the Successor and Predecessor may not be included in the separate Combined Financial Statements of the Company. Similarly, the tax treatment of certain items reflected in the separate Combined Financial Statements of the Company may not be reflected in the consolidated financial statements and tax returns of the Successor and Predecessor; therefore, such items as net operating losses, credit carryforwards, and valuation allowances may exist in the stand-alone financial statements that may or may not exist in the Successor or Predecessor consolidated financial statements.

The breadth of operations of the Company and the complexity of tax regulations require assessments of uncertainties and judgments in estimating the taxes that the Company will ultimately pay. The final taxes paid are dependent upon many factors, including negotiations with taxing authorities in various jurisdictions, outcomes of tax litigation and resolution of disputes arising from tax audits in the normal course of business.

The provision for income taxes is calculated using the asset and liability approach of accounting for income taxes. Under this approach, deferred taxes represent the future tax consequences expected to occur when the reported amounts of assets and liabilities are recovered or paid. The provision for income taxes represents income taxes paid or payable for the current year plus the change in deferred taxes during the year. Deferred taxes result from differences between the financial and tax basis of assets and liabilities and are adjusted for changes in tax rates and tax laws when changes are enacted. Valuation allowances are recorded to reduce deferred tax assets when it is more likely than not that a tax benefit will not be realized. It is the policy of the Company to include accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits in income tax expense.

F- 12

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

In general, the taxable income or loss of the entities comprising the Company was included in the consolidated tax returns of the Successor and Predecessor. As such, separate income tax returns were not prepared for the entities comprising the Company. Consequently, income taxes currently payable are deemed to have been remitted to the Successor and Predecessor, in cash, in the period the liability arose and income taxes currently receivable are deemed to have been received from the Successor and Predecessor in the period that a refund could have been recognized by the Company had it been a separate taxpayer in the Successor and Predecessor periods.

Self-insurance

During the Successor period, the Company maintained self-insurance medical and workers’ compensation programs. The Company records a liability for healthcare and workers’ compensation costs during the period in which they occur as well as an estimate of claims incurred but not reported.

During the Predecessor period, self-insurance workers’ compensation programs were managed by the Predecessor with costs allocated to the Company from the Predecessor for the provision of these benefits.

Cash and cash equivalents.

The Company considers all highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less to be cash equivalents. Historically the Company has participated in and relied upon the centralized cash management systems of the Successor and Predecessor to manage working capital and investing activities such as capital expenditures.

Inventories, net

The inventories of the Company include those costs directly attributable to the alkali products, including all manufacturing overhead, but excluding distribution costs. Inventories are stated at the lower of cost or market (“LOCM”), net of allowances for obsolete and slow-moving inventory. During the Successor period, the cost of inventories was determined using the FIFO, except for materials and supplies which were recorded at average cost, and raw materials which were recorded at standard cost. During the Predecessor period, the cost of inventories was determined on a FIFO basis.

The Company reviews its inventories for impairment annually and at the end of each quarter by comparing the cost of its inventories to its net realizable value. The Company also periodically reviews its inventories for obsolescence (inventory that is no longer marketable for its intended use). In either case, the Company records any write-down equal to the difference between the cost of inventory and its estimated net realizable value based on assumptions about alternative uses, market conditions and other factors.

Accounts receivable, net of allowance for doubtful accounts

Accounts receivable consist primarily of trade receivables from customers resulting from product sales. The Company performs credit evaluations of its customers and take actions deemed appropriate to mitigate credit risk. Only in certain specific occasions does the Company require collateral in the form of bank or parental guarantees or guarantee payments. The Company maintains allowances for potential credit losses based on specific customer review and current financial conditions.

Prepaid and other current assets

Prepaid expenses and other current assets primarily consist of prepaid freight, prepaid royalties and transportation credits.

F-13

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Long lived assets

Property, plant and equipment, net is stated at cost less accumulated depreciation, depletion and amortization, generally computed using the straight-line method. The estimated useful lives follows:

Land Improvements	10-20 years
Buildings	10-40 years
Machinery and equipment	3-25 years
Furniture and fixtures	10 years

Maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred, except for costs of replacements or renewals that improve or extend the lives of existing properties, which are capitalized. Upon retirement or sale, the cost and related accumulated depreciation are removed from the respective account and any resulting gain or loss is included in Cost of goods sold in the Combined Statements of Operations.

Mineral leaseholds are depleted over their useful lives as determined under the units of production method. When it has been determined that a mineral property can be economically developed as a result of establishing proven and probable reserves, the costs incurred to develop such property through the commencement of production are capitalized.

The Company evaluates the recoverability of the carrying value of long-lived assets whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value may not be recoverable. Under such circumstances, the Company evaluates whether the projected undiscounted cash flows of its long-lived assets are sufficient to recover the carrying amount of the asset group being assessed. If the undiscounted projected cash flows are not sufficient, an impairment amount is calculated by discounting the projected cash flows using the weighted-average cost of capital. The amount of the impairment of long-lived assets is written off against earnings in the period in which the impairment is determined.

Fair value measurement

The Company measures fair value on a recurring basis utilizing valuation techniques that maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs, to the extent possible and consider counterparty credit risk in determining fair value. The fair value hierarchy is as follows:

- Level 1 — Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets and liabilities;
- Level 2 — Quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in active markets, quoted prices for identical or similar assets and liabilities in markets that are not active or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data; and
- Level 3 — Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets and liabilities

Derivative instruments

During the Successor period, the Company used derivative financial instruments to manage its exposure to market price fluctuation risk in the

soda ash business. These derivative financial instruments consisted of exchange traded natural gas hedges futures contracts that were designated by the Successor as cash flow hedges for accounting purposes. As cash flow hedges, the effective portion of changes in the fair value of the natural gas futures contracts were recorded as a component of other comprehensive loss and subsequently recognized in net earnings when the hedged items impact earnings.

F-14

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

During the Predecessor period, derivative financial instruments were managed by the Predecessor with gains and losses allocated to the Company for derivative contracts entered into on its behalf.

Note 4: Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In January 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-01, Clarifying the Definition of a Business (“ASU 2017-01”) which provides guidance intended to further clarify the definition of a business and guidance on what will be constituted as a business. Under ASU 2017-01, a business is an entity that can at a minimum have a substantive process; is comprised of more than just a single asset; has the ability to provide goods or services; and shows a potential presence of goodwill. ASU 2017-01 is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017 including interim periods within those fiscal years with early adoption permitted, provided that all of the amendments are adopted in the same period. The guidance requires application using a prospective transition method. The Company does not expect the adoption of ASU 2017-01 to have a material impact on the Combined Financial Statements.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-15, Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments (“ASU 2016-15”) which provides guidance intended to reduce diversity in practice in how certain cash receipts and cash payments are presented and classified in the statement of cash flows. ASU 2016-15 is effective for financial statements issued for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017 and interim periods within those fiscal years with early adoption permitted, provided that all of the amendments are adopted in the same period. The guidance requires application using a retrospective transition method. The Company has not yet determined the impact, if any, that ASU 2016-15 will have on the Combined Financial Statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-13, Financial Instruments — Credit Losses: Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments (“ASU 2016-13”), which requires that entities use a current expected credit loss model which is a new impairment model based on expected losses rather than incurred losses. Under this model, an entity would recognize an impairment allowance equal to its current estimate of all contractual cash flows that the entity does not expect to collect from financial assets measured at amortized cost. The entity’s estimate would consider relevant information about past events, current conditions and reasonable and supportable forecasts that affect the collectability of the reported amount. ASU 2016-13 is effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2019 with early adoption permitted for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018. The Company does not expect the adoption of ASU 2016-13 to have a material impact on the Combined Financial Statements.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, Leases (“ASU 2016-02”) which includes a lessee accounting model that recognizes two types of leases — finance leases and operating leases. The standard requires that a lessee recognize on the balance sheet assets and liabilities for leases with lease terms of more than 12 months. The recognition, measurement and presentation of expenses and cash flows arising from a lease by a lessee will depend on its classification as a finance or an operating lease. The standard is effective for fiscal years and interim periods within those fiscal years, beginning after December 15, 2018. Early adoption is permitted. The new standard must be adopted using a modified retrospective transition and provides for certain practical expedients. Transition will require application of the new guidance at the beginning of the earliest comparative period presented. The Company is evaluating the impact that ASU 2016-02 will have on the Combined Financial Statements and will update relevant accounting policies accordingly.

F-15

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)

(In millions)

In November 2015, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (the “FASB”) issued Accounting Standards Update (“ASU”) 2015-17, *Balance Sheet Classification of Deferred Taxes* (“ASU 2015-17”). ASU 2015-17 simplifies the presentation of deferred income taxes. The new guidance requires that all deferred tax liabilities and assets, along with any related valuation allowance, be classified as noncurrent on our consolidated financial position. We are required to adopt this standard in the first quarter of 2017. The guidance may be applied either prospectively, for all deferred tax assets and liabilities, or retrospectively. We have elected to adopt ASU 2015-17 for 2015, on a prospective basis, and our disclosure in Note 14 is presented accordingly.

In July 2015, as part of its simplification initiative, the FASB issued ASU 2015-11, simplifying the Measurement of Inventory (“ASU 2015-11”). ASU 2015-11 simplifies the subsequent measurement of inventory by requiring entities to remeasure inventory at the lower of cost and net realizable value, which is defined as the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal and transportation. This ASU does not apply to inventory measured using the last-in, first-out or the retail inventory method. The Company is required to adopt this standard in the first quarter of 2017. This standard is required to be applied prospectively with earlier application permitted as of the beginning of an interim or annual period. The Company does not expect the adoption ASU 2015-11 to have a material impact on the Combined Financial Statements.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606) which states that an entity should recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. This guidance is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and may be applied either retrospectively or on a modified retrospective basis. Subsequent to the issuance of the May 2014 guidance, several clarifications and updates have been issued on this topic, the most recent of which was issued in May 2016. The Company is evaluating the impact, if any, that ASU 2014-09 and any amendments thereto, will have on the Combined Financial Statements and will update its accounting policies accordingly.

Note 5: Agreements and Transactions with Related Parties and Affiliates

Shared Services and Corporate Costs

The Company benefits from certain governance and corporate services provided by the Successor, including legal, investor relations, communications and administration. The amount of cost allocated to us by the Successor for these services was \$19.5 for the year ended December 31, 2016 and \$14.1 for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015. The allocations from the Successor were determined using either specific identification or through a pro-rata allocation of Successor company costs using net sales. The amount of cost allocated to us by the Predecessor for shared services and corporate costs was \$4.0 for the three month period ended March 31, 2015. The allocations from the Predecessor were determined using the annual historical cost for such services, pro-rated for the three month Predecessor period. The costs allocated during the Predecessor period also included a charge for the processing of accounts payable by the Predecessor.

The amounts allocated to the Company during the Successor and Predecessor periods discussed herein are included within Selling, general and administrative expenses within the Combined Statements of Operations.

F-16

[Table of Contents](#)

**ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)**

**NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)**

Benefit Costs

During the Predecessor period, employees of the Company participated in the stock compensation plan of the Predecessor, as well as other benefit plans that include pension, post-retirement healthcare and post-employment plans. The amount allocated to the Company for benefit costs was \$2.8 for the three month period ended March 31, 2015.

Cash Management, Financing and Financial Instruments

The cash generated by and consumed within the operations of the Company were historically managed centrally by both the Successor and Predecessor. The available cash balances of the Company were regularly “swept” at the discretion of the Successor and Predecessor with funding for the operating and investing activities of the Company provided as needed. Transfers and distributions of cash between the Company and the Successor and Predecessor are included within Net investment of Parent on the Combined Balance Sheets.

During the Predecessor period, natural gas futures contracts derivative instruments were contracted and settled by the Predecessor on behalf of the Company. The loss incurred by the Predecessor in relation to natural gas futures contracts contracted was not material.

Agreements and Transactions with Affiliates

The Company is a member of ANSAC, an organization responsible for promoting and increasing the use and sale of soda ash and other refined or processed sodium products produced by its members. Costs incurred by ANSAC are charged directly to the Company and include sales and marketing, salaries, benefits, office supplies, professional fees, travel, rent and certain other costs. The transactions between ANSAC and the Company do not necessarily represent arms-length transactions and may not represent all costs incurred as if the Company operated on a stand-alone basis. The Company also benefits from favorable shipping rates for its direct exports when using ANSAC to arrange for ocean transport. Net sales to ANSAC were \$275.9 for the year ended December 31, 2016, \$209.6 for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 and \$68.1 for the three month period ended March 31, 2015. The costs charged to us by ANSAC were \$7.9 for the year ended December 31, 2016, \$7.4 for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 and \$3.8 for the three month period ended March 31, 2015. The costs charged from ANSAC are included in Selling, general and administrative expenses within the Combined Statements of Operations.

Receivables from related parties and affiliates as of December 31, 2016 and 2015 are as follows:

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
NatronX Technologies LLC	\$ 0.1	\$ 1.0
ANSAC	59.9	46.5
Total	<u>\$ 60.0</u>	<u>\$ 47.5</u>

Accounts payable to related parties and affiliates, excluding accounts payable to the Parent which are separately disclosed as net due to the Parent on the Combined Balance Sheets, were \$1.3 and \$3.0 as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively. These include related party payables to ANSAC which are included within Accounts payable on the Combined Balance Sheets.

F-17

Table of Contents

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 6: Acquisition

On April 1, 2015, the Successor acquired the Company for approximately \$1,650.0 in cash and debt. The following table summarizes the assets acquired and the liabilities assumed at their respective acquisition date fair value.

Purchase consideration	<u>\$ 1,650.0</u>
Fair value of assets acquired and liabilities assumed:	
Accounts receivable	147.2
Inventories	48.3
Prepaid and other assets	31.8
Property, plant and equipment(1)	766.8
Mineral leaseholds(2)	738.5
Other long-term assets	3.3
Total assets acquired	<u>1,735.9</u>
Accounts payable	46.0
Accrued liabilities	28.0
Other	11.9
Total liabilities assumed	<u>85.9</u>
Net assets acquired	<u>\$ 1,650.0</u>

- (1) The fair value of property, plant and equipment was determined using the cost approach, which estimates the replacement cost of each asset using current prices and labor costs, less estimates for physical, functional and technological obsolescence, based on the estimated useful life ranging from 5 to 38 years.
- (2) The fair value of mineral rights was determined using the discounted cash flow method, which was based upon the present value of the estimated future cash flows for the expected life of the asset taking into account the relative risk of achieving those cash flows and the time

value of money. A discount rate of 10.4% was used to take into account the risks associated with such assets.

There were no contingent liabilities currently recorded in the fair value of net assets acquired as of April 1, 2015 and the fair value of net assets acquired includes accounts receivable with book value that approximates fair value.

Note 7: Loss and Impairment of Equity Method Investment

In 2011 the Company together with Church & Dwight and TATA Chemicals (Soda Ash) Partners formed NatronX, a joint venture engaged in the manufacturing and marketing of sodium-based and dry absorbents for air pollution control in electric utility and industrial boiler operations. The Company accounts for its 33 1/3 percent ownership interest in NatronX under the equity method whereby the amount invested by the Company is adjusted for its share of undistributed earnings and losses. During the three months ended March 31, 2015, the Company recorded its share of the NatronX loss of \$0.2.

At March 31, 2015, management evaluated the NatronX investment for impairment and determined the decline in value of NatronX was other-than-temporary. A non-cash impairment charge of \$19.9 was recognized by the Company representing the entire balance of its NatronX investment. The impairment

F-18

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

charge is included in Loss and impairment of equity method investment in the Combined Statements of Operations.

Note 8: Accounts Receivable, Net of Allowance for Doubtful Accounts

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
Trade receivables	\$ 73.7	\$ 78.7
Other receivables	12.5	12.3
Allowance for doubtful accounts	(1.3)	(1.1)
Total	<u>\$ 84.9</u>	<u>\$ 89.9</u>

Note 9: Inventories

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
Raw materials	\$ 3.3	\$ 4.2
Work-in-process	5.9	9.1
Finished goods, net	16.3	13.5
Materials and supplies, net	8.2	10.6
Total	<u>\$ 33.7</u>	<u>\$ 37.4</u>

Note 10: Prepaid and other current assets

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
Prepaid royalty	\$ 10.1	\$ 7.4
Prepaid freight	4.7	5.1
Natural gas derivatives	3.0	—
Other	3.0	4.6
Total	<u>\$ 20.8</u>	<u>\$ 17.1</u>

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 11: Property, Plant and Equipment, Net

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
Land and land improvements	\$ 64.9	\$ 62.7
Buildings and improvements	71.4	66.9
Mine and development costs	7.0	0.0
Machinery and equipment	618.9	567.7
Construction-in-progress	63.0	76.2
Total	825.1	773.5
Less accumulated depreciation	(87.2)	(15.0)
Total	<u>\$ 738.0</u>	<u>\$ 758.5</u>

Depreciation and amortization expense for year ended December 31, 2016 was \$53.5 of which \$52.8 was included in Cost of goods sold and \$0.7 was included within Research and development expenses in the Combined Statement of Operations. Depreciation and amortization expense for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 was \$38.2 of which \$37.7 was recorded in Cost of goods sold and \$0.5 was recorded in Research and development expenses in the Combined Statements of Operations. Depreciation and amortization expense for the three month period ended March 31, 2015 was \$8.8 of which \$8.7 was recorded in Cost of goods sold and \$0.1 was recorded in Research and development expenses in the Combined Statements of Operations.

Note 12: Mineral Leaseholds

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
Mineral leaseholds	\$ 738.5	\$ 738.5
Less accumulated depletion	(9.3)	(3.9)
Total	<u>\$ 729.2</u>	<u>\$ 734.6</u>

Depletion expense related to mineral leaseholds for the year ended December 31, 2016 and nine month period ending December 31, 2015 was \$5.4 and \$3.9, respectively and was recorded in Cost of goods sold in the Combined Statements of Operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 13: Accrued Liabilities

Successor	
As of	As of

	December 31, 2016	December 31, 2015
Employee-related costs and benefits	\$ 19.6	\$ 16.1
Taxes other than income taxes	7.6	8.7
Accrued legal and professional expense	1.8	2.4
Other	3.1	2.0
Total	<u>\$ 32.1</u>	<u>\$ 29.2</u>

Note 14: Income Taxes

The income taxes of the Company were computed and reported herein under the “separate return method.” Use of the separate return method may result in differences when the sum of the amounts allocated to stand-alone tax provisions are compared with amounts presented in consolidated financial statements of the Successor and Predecessor. Deferred tax assets and liabilities of the Company could be significantly different from those included in the Successor and Predecessor consolidated financial statements. In addition, certain tax attributes such as net operating loss carryforwards that exist within the Successor and Predecessor consolidated financial statements may or may not exist in the stand-alone financial statements of the Company.

The Combined Financial Statements do not reflect any amounts due to the Successor for income tax related matters as it is assumed that all such amounts due to the Successor were settled on December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015. Similarly, the Combined Financial Statements do not reflect any amounts due to the Predecessor for income tax related matters as it is assumed that all such amounts due to the Predecessor were settled on March 31, 2015.

The components of income tax expenses follows:

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Current			
Federal	\$ 7.3	\$ 12.3	\$ 4.1
State	0.5	0.8	—
Total Current	7.8	13.1	4.1
Deferred			
Federal	20.3	8.4	1.1
State	0.7	1.0	—
Total Deferred	21.0	9.4	1.1
Total	<u>\$ 28.8</u>	<u>\$ 22.5</u>	<u>\$ 5.2</u>

F-21

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

The significant components of the deferred income tax provision follows:

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Deferred tax (exclusive of valuation allowance)	\$ 17.0	\$ 6.9	\$ 1.1
Net increase in the valuation allowance for deferred tax assets	4.0	2.5	—
Deferred income tax provision	<u>\$ 21.0</u>	<u>\$ 9.4</u>	<u>\$ 1.1</u>

The Company has recognized that it is more likely than not that certain future tax benefits may not be realized through future taxable

income. The valuation allowance increased \$4.0 for the year ended December 31, 2016, \$2.5 for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015 and \$0.0 for the three month period ended March 31, 2015. These increases were primarily due to U.S. federal alternative minimum tax credits generated during the year that are not expected to be recoverable.

The significant components of the deferred tax assets and liabilities follows:

	Successor	
	As of December 31, 2016	As of December 31, 2015
Alternative minimum tax credit carryforwards	\$ 74.8	\$ 70.8
Accrued expenses	9.1	10.7
Pension benefits	1.7	1.0
Other deferred tax assets	2.0	0.8
Deferred tax assets	87.6	83.3
Valuation allowance	(74.8)	(70.8)
Deferred tax assets, net of valuation allowance	12.8	12.5
Property, plant and equipment, net	(31.6)	(11.0)
Deferred tax liabilities	(31.6)	(11.0)
Net deferred tax assets (liabilities)	\$ (18.8)	\$ 1.5

Management evaluates the deferred income taxes each reporting period to determine if valuation allowances are required or should be adjusted. U.S. GAAP accounting guidance requires that companies assess whether valuation allowances should be established against their deferred tax assets based on all available evidence, both positive and negative, using a “more likely than not” standard. In assessing the need for a valuation allowance, appropriate consideration is given to all positive and negative evidence related to the realization of the deferred tax assets. This assessment considers, among other matters, the nature and severity of current and cumulative losses, forecasts of future profitability, the duration of statutory carry forward periods and tax planning alternatives.

At December 31, 2016, the Company had tax credit carry forwards related to U.S. federal alternative minimum tax credits with an indefinite expiration period.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

The effective income tax rate applicable to income from operations before income taxes was different from the statutory U.S. federal income tax rate due to the factors listed in the following table:

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year ended December 31, 2016	Nine Month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Statutory U.S. tax rate	35.0%	35.0%	35.0%
Net difference:			
State and local taxes	1.1	2.0	—
Permanent differences	(0.5)	(1.7)	(14.1)
Change in valuation allowance	5.8	4.4	—
Other	—	—	(0.2)
Total difference	6.4	4.7	14.3
Total income tax provision	41.4%	39.7%	20.7%

The financial results of the Company are included in the consolidated income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction of the Successor and Predecessor. As of December 31, 2016, the U.S. federal income tax returns are open for examination and adjustment for the years 2015 and 2016. The Company has no unrecognized tax benefits, or accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits, for the periods presented in

these financial statements.

Note 15: Employee benefit plans

During the Successor period, employees of the Company participated in the Tronox Alkali Corporate Savings Investment Plan (the “SIP”), a qualified defined contribution plan under section 401(k) of the Internal Revenue Code. Under SIP, regular full-time and part-time non-union employees contribute a portion of their earnings and the Company provides a matching contribution up to a predefined threshold. For the year ended December 31, 2016 and the nine month period ended December 31, 2015, the matching contribution was 100% of the first 4% of employee contributions and included a discretionary profit sharing contribution up to 5% of eligible compensation. The discretionary contribution is subject to approval each year by the Board. The matching contribution to the SIP vests immediately; however the discretionary contribution is subject to vesting conditions that must be satisfied over a three year vesting period. Contributions under the SIP, including the match, are invested in accordance with the investment options elected by plan participants. Compensation expense associated with the matching contribution to the SIP was \$3.6 and \$1.3 during 2016 and 2015, respectively, which was included in Cost of goods sold in the Combined Statements of Operations.

The Company also sponsors a defined benefit plan. Upon acquisition of the Company from FMC as discussed in Note 6, the Successor established the Tronox Alkali Corporation Union Retirement Plan (“The Alkali Qualified Plan”) to cover all eligible union employees and retirees of the Company in accordance with the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 (“ERISA”) and the Internal Revenue Code. The Company accounts for The Alkali Qualified Plan as a single employer pension plan that benefits only employees of the Company and thus, the related assets, liabilities costs of the plan are recorded in the Combined Financial Statements.

F-23

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Under The Alkali Qualified Plan, each eligible employee will automatically become a participant upon completion of one year of credited service. Retirement benefits under this plan are calculated based on the total years of service of an eligible participant, multiplied by a specified benefit rate in effect at the termination of the plan participant’s years of service.

The components of net periodic pension costs for the Alkali Qualified plan follows:

	Successor	
	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015
Net periodic cost:		
Service cost	\$ 4.9	\$ 4.0
Interest cost	0.5	—
Expected return on plan assets	(0.1)	—
Amortization of Prior Service Cost	0.3	0.1
Total	<u>\$ 5.6</u>	<u>\$ 4.1</u>

The change in benefit obligations, plan assets and funded status along with amounts recognized in the Combined Balance Sheets follows:

	Successor	
	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Year ended December 31, 2015
<i>Change in benefit obligations:</i>		
Opening benefit obligation	\$ 4.9	\$ —
Service cost	4.9	4.0
Interest cost	0.4	0.1
Net actuarial (gains)	0.5	(1.1)
Plan amendments	4.2	1.9
Ending benefit obligation	<u>14.9</u>	<u>4.9</u>
<i>Change in plan assets:</i>		
Beginning fair value of plan assets	2.0	—

Employer contributions	5.4	2.0
Actual return on plan assets	(0.2)	0.1
Administrative expenses	(0.1)	(0.1)
Ending fair value of plan assets	7.1	2.0
Funded status	<u>\$ (7.8)</u>	<u>\$ (2.9)</u>

The funded status is recorded within Accrued pension benefits within the Combined Balance Sheets. Based on the funded status of the Alkali Qualified Plan, the projected minimum funding requirement was determined to be \$3.4 for 2016, which is payable in 2017. The Company expects to make contributions to the Alkali Qualified Plan of \$3.4 during 2017.

F-24

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Expected benefit payments for the next five years are as follows:

2017	\$0.2
2018	0.3
2019	0.5
2020	0.7
2021	0.9
2022-2026	6.9
Total	<u>\$9.5</u>

	Successor	
	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015
Projected benefit obligation	\$ 14.9	\$ 4.9
Accumulated benefit obligation	4.9	—
Fair value of plan assets	7.1	2.0

Net actuarial losses of \$0.5 and prior service costs of \$5.8, less an applicable aggregate tax effect of \$0.6 are included as components of accumulated other comprehensive loss at December 31, 2016. Net actuarial gains of \$1.1 and prior service costs of \$1.8, less an applicable aggregate tax effect of \$0.3 are included as components of accumulated other comprehensive loss at December 31, 2015. During the year ended December 31, 2016 and the nine month period ended December 31, 2015, \$0.3 and \$0.1, respectively, were reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive loss to the Combined Statements of Operations.

The following weighted average assumptions were used to determine net periodic cost:

	Successor	
	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015
Discount rate	4.25% - 5.00%	4.15%
Expected long-term rate of return	4.23%	4.46%
Rate of compensation increase	0%	0%

The following weighted average assumptions were used in estimating the actuarial present value of the plans' benefit obligations:

	Successor
	Year Ended December 31, 2016
	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015

	2016	2015
Discount rate	4.50%	5.00%
Expected long-term rate of return	2.44%	4.23%
Rate of compensation increase	0%	0%

F-25

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

The discount rates selected for estimating the actuarial present value of the benefit obligation of The Alkali Qualified Plan was 4.50% and 5.00% as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively. The 2016 and 2015 rates were selected based on the results of a cash flow matching analysis, which projected the expected cash flows of the plan.

In forming the assumption of the Alkali Qualified Plan long-term rate of return on plan assets, management took into account the expected earnings on funds already invested, earnings on contributions expected to be received in the current year and earnings on reinvested returns. The long-term rate of return estimation methodology for Alkali Qualified Plans is based on a capital asset pricing model using historical data and a forecasted earnings model. An expected return on plan assets analysis is performed which incorporates the current portfolio allocation, historical asset-class returns and an assessment of expected future performance using asset-class risk factors.

As of December 31, 2016 and 2015, pension plan assets consists of debt and equity securities. The Alkali plan is administered by a Board-appointed committee that has fiduciary responsibility for the plan’s management. The committee is responsible for the oversight and management of the plan’s investments. The committee maintains an investment policy that provides guidelines for selection and retention of investment managers or funds, allocation of plan assets and performance review procedures and updating of the policy. At least annually, the Alkali Qualified Plan’s asset allocation guidelines are reviewed in light of evolving risk and return expectations.

The objective of the committee’s investment policy is to manage the plan assets in such a way that will allow for the on-going payment of the Company’s obligation to the beneficiaries. To meet this objective, the committee has structured a portfolio that will provide liquidity to meet the plan benefit payments and expense payable from the plan under ERISA and manage the plan asset in a liability framework. To provide adequate liquidity and control risk, the investment policy sets broad investment guidelines that permit investment managers and funds to invest in liability-hedging assets to control the plan’s surplus volatility. This includes investment in high-quality, investment grade bonds with durations that approximate the durations of the liabilities.

Fixed income portfolio managers are permitted to use fixed income derivative contracts to achieve general portfolio objectives in accordance with the risk management and internal control procedures agreed between the manager and the committee’s advisor. The overall performance of the liability-hedging assets will be determined primarily by how they track the investable custom liability-hedging mandate they are designed to hedge. Cash equivalents can be held to meet the benefits obligations of the plan and to pay fees. The cash equivalents investments of the plan can be invested in a diversified mix of high-quality, short-term debt securities, including commercial paper, bankers’ acceptance, certificates of deposits and US government obligations.

Investment in return seeking assets is prohibited.

The fair values of pension investments as of December 31, 2016 are summarized below:

	Successor			
	Fair Value Measurement at December 31, 2016, Using:			
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
U.S. Treasury securities ⁽¹⁾	\$ 3.0	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 3.0
Corporate debt securities ⁽²⁾	4.1	—	—	4.1
Total at fair value	\$ 7.1	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 7.1

F-26

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS

(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

- (1) For U.S. Treasury securities owned by funds, fair value is based on observable quoted prices on active exchanges, which are Level 1 inputs.
- (2) For corporate debt securities owned by the funds, fair value is based on observable inputs of comparable market transactions, which are Level 1 inputs.

The fair values of pension investments as of December 31, 2015 are summarized below:

	Successor			
	Fair Value Measurement at December 31, 2015, Using:			
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
Corporate debt securities(1)	\$ 1.2	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 1.2
U.S. Treasury securities(2)	0.7	—	—	0.7
Investments measured at NAV(3)	—	—	—	0.1
Total at fair value	\$ 1.9	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 2.0

- (1) For corporate debt securities owned by the funds, fair value is based on observable inputs of comparable market transactions, which are Level 1 inputs.
- (2) For U.S. Treasury securities owned by funds, fair value is based on observable quoted prices on active exchanges, which are Level 1 inputs.
- (3) In accordance with Subtopic 820-10, certain investments that were measured at net asset value per share have not been classified in the fair value hierarchy. The fair value amounts presented in that table are intended to permit reconciliation of the fair value to the line items in the statement on net assets available for benefits.

Note 16: Derivative Instruments

The Company entered into natural gas futures contracts beginning in 2016 in order to mitigate exposure from changes in market prices related to certain natural gas prices. The Company records these future contracts in either prepaid and other assets or other current liabilities at fair value in the Combined Balance Sheets and recognizes changes in the fair value of these future contracts in accumulated other comprehensive income, as these instruments have been designated as cash flow hedges.

As of December 31, 2016, the Company was party to futures contracts with a notional value of \$13.0, expiring in December, 2017. For the year ended December 31, 2016, realized gains were immaterial and recorded within the Combined Statement of Operations. Unrealized gains on the future contracts amounted to \$3.0 for the year ended December 31, 2016 and was recorded in the Statements of Other Comprehensive Income. The Company expects to recognize this amount into earnings over the next 12 months. The fair value of the future contracts was \$3.0 and was recorded in Prepaid and other assets for December 31, 2016 and is further summarized below:

	Successor			
	Fair Value Measurement at December 31, 2016, Using:			
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Total
Asset Category:	\$	\$	\$	\$
Future Contracts	—	3.0	—	3.0
Total at fair value	\$ —	\$ 3.0	\$ —	\$ 3.0

F-27

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 17: Commitments and Contingencies

Lease commitments

The Company leases various types of office space, manufacturing, data processing and rail transportation equipment. The gross rent expense under operating leases amounted to \$17.6 and \$12.3 for the year ended December 31, 2016 and nine month period ended December 31, 2015, respectively.

At December 31, 2016, minimum rental commitments under non-cancelable operating leases were as follows:

2017	\$ 14.9
2018	15.1
2019	15.6
2020	15.3
2021	15.3
Thereafter	65.9
Total	<u>\$142.1</u>

Purchase Commitments

The Company is party to coal supply contracts designed to mitigate volatility in the price of coal. The purchase commitments at December 31, 2016 were as follows:

2017	\$ 4.1
2018	4.1
2019	4.1
2020	4.1
2021	4.1
Thereafter	20.3
Total	<u>\$40.8</u>

Guarantees

The entities included within the Combined Financial Statements together with other subsidiaries of the Successor, jointly and severally guarantee the Successor’s debt obligations, namely a UBS revolving credit facility having a maturity date no later than June 18, 2017, Senior Notes due 2020 and Senior Notes due 2022. The amount outstanding under these debt obligations was \$1,650.0 at December 31, 2016.

At December 31, 2016 and 2015, the fair value of the Senior Notes due 2020 was \$841.0 and \$520.0, respectively. At December 31, 2016 and 2015, the fair value of the Senior Notes due 2022 was \$544.0 and \$347.0, respectively. The Company determined the fair value of the Senior Notes due 2020 and the Senior Notes due 2022 using quoted market prices. The fair value hierarchy for the Senior Notes due 2020 and the Senior Notes due 2022 is a Level 1 input. The Company determined the fair value of the UBS Revolver based on the contracted amounts which approximates fair value based on the short term nature of the borrowing and variable interest rate. The fair value hierarchy for our UBS Revolver is a Level 2 input. At December 31, 2016 and 2015, the fair value of the UBS Revolver was \$150.0 and \$150.0, respectively.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Contingencies

The Company is subject to certain contingent liabilities arising in the ordinary course of business. Some of these contingencies are known but are so preliminary that the merits cannot be determined, or if more advanced, are not deemed material based on current knowledge and some are unknown - for example, claims with respect to which the Company has no notice or claims which may arise in the future, resulting from products sold, guarantees or warranties made, or indemnities provided. Therefore, management is unable to develop a reasonable estimate of any potential exposure of loss for these contingencies, either individually or in the aggregate, at this time.

Based on information currently available and established reserves, management has no reason to believe that the ultimate resolution of known contingencies will have a material adverse effect on the combined financial position, liquidity or results of operations. However, there can be no assurance that the outcome of these contingencies will be favorable and adverse results in certain of these contingencies could have a material adverse effect on the combined financial position, results of operations in any one reporting period, or liquidity.

Environmental

Portions of mining operations in the Green River Basin of Wyoming are powered by natural gas which is delivered to the site via pipelines. Condensate from a natural gas pipeline, that is no longer in service, was collected in a condensate tank and “blown- down” into an unlined condensate disposal pit, a practice that was widely accepted at the time. This condensate included contaminant traces of volatile organic

compounds (“VOC”) that are characterized and monitored by the indicator parameter, benzene. As a result, site investigations have confirmed that these VOCs are present in the soils and groundwater which extends from the condensate disposal pit to a down-gradient area that is bounded by a groundwater cut-off wall and pump back system. The notification from the WyDEQ requires a Focused Feasibility Study (“FFS”) be completed on the technologies that can be used to remedy the soils and groundwater in contaminated areas. At December 31, 2016 and 2015, the cost of the decontamination was \$2.5 and \$2.6, respectively. This estimated cost was included in Other long-term liabilities in the Combined Balance Sheets.

Note 18: Concentration of Net Sales

Net sales by geographic area follows:

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Nine Month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Domestic	\$ 480.3	\$ 351.5	\$ 113.1
International operations:			
ANSAC	275.9	209.6	68.1
Other	29.6	40.5	14.2
Total International	305.5	250.1	82.3
Total	\$ 785.8	\$ 601.6	\$ 195.4

F-29

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Net sales from external customers for each similar product follows:

	Successor		Predecessor
	Year Ended December 31, 2016	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015	Three month period ended March 31, 2015
Sodium bicarbonate	\$ 32.7	\$ 25.1	\$ 7.8
Sodium sesquicarbonate	69.4	53.3	15.9
Caustic soda	14.2	10.3	4.2
Soda ash	669.5	512.9	167.5
Total	\$ 785.8	\$ 601.6	\$ 195.4

Note 19: Subsequent Events

Management has evaluated subsequent events through March 31, 2017 and recognized transactions in the Combined Financial Statements as appropriate. Additionally, management has evaluated transactions that occurred as of the issuance date of these financial statements or March 31, 2017 for the purpose of disclosure of unrecognized events.

Note 20: Revision of Previously Issued Combined Financial Statements

During the first quarter of 2017, the Company identified an understatement of 2016 revenue related to customer freight billings, as well as an understatement of bad debt expense in 2015. In addition, we also corrected the timing of other previously recorded immaterial out-of-period adjustments and other miscellaneous immaterial corrections and reflected them in the revised financial statements. The cumulative impact on the Statement of Operations of these misstatements was an increase to net income for the year ended December 31, 2016 of \$2.3 million, and a decrease to net income of \$0.4 million for the nine month period ended December 31, 2015.

In accordance with Staff Accounting Bulletin (“SAB”) No. 99, *Materiality*, and SAB No. 108, *Considering the Effects of Prior Year Misstatements when Quantifying Misstatements in Current Year Financial Statements*, management evaluated the materiality of the misstatements from qualitative and quantitative perspectives, and concluded that the misstatements, although not material to the originating periods, would be material to the three months ended March 31, 2017, and accordingly we have revised our previously issued Combined Financial Statements to

correct for these misstatements.

Components may not sum to total due to rounding.

The effects on our annual Combined Financial Statements are as follows:

Combined Statement of Operations

	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015		
	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Selling, general and administrative expenses	\$ 34.9	\$ 0.8	\$ 35.7
Income from operations	57.9	(0.8)	57.1
Income from operations before income taxes	57.4	(0.8)	56.6
Income tax provision	22.9	(0.4)	22.5
Net income	34.5	(0.4)	34.1

F-30

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

	December 31, 2016		
	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Net sales	\$ 784.0	\$ 1.8	\$ 785.8
Cost of goods sold	670.8	(0.4)	670.4
Gross profit	113.2	2.2	115.4
Selling, general and administrative expenses	43.2	(0.8)	42.4
Income from operations	68.0	3.0	71.0
Income from operations before income taxes	66.5	3.0	69.5
Income tax provision	28.1	0.7	28.8
Net income	38.4	2.3	40.7

Combined Balance Sheet

	December 31, 2015		
	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Trade receivables, net of allowance for doubtful accounts	\$ 90.6	\$ (0.7)	\$ 89.9
Total current assets	226.3	(0.7)	225.6
Deferred tax asset	1.2	0.3	1.5
Total assets	1,724.8	(0.4)	1,724.4
Net investment of Parent	1,620.0	(0.4)	1,619.6
Total equity	1,619.5	(0.4)	1,619.1
Total liabilities and equity	1,724.8	(0.4)	1,724.4

	December 31, 2016		
	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Trade receivables, net of allowance for doubtful accounts	\$ 83.1	\$ 1.8	\$ 84.9
Inventories, net	33.4	0.3	33.7
Prepaid and other assets	20.7	0.1	20.8
Total current assets	234.4	2.2	236.6
Total assets	1,704.8	2.2	1,707.0
Net investment of Parent	1,574.9	2.2	1,577.1
Total equity	1,573.4	2.2	1,575.6
Total liabilities and equity	1,704.8	2.2	1,707.0

Combined Statements of Changes in Parent Company Equity

December 31, 2016 & 2015

	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Net income	\$ 34.5	\$ (0.4)	\$ 34.1
Balance at December 31, 2015	1,619.5	(0.4)	1,619.1
Net income	38.4	2.3	40.7
Net transfers to Parent	(83.5)	0.3	(83.2)
Balance at December 31, 2016	1,573.4	2.2	1,575.6

F-31

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS — (Continued)
(In millions)

Combined Statement of Cash Flows

	Nine month period ended December 31, 2015		
	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Net income	\$ 34.5	\$ (0.4)	\$ 34.1
Bad debt expense	—	0.8	0.8
Deferred income tax	9.7	(0.3)	9.4
Net cash provided by operating activities	137.8	—	137.8

	December 31, 2016		
	As Reported	Adjustment	Revised
Net income	\$ 38.4	\$ 2.3	\$ 40.7
Bad debt expense	0.9	(0.8)	0.1
Deferred income taxes	20.8	0.2	21.0
Trade receivables, net of allowance for doubtful accounts	6.7	(1.8)	4.9
Inventories, net	4.0	(0.3)	3.7
Prepaid and other assets	1.3	0.1	1.4
Net cash provided by operating activities	120.6	(0.4)	120.2
Net transfer to parent	84.9	(0.4)	84.5
Net cash used in financing activities	84.9	(0.4)	84.5

F-32

[Table of Contents](#)

INDEX TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	Page(s)
Alkali Chemicals Business of Tronox Limited	
Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations (Unaudited) for the Three Months Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016	F-34
Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Comprehensive Income (Unaudited) for the Three Months Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016	F-35
Interim Condensed Combined Balance Sheets (Unaudited) at March 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016	F-36
Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Changes in Parent Company Net Investment (Unaudited) for the Three Months Ended March 31, 2017	F-37
Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Cash Flows (Unaudited) for the Three Months Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016	F-38
Notes to Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements (Unaudited)	F-39

F-33

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS		
(A Business of Tronox Limited)		
INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS (Unaudited)		
(In millions)		
	Three months ended March 31, 2017	Three months ended March 31, 2016
Net Sales	\$ 190.6	\$ 190.0
Cost of goods sold	(162.7)	(163.6)
Gross Profit	27.9	26.4
Selling, general and administrative expenses	(10.8)	(9.0)
Restructuring expense	(1.2)	—
Research and development expenses	(0.2)	(0.3)
Income from operations	15.7	17.1
Other income, net	—	0.1
Income from operations before income taxes	15.7	17.2
Income tax	(6.4)	(7.1)
Net income	\$ 9.3	\$ 10.1

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS		
(A Business of Tronox Limited)		
INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (Unaudited)		
(In millions)		
	Three months ended March 31, 2017	Three months ended March 31, 2016

Net income	\$	9.3	\$	10.1
Other comprehensive loss, net of tax:				
Unrealized (losses) gains on derivatives, net of taxes of \$0.8 and \$0 for the three months ended March 31, 2017 and 2016		(1.5)		—
Total other comprehensive (loss) income		(1.5)		—
Net comprehensive income	\$	7.8	\$	10.1

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements.

F-35

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED BALANCE SHEETS (Unaudited)
(In millions)

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
ASSETS		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 44.7	\$ 37.2
Trade receivables, net of allowance for doubtful accounts	80.7	84.9
Receivables from related parties and affiliates, net	57.4	60.0
Inventories, net	35.0	33.7
Prepaid and other assets	13.6	20.8
Total current assets	231.4	236.6
Noncurrent assets:		
Property, plant and equipment, net	726.0	738.0
Mineral leaseholds, net	727.7	729.2
Other long-term assets	4.1	3.2
Total assets	\$ 1,689.2	\$ 1,707.0
LIABILITIES AND EQUITY		
Current liabilities:		
Accounts payable, trade and other	\$ 45.0	\$ 47.5

Net due to parent	0.7	13.4
Accrued liabilities	31.4	32.1
Total current liabilities	77.1	93.0
Noncurrent liabilities:		
Pension and postretirement healthcare benefits	8.4	7.7
Deferred tax liabilities	22.8	18.8
Other long-term liabilities	12.0	11.9
Total liabilities	120.3	131.4
Equity:		
Net investment of Parent	1,571.9	1,577.1
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(3.0)	(1.5)
Total equity	1,568.9	1,575.6
Total liabilities and equity	\$ 1,689.2	\$ 1,707.0

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements.

F-36

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN
PARENT COMPANY NET INVESTMENT (Unaudited)
(In millions)

	Net investment of parent	Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	Total
Balance at January 1, 2017	\$ 1,577.1	\$ (1.5)	\$1,575.6
Net income	9.3	—	9.3
Other comprehensive income (loss):			
Unrealized loss on derivatives	—	(1.5)	(1.5)
Net change in net investment of Parent	(14.5)	—	(14.5)
Balance at March 31, 2017	\$ 1,571.9	\$ (3.0)	\$1,568.9

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements.

F-37

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS		
(A Business of Tronox Limited)		
INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (Unaudited)		
(In millions)		
	Three months ended March 31, 2017	Three months ended March 31, 2016
Cash Flows from Operating Activities:		
Net Income	\$ 9.3	\$ 10.1
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:		
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	16.8	14.1
Reversal of bad debt expense	(0.2)	(0.2)
Deferred income taxes	4.8	5.2
Share-based compensation expense	0.5	0.1
Pension expense	1.4	0.8
Contributions to employee pensions	(0.8)	(0.5)
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Trade receivables	4.4	0.2
Receivables from related parties and affiliates, net	2.6	0.2
Inventories, net	(1.3)	(5.0)
Prepaid and other assets	4.8	2.9
Accounts payable	(2.7)	9.2
Net due to Parent	(12.7)	(7.4)
Accrued liabilities	(0.7)	0.9
Pension and postretirement healthcare benefits	0.2	1.2
Other Long-term liabilities	(0.1)	0.4
Net cash provided by operating activities	26.3	32.2
Cash Flows from Investing Activities:		
Capital expenditures	(4.0)	(14.9)
Net cash used in investing activities	(4.0)	(14.9)
Cash Flows from Financing Activities:		
Net transfers to Parent	(14.8)	(33.4)
Net cash used in financing activities	(14.8)	(33.4)
Increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	7.5	(16.1)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	37.2	33.7
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	\$ 44.7	\$ 17.6

Supplemental Cash Flow Information:			
Income taxes settled through Parent company equity	\$	1.6	\$ 1.9
Increase (decrease) in capital expenditures included in Accounts Payable	\$	0.2	\$ (6.8)

The accompanying notes are an integral part of these Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements.

F-38

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited)
(In millions)

Note 1: Description of the Business

The accompanying unaudited interim condensed combined financial statements (“Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements”) include the historical accounts of the Alkali Chemicals Business (collectively referred to as “Alkali”, “Tronox Alkali Ltd.”, “We”, “Us”, “Our” or the “Company”) of Tronox Limited (the “Parent” or “Tronox”), a public limited company registered under the laws of the State of Western Australia, Australia. On April 1, 2015 Tronox completed the acquisition of Alkali from FMC Corporation (“FMC”) for an aggregate purchase price of \$1,650.0 in cash and debt.

Nature of Operations

The Company mines and processes trona ore and manufactures natural soda ash and inorganic chemical products that include sodium bicarbonate, sodium sesquicarbonate and caustic soda (collectively referred to as “alkali products”). The alkali products are used in a variety of industries for glass manufacturing, water treatment, pulp and paper, textiles, food and pharmaceuticals and cosmetics. The alkali products are sold directly to various domestic and international customers as well as to the American Natural Soda Ash Corporation (“ANSAC”), the primary export customer of the Company. ANSAC is a third-party nonprofit corporation whose purpose is to promote export sales of U.S. produced soda ash in conformity with the Webb-Pomerene Act. All mining and processing activities of the Company take place at the facility located in the Green River Basin of Wyoming, United States. See Note 5 within these Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements for additional information related to ANSAC.

Note 2: Basis of Presentation

Throughout the periods covered by the accompanying Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements, Alkali operated as a business unit of Tronox. Consequently, standalone financial statements were not historically prepared for Alkali. The Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements have therefore been derived from the accounting records of the Parent to present the Alkali historical carve-out interim condensed combined financial position as of March 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 and its results of operations, changes in Parent company equity and cash flows for the three months ended March 31, 2017.

The Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (“U.S. GAAP”) for interim financial information. The Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements include the assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses of Alkali, as carved out from the historical results of operations and the historical bases of assets and liabilities of the Parent, adjusted to conform to U.S. GAAP. In the opinion of management, all adjustments (consisting of normal recurring adjustments) considered necessary for a fair statement of the results for interim periods have been included. Results for interim periods should not be considered indicative of results for a full year. These Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements do not represent complete financial statements and should be read in conjunction with the Annual Combined Financial Statements for the years ended December 31, 2016 and 2015, collectively referred to as the “Annual Combined Financial Statements.”

As the Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements present Alkali as a carve-out business derived from the historical records of the Parent, net investment of Parent is shown in lieu of shareholders’ equity on the Interim Condensed Combined Balance Sheets. With the exception of certain payables, intercompany balances and transactions between Alkali and Tronox have been presented in Net investment of Parent. Intracompany balances and accounts within Alkali have been eliminated. Net investment of Parent represents Tronox’s interest in the recorded net assets of Alkali.

F-39

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

The Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations include all revenues and costs directly attributable to Alkali, as well as costs for certain functions and services used by Alkali. Therefore, certain costs related to Alkali have been allocated from the Parent. These allocated costs are primarily related to certain governance and corporate functions such as legal, investor relations, communications and administration. The costs associated with these services and support functions have been allocated to Alkali primarily through specific identification or a pro-rata allocation using net sales. The net costs allocated for these functions are included in Selling, general and administrative expenses within the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations.

For purposes of the Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements, the income tax expense and deferred tax balances have been estimated as if we filed income tax returns stand-alone basis separate from Tronox.

The expense and cost allocations have been determined on a basis considered by management to be a reasonable reflection of the utilization of services both provided to and received by Alkali relative to the total costs incurred by Tronox. Additionally, the assets and liabilities assigned from Tronox have been deemed attributable to and reflective of the historical operations of Alkali. The Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements of the Company do not present the Parent’s historical debt or related interest expense. However, the amounts recorded may not be representative of the amounts that would have been incurred had Alkali been an entity that operated independently of Tronox. Consequently, the Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements may not be indicative of Alkali’s future performance and do not necessarily reflect what its results of operations, financial position and cash flows would have been had Alkali operated as a separate entity apart from Tronox during the periods presented. See Note 5 for further discussion of cost allocations included in the Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statement.

Components may not sum to total due to rounding.

Note 3: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Our significant accounting policies are those that we believe are important to the portrayal of our financial condition and results of operations, as well as those that involve significant judgments or estimates about matters that are inherently uncertain. There have been no material changes to the significant accounting policies as discussed in Note 3 of our Annual Combined Financial Statements.

Note 4: Recent Accounting Pronouncements

In addition to the accounting standards discussed in the Annual Combined Financial Statements, management assessed the impact of the following recently issued accounting standards:

In March 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-07, Compensation-Retirement Benefits: Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost (“ASU 2017-07”) which amends the requirements in ASC 715, Compensation-Retirement Benefits, which requires employers that sponsor defined benefit pension and/or other postretirement plans to aggregate the various components of net periodic benefit cost for presentation purposes but does not prescribe where they should be presented in the income statement. ASU 2017-07 requires employers to present the service cost component of the net periodic benefit cost in the same income statement line item(s) as other employee compensation costs arising from service rendered during the period. In addition, only the service cost component will be eligible for capitalization in assets. Employers will present the other components

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

separately from the line item(s) that includes the service cost and outside of any subtotal of operating income, if one is presented. Employers will have to disclose the line item(s) used to present the other components of net periodic benefit cost, if the components are not presented separately in the income statement. ASU 2017-07 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted as of the beginning of an annual period for which an entity’s financial statements (interim or annual) have not been issued.

ASU 2017-07 requires the presentation of the components of net periodic benefit cost in the income statement retrospectively while the guidance limiting the capitalization of net periodic benefit cost in assets to the service component will be applied prospectively. We have not yet determined the impact, if any, that ASU 2017-07 will have on our Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements.

Note 5: Agreements and Transactions with Related Parties and Affiliates

Shared Services and Corporate Costs

We benefit from certain governance and corporate services provided by the Parent, including legal, investor relations, communications and administration. The amount of cost allocated to us by the Parent for these services was \$4.9 for the three months ended March 31, 2017 and \$4.3 for the three months ended March 31, 2016. These Parent allocations were determined through either specific identification or a pro-rata allocation using net sales and are included within Selling, general and administrative expenses within the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations.

Stock-Based Compensation

During the period, employees of the Company were eligible to participate in the Tronox Limited Management Equity Incentive Plan (the “MEIP”), which permits the grant of awards that are comprised of incentive options, nonqualified options, share appreciation rights, restricted shares, restricted share units, performance awards and other share-based awards, cash payments and other forms as the compensation committee of the Board of Directors of Tronox (the “Board”) in its discretion deems appropriate, including any combination of the above.

The Company recorded stock-compensation expense related to the MEIP of \$0.5 and \$0.1 for the three months ended March 31, 2017 and 2016. None of the awards vested in 2017 or 2016 and therefore no income tax benefit was recorded for either period. Stock compensation expense is included within in Selling, general and administrative expenses within the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations.

Cash Management, Financing and Financial Instruments

Tronox uses a centralized approach to cash management and the financing of its operations. The available cash balances of Alkali are regularly “swept” at the discretion of Tronox with Tronox funding Alkali’s operating and investing activities as needed. Transfers and distributions of cash between Alkali and Tronox are included within Net investment of Parent on the Interim Condensed Combined Balance Sheets.

Agreements and Transactions with Affiliates

We hold a membership in ANSAC, which is responsible for promoting and increasing the use and sale of soda ash and other refined or processed sodium products produced. Costs incurred by ANSAC are

F-41

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)

NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

charged directly to us and included within Selling, general and administrative expenses. These costs include sales and marketing, salaries, benefits, office supplies, professional fees, travel, rent and certain other costs. These transactions do not necessarily represent arm’s length transactions and may not represent all costs if we operated on a stand-alone basis. We also benefit from favorable shipping rates for our direct exports when using ANSAC to arrange for ocean transport. Net sales to ANSAC were \$74.8 and \$60.4 for the three months ended March 31, 2017 and 2016. The costs charged to us by ANSAC, included in Selling, general and administrative, were \$0.6 and \$2.6 for the three months ended March 31, 2017 and 2016.

Receivables from related parties and affiliates as of March 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 are as follows:

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
NatronX Technologies LLC	\$ 0.4	\$ 0.1
ANSAC	57.0	59.9
Total	\$ 57.4	\$ 60.0

Accounts payable from related parties and affiliates were \$1.6 and \$1.3 as of March 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016, respectively. These include related party payables to ANSAC which are included within Accounts payable on the Interim Condensed Combined Balance Sheets.

Note 6: Restructuring expense

In March 2017, the Company business announced a cost improvement initiative which focused on process improvements at our Wyoming facility (the “Wyoming Restructure”). During the three months ended March 31, 2017, we recorded \$1.2 of restructuring costs related to the Wyoming Restructure, which was recorded in restructuring expense in the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations.

Note 7: Accounts Receivables, Net of Allowance for Doubtful Accounts

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
Trade receivables	\$ 71.2	\$ 73.7
Other	10.6	12.5
Allowance for doubtful accounts	(1.1)	(1.3)
Total	<u>\$ 80.7</u>	<u>\$ 84.9</u>

F-42

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)

NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 8: Inventories

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
Raw materials	\$ 2.8	\$ 3.3
Work-in-process	9.6	5.9
Finished goods, net	13.7	16.3
Materials and supplies, net	8.9	8.2
Total	<u>\$ 35.0</u>	<u>\$ 33.7</u>

Note 9: Prepaid and Other Current Assets

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
Prepaid royalty	\$ 6.9	\$ 10.1
Prepaid freight	4.0	4.7
Natural gas derivatives	0.8	3.0
Other	1.9	3.0
Total	<u>\$ 13.6</u>	<u>\$ 20.8</u>

Note 10: Property, Plant and Equipment, Net

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
Land and land improvements	\$ 65.0	\$ 64.9
Buildings	70.6	71.4
Mine and development costs	7.0	7.0
Machinery and equipment	622.9	618.9
Construction-in-progress	61.1	63.0
Total	826.6	825.2
Less: accumulated depreciation	(100.6)	(87.2)
Total	<u>\$ 726.0</u>	<u>\$ 738.0</u>

Depreciation and amortization expense related to property, plant and equipment for three months ending March 31, 2017 and 2016 was \$15.1

and \$12.5, respectively of which \$15.1 and \$12.5, respectively, was recorded in cost of goods sold in the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations.

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 11: Mineral Leaseholds

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
Mineral leaseholds	\$ 738.5	\$ 738.5
Less accumulated depletion	(10.8)	(9.3)
Total	<u>\$ 727.7</u>	<u>\$ 729.2</u>

Depletion expense related to mineral leaseholds for the three months ending March 31, 2017 and 2016 was \$1.5 and \$1.2, respectively and was recorded in cost of goods sold in the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Operations.

Note 12: Accrued Liabilities

	As of March 31, 2017	As of December 31, 2016
Employee-related costs and benefits	\$ 15.8	\$ 19.6
Taxes other than income taxes	11.2	7.6
Accrued legal and professional expense	1.0	1.8
Other	3.4	3.1
Total	<u>\$ 31.4</u>	<u>\$ 32.1</u>

Note 13: Income Taxes

Alkali recorded income tax expense of \$6.4 and \$7.1 for the three months ending March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. The effective tax rate was 40.8% and 41.3% for the three months ending March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, and was higher than the statutory rate primarily due to state income taxes and changes in valuation allowance. Each year Alkali files income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction and various state jurisdictions. These tax returns are subject to examination and possible challenge by the taxing authorities. Positions challenged by the taxing authorities may be settled or appealed by Alkali. As a result, income tax uncertainties are recognized in Alkali’s Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements in accordance with accounting for income taxes, when applicable.

Note 14: Derivative Instruments

Alkali entered into futures contracts beginning in 2016 in order to mitigate exposure from changes in market prices related to certain natural gas prices. We mitigate our exposures to currency risks and commodity price risks, through a controlled program of risk management that includes the use of derivative financial instruments.

Alkali records these future contracts in either prepaid and other assets or other current liabilities at fair value in the Interim Condensed Combined Balance Sheets and recognizes changes in the fair value of these future contracts in accumulated other comprehensive income, as these instruments have been designated as cash flow hedges.

As of March 31, 2017, we were party to futures contracts with a notional value of \$13.0, expiring in December, 2017. For the three months ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, realized gains were immaterial and

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)

NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

recorded within the Interim Condensed Combined Statement of Operations. Unrealized (losses)/gains on the future contracts amounted to (\$1.5) for the three months ending March 31, 2017 and was recorded in the Interim Condensed Combined Statements of Other Comprehensive Income. We expect to recognize this amount into earnings over the next 12 months.

The fair value of the future contracts as of March 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016 was recorded in Prepaid and other assets and is further summarized below:

Fair Value Measurement at March 31, 2017, Using:				
	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total
Asset Category:	\$	\$	\$	\$
Future Contracts	—	0.8	—	0.8
Total at fair value	\$ —	\$ 0.8	\$ —	\$ 0.8

Fair Value Measurement at December 31, 2016, Using:				
	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total
Asset Category:	\$	\$	\$	\$
Future Contracts	—	3.0	—	3.0
Total at fair value	\$ —	\$ 3.0	\$ —	\$ 3.0

Note 15: Commitments and Contingencies

Lease commitments

We lease various types of office space, manufacturing, data processing and rail transportation equipment. The gross rent expense under operating leases amounted to \$4.3 and \$4.4 for the three months ending March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

At March 31, 2017, minimum rental commitments under non-cancelable operating leases were as follows:

Remainder of 2017	\$ 11.4
2018	15.1
2019	15.1
2020	15.3
2021	15.3
Thereafter	65.8
Total	\$138.0

[Table of Contents](#)

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)

NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

Purchase commitments

The Company is party to coal supply contracts designed to mitigate volatility in the price of coal. The purchase commitments at March 31, 2017 were as follows:

Remainder of 2017	\$ 3.0
-------------------	--------

2018	4.1
2019	4.1
2020	4.1
2021	4.1
Thereafter	20.3
Total	<u>\$39.7</u>

Guarantees

Alkali together with other subsidiaries of the Parent, jointly and severally guarantee the Parent’s debt obligations, namely the UBS revolving credit facility having a maturity date no later than April 1, 2020, the Senior Notes due 2020 and the Senior Notes due 2022. The amount outstanding under these debt obligations was \$896 and \$584 at March 31, 2017.

Contingencies

We have certain contingent liabilities arising in the ordinary course of business. Some of these contingencies are known but are so preliminary that the merits cannot be determined, or if more advanced, are not deemed material based on current knowledge and some are unknown — for example, claims with respect to which we have no notice or claims which may arise in the future, resulting from products sold, guarantees or warranties made, or indemnities provided. Therefore, we are unable to develop a reasonable estimate of our potential exposure of loss for these contingencies, either individually or in the aggregate, at this time.

Based on information currently available and established reserves, we have no reason to believe that the ultimate resolution of known contingencies will have a material adverse effect on the combined financial position, liquidity or results of operations. However, there can be no assurance that the outcome of these contingencies will be favorable and adverse results in certain of these contingencies could have a material adverse effect on the combined financial position, results of operations in any one reporting period, or liquidity.

Environmental

Portions of mining operations in the Green River Basin of Wyoming are powered by natural gas which is delivered to the site via pipelines. Condensate from a natural gas pipeline, that is no longer in service, was collected in a condensate tank and “blown- down” into an unlined condensate disposal pit, a practice that was widely accepted at the time. This condensate included contaminant traces of volatile organic compounds (“VOC”) that are characterized and monitored by the indicator parameter, benzene. As a result, site investigations have confirmed that these VOCs are present in the soils and groundwater which extends from the condensate disposal pit to a down-gradient area that is bounded by a groundwater cut-off wall and pump back system. Our Parent received notification from the WyDEQ requiring a Focused Feasibility Study (“FFS”) on the technologies that can be used to remedy the soils and groundwater in contaminated areas. The estimated cost for the FFS of \$2.5 and \$2.6 was included in other long-term liabilities in the Interim Condensed Combined Balance Sheets at March 31, 2017 and December 31, 2016.

ALKALI CHEMICALS BUSINESS
(A Business of Tronox Limited)
NOTES TO INTERIM CONDENSED COMBINED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited) — (Continued)
(In millions)

Note 16: Subsequent Events

The Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements have been derived from the consolidated financial statements of the Parent, which issued its interim financial statements for the period ended March 31, 2017 on May 4, 2017 and its annual financial statements for the periods ended December 31, 2016 and 2015 on February 24, 2017. Management has evaluated subsequent events through August 2, 2017 and recognized transactions in the Interim Condensed Combined Financial Statements as appropriate. Additionally, management has evaluated transactions that occurred as of the issuance date of these financial statements or August 2, 2017 for the purpose of disclosure of unrecognized events.

On August 2, 2017, the Parent entered into a definitive agreement to sell the Company to Genesis Energy, L.P. Under the terms of the agreement, the Parent will receive \$1.325 billion in cash, subject to regulatory approval and customary closing conditions. The sale of the Company is expected to close in the second half of 2017.

Prospectus

genesisenenergy

GENESIS ENERGY, L.P.

Common Units
Preferred Securities
Subordinated Securities
Options
Warrants
Rights
Debt Securities

GENESIS ENERGY FINANCE CORPORATION

Debt Securities

We may from time to time offer one or more classes or series of the following securities as described in this prospectus, in one or more separate offerings under this prospectus:

- common units, preferred securities, subordinated securities, options, warrants and rights; and
- debt securities, which may be either senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities.

Genesis Energy Finance Corporation may act as co-issuer of the debt securities and other direct or indirect subsidiaries of Genesis Energy, L.P., other than “minor” subsidiaries as such item is interpreted in securities regulations governing financial reporting for guarantors, may guarantee the debt securities.

This prospectus provides you with the general terms of these securities and the general manner in which we will offer these securities. We may offer and sell securities using this prospectus only if it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement. We will include the specific terms of any securities we offer in a prospectus supplement. The prospectus supplement will also describe the specific manner in which we will offer the securities. You should read this prospectus and the prospectus supplement carefully.

We may sell these securities to underwriters or dealers, or we may sell them directly to other purchasers. See “Plan of Distribution.” The prospectus supplement will list any underwriters and the compensation they will receive. The prospectus supplement will also show you the total amount of money that we will receive from selling these securities, after we pay certain expenses of the offering.

Our common units are listed on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol “GEL.” We will provide information in any applicable prospectus supplement regarding the trading market, if any, for any debt securities we may offer.

Investing in our securities involves risks. Limited partnerships are inherently different from corporations. You should carefully consider the [Risk Factors](#) beginning on page 2 of this prospectus and contained in any applicable prospectus supplement and in the documents incorporated by reference herein and therein before you make an investment in our securities.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The date of this prospectus is April 6, 2015.

[Table of Contents](#)

TABLE OF CONTENTS	
ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS	1
GENESIS ENERGY, L.P.	1
RISK FACTORS	2
USE OF PROCEEDS	2
RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES	3
DESCRIPTION OF OUR EQUITY SECURITIES	4
General	4
Our Common Units	4
Our Preferred Securities	7
Our Subordinated Securities	8
Our Options	8
Our Warrants	9
Our Rights	10
CASH DISTRIBUTION POLICY	12
Distributions of Available Cash	12
Adjustment of Quarterly Distribution Amounts	12
Distributions of Cash Upon Liquidation	12
DESCRIPTION OF OUR PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENT	13
Partnership Purpose	13
Power of Attorney	13
Reimbursements of Our General Partner	13
Issuance of Additional Securities	13
Amendments to Our Partnership Agreement	13
Withdrawal or Removal of Our General Partner	14
Liquidation and Distribution of Proceeds	14
Change of Management Provisions	15
Limited Call Right	15
Indemnification	15
DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES AND GUARANTEES	16
General	16
Indentures	16
Series of Debt Securities	17
Amounts of Issuances	17
Principal Amount, Stated Maturity and Maturity	17
Specific Terms of Debt Securities	18
Governing Law	19
Form of Debt Securities	19
Redemption or Repayment	22
Mergers and Similar Transactions	23
Subordination Provisions	23
Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge	25
No Personal Liability	25
Default, Remedies and Waiver of Default	26
Modifications and Waivers	27
Special Rules for Action by Holders	29
Form, Exchange and Transfer	30
Payments	31
Guarantees	31
Paying Agents	32
Notices	33
Our Relationship With the Trustee	33
Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities	33

[Table of Contents](#)

MATERIAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES	35
Partnership Status	35
Limited Partner Status	37
Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership	38
Tax Treatment of Operations	42
Disposition of Common Units	43
Uniformity of Units	45
Tax-Exempt Organizations and Other Investors	46
Administrative Matters	47
State, Local, Foreign and Other Tax Consequences	49
INVESTMENT IN GENESIS BY EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS	50
PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION	53
INFORMATION REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS	55
LEGAL MATTERS	57
EXPERTS	57
WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION	58

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus, including any information incorporated by reference herein, is part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the Commission, using a “shelf” registration or continuous offering process. Under this shelf registration process, we may, from time to time, offer and sell any combination of the securities described in this prospectus in one or more offerings. This prospectus generally describes Genesis Energy, L.P. and the securities. Each time we sell securities with this prospectus, we will provide a prospectus supplement containing specific information about the terms of a particular offering. A prospectus supplement may also add to, update or change information in this prospectus. You should read carefully the section entitled “Information Regarding Forward-Looking Statements” beginning on page 55. If the description of the offering varies between the prospectus supplement and this prospectus, you should rely on the information in the prospectus supplement. Therefore, you should carefully read both this prospectus and any prospectus supplement, together with additional information described under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information” before you invest in our securities.

You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus, any prospectus supplement and the documents we have incorporated by reference. We have not authorized anyone else to provide you different information. We are not making an offer of these securities in any state where the offer is not permitted. We will disclose any material changes in our affairs in an amendment to this prospectus, a prospectus supplement or a future filing with the Commission incorporated by reference in this prospectus and any prospectus supplement. You should not assume that the information in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement is accurate as of any date other than the date on the front of those documents.

Unless the context otherwise requires, references in this prospectus to “Genesis Energy, L.P.,” “Genesis,” “we,” “our,” “us” or like terms refer to Genesis Energy, L.P. and its operating subsidiaries, including Genesis Energy Finance Corporation; “our general partner” refers to Genesis Energy, LLC, the general partner of Genesis; “CO2” means carbon dioxide; and “NaHS,” which is commonly pronounced as “nash,” means sodium hydrosulfide.

GENESIS ENERGY, L.P.

We are a growth-oriented master limited partnership formed in Delaware in 1996 and focused on the midstream segment of the oil and gas industry in the Gulf Coast region of the United States, primarily Texas, Louisiana, Arkansas, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Wyoming and in the Gulf of Mexico. Our common units are traded on the New York Stock Exchange under the ticker symbol “GEL.” Our principal executive offices are located at 919 Milam, Suite 2100, Houston, Texas 77002 and our telephone number is (713) 860-2500.

We provide an integrated suite of services to oil producers, refineries, and industrial and commercial enterprises. Our business activities are primarily focused on providing services around and within refinery complexes. Upstream of the refineries, we provide gathering and transportation of crude oil. Within the refineries, we provide services to assist in their sulfur balancing requirements. Downstream of refineries, we provide

transportation services as well as market outlets for their finished refined products. We have a diverse portfolio of customers, operations and assets, including pipelines, refinery-related plants, storage tanks and terminals, railcars, rail loading and unloading facilities, barges and trucks. Substantially all of our revenues are derived from providing services to integrated oil companies, large independent oil and gas or refinery companies, and large industrial and commercial enterprises.

For additional information regarding our business properties and financial condition, please refer to the documents referenced in the section entitled “Where You Can Find More Information.”

[Table of Contents](#)

RISK FACTORS

An investment in our securities involves risks. In evaluating an investment in our securities, you should consider carefully the risk factors and other information included in or incorporated by reference into this prospectus and additional information which may be incorporated by reference into this prospectus or any prospectus supplement in the future, in each case as provided under “Where You Can Find More Information,” including our Annual Report on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K, including the risk factors described under “Risk Factors” in such reports. In addition, when we offer and sell any securities pursuant to a prospectus supplement, we may include additional risk factors relevant to such securities in the prospectus supplement. This prospectus also contains forward-looking statements that involve risks and uncertainties. If any of these risks occur, our business, financial condition or results of operation could be adversely affected. Please read “Information Regarding Forward-Looking Statements.” Our actual results could differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements as a result of certain factors.

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise specified in an accompanying prospectus supplement, we will use the net proceeds we receive from the sale of the securities described in this prospectus for general partnership purposes, which may include, among other things, repayment of indebtedness, the acquisition of businesses and other capital expenditures, payment of distributions and additions to working capital. The exact amounts to be used and when the net proceeds will be applied will depend on a number of factors, including our funding requirements and the availability of alternative funding sources.

[Table of Contents](#)

RATIO OF EARNINGS TO FIXED CHARGES

The following table sets forth our ratio of earnings to fixed charges for the periods indicated:

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2014	2013	2012	2011	2010
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges	2.4	2.4	3.2	2.7	— (1)

(1) Earnings were inadequate to cover fixed charges for the year ended December 31, 2010 by \$43,640,000.

For the purpose of computing the ratio of earnings to fixed charges, earnings are comprised of income from continuing operations of consolidated subsidiaries before provision for income taxes and adjustment for non-controlling interests in consolidated subsidiaries or income or loss from equity investees, less capitalized interest, plus depreciation of capitalized interest, dividends from companies accounted for using the equity method, and fixed charges. Fixed charges are comprised of interest on long-term debt plus capitalized interest, amortization of capitalized costs related to indebtedness, and rental expense representative of an interest factor.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF OUR EQUITY SECURITIES

General

As of the date of this prospectus, we have outstanding only common units. In the future, we may issue one or more series or classes of additional common units as well as the following other types of equity securities — preferred securities, subordinated securities, options securities, warrant securities or rights securities. Those equity securities may have rights to distributions and allocations junior, equal or superior to our common units. Our general partner can determine the voting powers, designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional or other special rights, duties and qualifications, limitations or restrictions of any series or class and the number constituting any series or class of equity securities.

Our Common Units

Our common units represent limited partner interests in Genesis Energy, L.P. that entitle the holders to participate in our cash distributions and to exercise the rights or privileges available to limited partners under our partnership agreement.

Our outstanding common units are listed on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol “GEL.”

The transfer agent and registrar for our common units is American Stock Transfer & Trust Company.

Status as Limited Partner or Assignee. Except as described under “— Limited Liability,” the common units will be fully paid, and the unitholders will not be required to make additional capital contributions to us.

Transfer of Common Units. Each purchaser of common units offered by this prospectus must execute a transfer application. By executing and delivering a transfer application, the purchaser of common units:

- becomes the record holder of the common units and is an assignee until admitted into our partnership as a substituted limited partner;
- automatically requests admission as a substituted limited partner in our partnership;
- agrees to be bound by the terms and conditions of, and executes, our partnership agreement;
- represents that he has the capacity, power and authority to enter into the partnership agreement;
- grants powers of attorney to officers of our general partner and any liquidator of our partnership as specified in the partnership agreement; and
- makes the consents and waivers contained in the partnership agreement.

An assignee will become a substituted limited partner of our partnership for the transferred common units upon the consent of our general partner and the recording of the name of the assignee on our books and records. Our general partner may withhold its consent in its sole discretion.

Transfer applications may be completed, executed and delivered by a purchaser’s broker, agent or nominee. We are entitled to treat the nominee holder of a common unit as the absolute owner. In that case, the beneficial holders’ rights are limited solely to those that it has against the nominee holder as a result of any agreement between the beneficial owner and the nominee holder.

Common units are securities and are transferable according to the laws governing transfer of securities. In addition to other rights acquired, the purchaser has the right to request admission as a substituted limited partner in our partnership for the purchased common units. A purchaser of common units who does not execute and deliver a transfer application obtains only:

- the right to assign the common unit to a purchaser or transferee; and
- the right to transfer the right to seek admission as a substituted limited partner in our partnership for the purchased common units.

[Table of Contents](#)

Thus, a purchaser of common units who does not execute and deliver a transfer application:

- will not receive cash distributions or federal income tax allocations, unless the common units are held in a nominee or “street name”

account and the nominee or broker has executed and delivered a transfer application; and

- may not receive some federal income tax information or reports furnished to record holders of common units.

Until a common unit has been transferred on our books, we and the transfer agent, notwithstanding any notice to the contrary, may treat the record holder of the unit as the absolute owner for all purposes, except as otherwise required by law or stock exchange regulations.

Limited Liability. Assuming that a limited partner does not participate in the control of our business within the meaning of the Delaware Revised Uniform Limited Partnership Act, or the Delaware Act, and that he otherwise acts in conformity with the provisions of our partnership agreement, his liability under the Delaware Act will be limited, subject to possible exceptions, to the amount of capital he is obligated to contribute to us for his common units plus his share of any undistributed profits and assets. If it were determined, however, that the right or exercise of the right by the limited partners as a group:

- to remove or replace our general partner;
- to approve some amendments to our partnership agreement; or
- to take other action under our partnership agreement

constituted “participation in the control” of our business for the purposes of the Delaware Act, then the limited partners could be held personally liable for our obligations under Delaware law, to the same extent as our general partner. This liability would extend to persons who transact business with us and who reasonably believe that the limited partner is a general partner. Neither our partnership agreement nor the Delaware Act specifically provides for legal recourse against our general partner if a limited partner were to lose limited liability through any fault of our general partner. While this does not mean that a limited partner could not seek legal recourse, we have found no precedent for this type of a claim in Delaware case law.

Under the Delaware Act, a limited partnership may not make a distribution to a partner if, after the distribution, all liabilities of the limited partnership, other than liabilities to partners on account of their partnership interests and liabilities for which the recourse of creditors is limited to specific property of our partnership, exceed the fair value of the assets of the limited partnership. For the purpose of determining the fair value of the assets of a limited partnership, the Delaware Act provides that the fair value of property subject to liability for which recourse of creditors is limited shall be included in the assets of the limited partnership only to the extent that the fair value of that property exceeds the nonrecourse liability. The Delaware Act provides that a limited partner who receives a distribution and knew at the time of the distribution that the distribution was in violation of the Delaware Act shall be liable to the limited partnership for the amount of the distribution for three years. Under the Delaware Act, an assignee who becomes a substituted limited partner of a limited partnership is liable for the obligations of his assignor to make contributions to our partnership, except the assignee is not obligated for liabilities unknown to him at the time he became a limited partner and which could not be ascertained from our partnership agreement.

Meetings; Voting. Except as described below regarding a person or group owning 20% or more of any class of units then outstanding, unitholders or assignees who are record holders of units on the record date will be entitled to notice of, and to vote at, meetings of our limited partners and to act upon matters for which approvals may be solicited. Common units that are owned by an assignee who is a record holder, but who has not yet been admitted as a limited partner, will be voted by our general partner at the written direction of the record holder. Absent direction of this kind, the common units will not be voted, except that, in the case of common units held by our general partner on behalf of non-citizen assignees, our general partner will distribute the votes on those common units in the same ratios as the votes of limited partners on other units are cast.

[Table of Contents](#)

Our general partner does not anticipate that any meeting of unitholders will be called in the foreseeable future. Any action that is required or permitted to be taken by the unitholders may be taken either at a meeting of the unitholders or without a meeting if consents in writing describing the action so taken are signed by holders of the number of units as would be necessary to authorize or take that action at a meeting. Meetings of the unitholders may be called by our general partner or by unitholders owning at least 20% of the outstanding units of the class for which a meeting is proposed and which are entitled to vote thereat. Unitholders may vote either in person or by proxy at meetings. The holders of a majority of the outstanding units of the class or classes for which a meeting has been called represented in person or by proxy shall constitute a quorum unless any action by the unitholders requires approval by holders of a greater percentage of the units, in which case the quorum shall be the greater percentage.

Each record holder of a unit has a vote according to his percentage interest in our partnership, although additional limited partner interests having special voting rights could be issued. However, if at any time any person or group, other than our general partner and its affiliates, or a direct or subsequently approved transferee of our general partner or its affiliates or a person or group who acquires the units with the prior approval

of the board of directors, acquires, in the aggregate, beneficial ownership of 20% or more of any class of units then outstanding, the person or group will lose voting rights on any matter relating to the succession, election, removal, withdrawal, replacement or substitution of our general partner and will not be considered to be outstanding when sending notices of a meeting of unitholders, calculating required votes, determining the presence of a quorum or for other similar purposes *if* the matter to be voted on relates to the succession, election, removal, withdrawal, replacement or substitution of our general partner. Common units held in nominee or street name account will be voted by the broker or other nominee in accordance with the instruction of the beneficial owner unless the arrangement between the beneficial owner and his nominee provides otherwise.

Any notice, demand, request, report or proxy material required or permitted to be given or made to record holders of common units under our partnership agreement will be delivered to the record holder by us or by the transfer agent.

Books and Reports. Our general partner is required to keep appropriate books of our business at our principal office. The books will be maintained for both tax and financial reporting purposes on an accrual basis. For tax and fiscal reporting purposes, our fiscal year is the calendar year.

We will furnish or make available to record holders of common units, within 75 days after the close of each fiscal year (or such shorter period as the Commission may prescribe), an annual report containing audited financial statements and a report on those financial statements by our registered independent public accountants. Except for our fourth quarter, we will also furnish or make available unaudited financial information within 40 days after the close of each quarter (or such shorter period as the Commission may prescribe).

We will furnish each record holder of a unit with information reasonably required for tax reporting purposes within 90 days after the close of each calendar year. This information is expected to be furnished in summary form so that some complex calculations normally required of partners can be avoided. Our ability to furnish this summary information to unitholders will depend on the cooperation of unitholders in supplying us with specific information. Every unitholder will receive information to assist him in determining his federal and state tax liability and filing his federal and state income tax returns, regardless of whether he supplies us with information.

Our partnership agreement provides that a limited partner can, for a purpose reasonably related to his interest as a limited partner, upon reasonable demand and at his own expense, have furnished to him:

- a current list of the name and last known address of each partner;
- a copy of our tax returns;
- information as to the amount of cash, and a description and statement of the agreed value of any other property or services, contributed or to be contributed by each partner and the date on which each became a partner;

[Table of Contents](#)

- copies of our partnership agreement, the certificate of limited partnership of the partnership, related amendments and powers of attorney under which they have been executed;
- information regarding the status of our business and financial condition; and
- any other information regarding our affairs as is just and reasonable.

Our general partner may, and intends to, keep confidential from the limited partners trade secrets or other information the disclosure of which our general partner believes in good faith is not in our best interests or which we are required by law or by agreements with third parties to keep confidential.

Class B Units. Unless the context otherwise requires, references to common units in this prospectus refer to “Common Units — Class A” under our partnership agreement, which are traditional common units. Our partnership agreement also provides for common units designated “Common Units — Class B,” or Class B Units. The Class B Units are identical to the Class A Units and, accordingly, have voting and distribution rights equivalent to those of the Class A Units, except, in addition, Class B Units have the right to elect all of our board of directors (subject to the right of members of the Davison family, including James E. Davison, James E. Davison, Jr., Steven K. Davison and Todd A. Davison, and their affiliates to elect up to three directors under certain terms pursuant to a unitholders rights agreement). If members of the Davison family and their affiliates own (i) 15% or more of our common units, they have the right to appoint three directors, (ii) less than 15% but more than 10%, they have the right to appoint two directors, and (iii) less than 10%, they have the right to appoint one director. The Class B Units are convertible into Class A Units at the option of the holders or in the event that the holders of at least a majority of the common units (excluding such units held by affiliates of our general partner) replace the existing general partner with a successor general partner or otherwise remove Class B Units’ right to

elect our board of directors. The transfer agent for the Class B Units is our general partner.

Summary of Partnership Agreement. For a summary of the important provisions of our partnership agreement, many of which apply to holders of common units, see “Description of Our Partnership Agreement” in this prospectus.

Our Preferred Securities

Our partnership agreement authorizes us to issue an unlimited number of additional limited partner interests and other equity securities for the consideration and with the designations, rights, preferences, and privileges established by our general partner without the approval of any of our limited partners. In accordance with Delaware law and the provisions of our partnership agreement, we may issue additional partnership interests that have certain preferential rights to which our common units are not entitled, including, without limitation, preferences regarding voting and distributions. As of the date of this prospectus, we have no preferred securities outstanding.

Should we offer preferred securities under this prospectus, a prospectus supplement relating to the particular series of preferred securities offered will include the specific terms of those preferred securities, including, among other things, the following:

- the designation, stated value, and liquidation preference of the preferred securities and the number of preferred securities offered;
- the initial public offering price at which the preferred securities will be issued;
- the conversion or exchange provisions of the preferred securities;
- any redemption or sinking fund provisions of the preferred securities;
- the distribution rights of the preferred securities, if any;

Table of Contents

- a discussion of any additional material federal income tax considerations (other than as discussed in this prospectus), if any, regarding the preferred securities; and
- any additional rights, preferences, privileges, limitations, and restrictions of the preferred securities.

The transfer agent, registrar, and distributions disbursement agent for the preferred securities will be designated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Our Subordinated Securities

Our partnership agreement authorizes us to issue an unlimited number of additional limited partner interests and other equity securities for the consideration and with the designations, rights, preferences, and privileges established by our general partner without the approval of any of our limited partners. In accordance with Delaware law and the provisions of our partnership agreement, we may issue additional partnership interests that have certain rights, including, without limitation, rights regarding voting and distributions, subordinate to the rights of our common units or preferred securities. As of the date of this prospectus, we have no subordinated securities outstanding.

Should we offer subordinated securities under this prospectus, a prospectus supplement relating to the particular series of subordinated securities offered will include the specific terms of those subordinated securities, including, among other things, the following:

- the designation, stated value, and liquidation rights of the subordinated securities and the number of subordinated securities offered;
- the initial public offering price at which the subordinated securities will be issued;
- the conversion or exchange provisions of the subordinated securities;
- any redemption or sinking fund provisions of the subordinated securities;
- the distribution rights of the subordinated securities, if any;
- a discussion of any additional material federal income tax considerations (other than as discussed in this prospectus), if any, regarding the subordinated securities; and
- any additional rights, limitations, and restrictions of the subordinated securities.

The transfer agent, registrar, and distributions disbursement agent for the subordinated securities will be designated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Our Options

We may issue options for the purchase of common units, preferred securities, subordinated securities or any combination of the foregoing. Our partnership agreement authorizes us to issue an unlimited number of options to purchase common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities for the consideration and with the rights, preferences, and privileges established by our general partner without the approval of any of our limited partners. Options may be issued independently or together with other securities and may be attached to or separate from any offered securities. Each series of options will be issued under a separate option agreement to be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as option agent. The option agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the options and will not have any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders or beneficial owners of options. A copy of the option agreement will be filed with the Commission in connection with the offering of options.

[Table of Contents](#)

The prospectus supplement relating to a particular issue of options to purchase common units, preferred securities, subordinated securities or any combination of the foregoing will describe the terms of such options, including, among other things, the following:

- the title of the options;
- the offering price for the options, if any;
- the aggregate number of the options;
- the designation and terms of the common units, preferred securities, or subordinated securities that maybe purchased upon exercise of the options;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities that the options are issued with and the number of options issued with each security;
- if applicable, the date from and after which the options and any securities issued with the options will be separately transferable;
- the number of common units, preferred securities, or subordinated securities that may be purchased upon exercise of the options and the price at which such securities may be purchased upon exercise;
- the dates on which the right to exercise the options commence and expire;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of the options that may be exercised at any one time;
- the currency or currency units in which the offering price, if any, and the exercise price are payable;
- if applicable, a discussion of material federal income tax considerations;
- anti-dilution provisions of the options, if any;
- redemption or call provisions, if any, applicable to the options;
- any additional terms of the options, including terms, procedures, and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the options; and
- any other information we think is important about the options.

Each option will entitle the holder of the option to purchase at the exercise price set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement the number of common units, preferred securities, or subordinated securities being offered. Holders may exercise options at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised options are void. Holders may exercise options as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the options being offered.

Until you exercise your options to purchase our common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities, you will not have any rights as a holder of common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities, as the case may be, by virtue of your ownership of options.

Our Warrants

We may issue warrants for the purchase of common units, preferred securities, subordinated securities or any combination of the foregoing. Our partnership agreement authorizes us to issue an unlimited number of warrants to purchase common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities for the consideration and with the rights, preferences, and privileges established by our general partner without the approval of any of our limited partners. Warrants may be issued independently or together with other securities and may be attached to or separate from any offered securities. Each series of warrants will be issued under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not have any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders or beneficial owners of warrants. A copy of the warrant agreement will be filed with the Commission in connection with the offering of warrants.

[Table of Contents](#)

The prospectus supplement relating to a particular issue of warrants to purchase common units, preferred securities, subordinated securities or any combination of the foregoing will describe the terms of such warrants, including, among other things, the following:

- the title of the warrants;
- the offering price for the warrants, if any;
- the aggregate number of the warrants;
- the designation and terms of the common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities that maybe purchased upon exercise of the warrants;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities that the warrants are issued with and the number of warrants issued with each security;
- if applicable, the date from and after which the warrants and any securities issued with the warrants will be separately transferable;
- the number of common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities that may be purchased upon exercise of a warrant and the price at which such securities may be purchased upon exercise;
- the dates on which the right to exercise the warrants commence and expire;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of the warrants that may be exercised at any one time;
- the currency or currency units in which the offering price, if any, and the exercise price are payable;
- if applicable, a discussion of material federal income tax considerations;
- anti-dilution provisions of the warrants, if any;
- redemption or call provisions, if any, applicable to the warrants;
- any additional terms of the warrants, including terms, procedures, and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the warrants; and
- any other information we think is important about the warrants.

Each warrant will entitle the holder of the warrant to purchase the number of common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities being offered at the exercise price set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. Holders may exercise warrants at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants are void. Holders may exercise warrants as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants being offered.

Until you exercise your warrants to purchase our common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities, you will not have any rights as a holder of common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities, as the case may be, by virtue of your ownership of warrants.

Our Rights

We may issue rights to purchase common units, preferred securities, subordinated securities or any combination of the foregoing. Our partnership agreement authorizes us to issue an unlimited number of rights to purchase common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities for the consideration and with the rights, preferences, and privileges established by our general partner without the approval of any of our limited partners. These rights may be issued independently or together with any other security offered hereby and may or may not be transferable

by the holder receiving the rights in such offering. In connection with any offering of such rights, we may enter into a standby arrangement with one or more underwriters or other purchasers pursuant to which the underwriters or other purchasers may be required to purchase any securities remaining unsubscribed for after such offering.

[Table of Contents](#)

Each series of rights will be issued under a separate rights agreement, which we will enter into with a bank or trust company, as rights agent, all as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. The rights agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the certificates relating to the rights and will not assume any obligation or relationship of agency or trust with any holders of rights certificates or beneficial owners of rights. We will file the rights agreement and the rights certificates relating to each series of rights with the Commission, and incorporate them by reference as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part on or before the time we issue a series of rights.

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the specific terms of any offering of rights for which this prospectus is being delivered, including, among other things, the following:

- the date of determining the unitholders entitled to the rights distribution;
- the number of rights issued or to be issued to each unitholder;
- the exercise price payable for each common unit, preferred security or subordinated security upon the exercise of the rights;
- the number and terms of the common units, preferred securities or subordinated securities, which may be purchased per each right;
- the extent to which the rights are transferable;
- the date on which the holder’s ability to exercise the rights shall commence, and the date on which the rights shall expire;
- the extent to which the rights may include an over-subscription privilege with respect to unsubscribed securities;
- if applicable, the material terms of any standby underwriting or purchase arrangement entered into by us in connection with the offering of such rights;
- any other terms of the rights, including the terms, procedures, conditions, and limitations relating to the exchange and exercise of the rights; and
- any other information we think is important about the rights.

The description in the applicable prospectus supplement of any rights that we may offer will not necessarily be complete and will be qualified in its entirety by reference to the applicable rights agreement and rights certificate, which will be filed with the Commission.

[Table of Contents](#)

CASH DISTRIBUTION POLICY

Distributions of Available Cash

General. Within approximately 45 days after the end of each quarter, Genesis Energy, L.P. will distribute all available cash to unitholders of record on the applicable record date. However, there is no guarantee that we will pay a distribution on our units in any quarter, and we will be prohibited from making any distributions to unitholders if it would cause an event of default, or if an event of default then exists, under our credit facility.

Definition of Available Cash. Available cash generally means, for each fiscal quarter, all cash on hand at the end of the quarter:

- less the amount of cash reserves that our general partner determines in its reasonable discretion is necessary or appropriate to:
 - provide for the proper conduct of our business;
 - comply with applicable law, any of our debt instruments, or other agreements; or

- provide funds for distributions to our unitholders for any one or more of the next four quarters;
- plus all cash on hand on the date of determination of available cash for the quarter resulting from working capital borrowings. Working capital borrowings are generally borrowings that are made under our credit facility and in all cases are used solely for working capital purposes or to pay distributions to partners.

Adjustment of Quarterly Distribution Amounts

If we combine our units into fewer units or subdivide our units into a greater number of units, we will proportionately adjust the amount of our quarterly distribution.

For example, if a two-for-one split of the common units should occur, the quarterly distribution and the unrecovered initial unit price would each be reduced to 50% of its initial level. We will not make any adjustment by reason of the issuance of additional units for cash or property.

Distributions of Cash Upon Liquidation

If we dissolve in accordance with our partnership agreement, we will sell or otherwise dispose of our assets in a process called a liquidation. We will first apply the proceeds of liquidation to the payment of our creditors. We will distribute any remaining proceeds to the unitholders, in accordance with their capital account balances, as adjusted to reflect any gain or loss upon the sale or other disposition of our assets in liquidation.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF OUR PARTNERSHIP AGREEMENT

The following is a summary of the material provisions of our partnership agreement. Our partnership agreement has been filed with the Commission, and is incorporated by reference in this prospectus. The following provisions of our partnership agreement are summarized elsewhere in this prospectus:

- allocations of taxable income and other tax matters are described under “Material Income Tax Consequences”; and
- rights of holders of common units are described under “Description of Our Equity Securities — Our Common Units.”

Partnership Purpose

Our purpose under our partnership agreement is to engage directly or indirectly in any business activity that is approved by our general partner and that may be lawfully conducted by a limited partnership under the Delaware Act. All of our operations are conducted through our subsidiaries and joint ventures.

Power of Attorney

Each limited partner, and each person who acquires a unit from a unitholder and executes and delivers a transfer application, grants to our general partner and, if appointed, a liquidator, a power of attorney to, among other things, execute and file documents required for our qualification, continuance or dissolution. The power of attorney also grants our general partner the authority to amend, and to make consents and waivers under, our partnership agreement.

Reimbursements of Our General Partner

Our general partner does not receive any compensation for its services as our general partner. It is, however, entitled to be reimbursed for all of its costs incurred in managing and operating our business. Our partnership agreement provides that our general partner will determine the expenses that are allocable to us in any reasonable manner determined by our general partner in its sole discretion.

Issuance of Additional Securities

Our partnership agreement authorizes us to issue an unlimited number of additional partner securities and rights to buy partnership securities that are equal in rank with or junior to our common units on terms and conditions established by our general partner in its sole discretion without the approval of the unitholders.

It is possible that we will fund acquisitions through the issuance of additional common units or other equity securities. Holders of any

additional common units we issue will be entitled to share equally with the then-existing holders of common units in our distributions of available cash. In addition, the issuance of additional equity securities may dilute the value of the interests of the then-existing holders of common units in our net assets.

In accordance with Delaware law and the provisions of our partnership agreement, we may also issue additional equity securities that, in the sole discretion of our general partner, may have special voting rights to which common units are not entitled.

Amendments to Our Partnership Agreement

Amendments to our partnership agreement may be proposed only by or with the consent of our general partner. Any amendment that materially and adversely affects the rights or preferences of any type or class of

[Table of Contents](#)

limited partner interests in relation to other types or classes of limited partner interests or our general partner interest will require the approval of at least a majority of the type or class of limited partner interests or general partner interests so affected.

However, in some circumstances, more particularly described in our partnership agreement, our general partner may make amendments to our partnership agreement without the approval of our limited partners or assignees.

Withdrawal or Removal of Our General Partner

Our general partner may withdraw as general partner without first obtaining approval of any unitholder by giving 90 days’ written notice, and that withdrawal will not constitute a violation of our partnership agreement.

Upon the voluntary withdrawal of our general partner, the holders of a majority of our outstanding common units may elect a successor to the withdrawing general partner. If a successor is not elected, or is elected but an opinion of counsel regarding limited liability and tax matters cannot be obtained, we will be dissolved, wound up and liquidated, unless within 180 days after that withdrawal, the holders of a majority of our outstanding common units agree in writing to continue our business and to appoint a successor general partner.

Our general partner may be removed with or without cause. “Cause” means that a court of competent jurisdiction has entered a final, non-appealable judgment finding our general partner liable for actual fraud, gross negligence or willful or wanton misconduct in its capacity as our general partner. If cause exists, our general partner may not be removed unless that removal is approved by the vote of the holders of not less than two-thirds of our outstanding units, including units held by our general partner and its affiliates. The removal of our general partner for cause is also subject to the approval of a successor general partner by a vote of the holders of not less than two-thirds of our outstanding units, including units held by our general partner and its affiliates. If no cause exists, our general partner may not be removed unless that removal is approved by the vote of the holders of not less than a majority of our outstanding units, excluding units held by our general partner and its affiliates. Any removal of our general partner by the unitholders without cause is also subject to the approval of a successor general partner by the vote of the holders of a majority of our outstanding common units and the receipt of an opinion of counsel regarding limited liability and tax matters. Additionally, upon removal of our general partner without cause, our general partner will have the option to convert its interest in us (other than its common units) into common units or to require our replacement general partner to purchase such interest for cash at its then fair market value.

While our partnership agreement limits the ability of our general partner to withdraw, it allows our general partner interest to be transferred to an affiliate or to a third party in conjunction with a merger or sale of all or substantially all of the assets of our general partner. In addition, our partnership agreement does not prohibit the sale, in whole or in part, of the ownership of our general partner. Our general partner may also transfer, in whole or in part, the common units and any other partnership securities it owns.

Liquidation and Distribution of Proceeds

Upon our dissolution, unless we are reconstituted and continued as a new limited partnership, the person authorized to wind up our affairs (the liquidator) will, acting with all the powers of our general partner that the liquidator deems necessary or desirable in its judgment, liquidate our assets. The proceeds of the liquidation will be applied as follows:

- *first*, towards the payment of all of our creditors; and
- *then*, to our unitholders in accordance with the positive balance in their respective capital accounts.

The liquidator may defer liquidation of our assets for a reasonable period or distribute assets to our partners in kind if it determines that a sale would be impractical or would cause undue loss to our partners.

[Table of Contents](#)

Change of Management Provisions

Our partnership agreement contains the following specific provisions that are intended to discourage a person or group from attempting to remove our general partner or otherwise change management:

- any units held by a person that owns 20% or more of any class of units then outstanding, other than our general partner and its affiliates, cannot be voted on any matters pertaining to the succession, election, removal, withdrawal, replacement or substitution of our general partner; and
- the partnership agreement contains provisions limiting the ability of unitholders to call meetings or to acquire information about our operations, as well as other provisions limiting the unitholders’ ability to influence the manner or direction of management.

Limited Call Right

If at any time our general partner, Genesis and their respective subsidiaries own more than 80% of the issued and outstanding limited partner interests of any class, our general partner will have the right to acquire all, but not less than all, of the outstanding limited partner interests of that class that are held by persons other than our general partner, Genesis and their respective subsidiaries. The record date for determining ownership of the limited partner interests would be selected by our general partner on at least ten but not more than 60 days notice. The purchase price in the event of a purchase under these provisions would be the greater of (1) the current market price (as defined in our partnership agreement) of the limited partner interests of the class as of the date three days prior to the date that notice is mailed to the limited partners as provided in the partnership agreement and (2) the highest cash price paid by our general partner, Genesis or any of their respective subsidiaries for any partnership securities of the class purchased within the 90 days preceding the date our general partner first mails notice of its election to purchase those partnership securities.

Indemnification

Under our partnership agreement, in most circumstances, we will indemnify persons who are or were our general partner, or its members or other affiliates and their officers and directors to the fullest extent permitted by law, from and against all losses, claims or damages any of them may suffer because they are or were our general partner, officer or director, as long as the person seeking indemnity acted in good faith and in a manner believed to be in or not opposed to our best interest. Any indemnification under these provisions will only be out of our assets. Our general partner and its affiliates shall not be personally liable for, or have any obligation to contribute or loan funds or assets to us to enable us to effectuate any indemnification. We are authorized to purchase insurance against liabilities asserted against and expenses incurred by persons for our activities, regardless of whether we would have the power to indemnify the person against liabilities under our partnership agreement. In addition, we typically enter into indemnification agreements with each director of our general partner covering any costs, claims or expenses such director incurs in connection with serving in her/his capacity as a director or any other capacity at the request of our general partner or us.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES AND GUARANTEES

General

Genesis Energy, L.P. may issue debt securities in one or more series, as to any of which Genesis Energy Finance Corporation (“Finance Corp.”) may be a co-issuer on one or more series of such debt securities. Finance Corp. was incorporated under the laws of the State of Delaware in November 2006, is wholly owned by Genesis Energy, L.P., and has no material assets or any liabilities other than as a co-issuer of debt securities. When used in this section, references to “we,” “us” and “our” refer to Genesis Energy, L.P. and, if Finance Corp. is co-issuer as to any series of debt securities, Genesis Energy Finance Corporation.

We may issue senior or subordinated debt securities. Neither the senior debt securities nor the subordinated debt securities will be secured by any of our property or assets. Thus, by owning a debt security, you are one of our unsecured creditors.

The senior debt securities will constitute part of our senior debt, will be issued under our senior debt indenture described below and will rank equally with all of our other unsecured and unsubordinated debt.

The subordinated debt securities will constitute part of our subordinated debt, will be issued under our subordinated debt indenture described below and will be subordinate in right of payment to all of our “senior debt,” as defined in the indenture with respect to subordinated debt securities. The prospectus supplement for any series of subordinated debt securities or the information incorporated in this prospectus by reference will indicate the approximate amount of senior debt outstanding as of the end of our most recent fiscal quarter. Neither indenture limits our ability to incur additional senior debt or other indebtedness.

When we refer to “debt securities” in this prospectus, we mean both the senior debt securities and the subordinated debt securities.

The debt securities may have the benefit of guarantees (each, a “guarantee”) by one or more existing or future subsidiaries of Genesis Energy, L.P. (each, a “guarantor”) specified in the prospectus supplement for that series. If a guarantor issues guarantees, the guarantees will be the unsecured and, if guaranteeing senior debt securities, unsubordinated or, if guaranteeing subordinated debt securities, subordinated obligations of the respective guarantors. Unless otherwise expressly stated or the context otherwise requires, as used in this section, the term “guaranteed debt securities” means debt securities that, as described in the prospectus supplement relating thereto, are guaranteed by one or more guarantors pursuant to the applicable indenture.

The debt indentures and their associated documents, including your debt security, contain the full legal text of the matters described in this section and your prospectus supplement. We have filed forms of the indentures with the Commission as exhibits to our registration statement, of which this prospectus is a part. See “Where You Can Find More Information” below for information on how to obtain copies of them.

This section and your prospectus supplement summarize material terms of the indentures and your debt security. They do not, however, describe every aspect of the indentures and your debt security. For example, in this section and your prospectus supplement, we use terms that have been given special meaning in the indentures, but we describe the meaning for only the more important of those terms. Your prospectus supplement will have a more detailed description of the specific terms of your debt security and any applicable guarantees.

Indentures

The senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities are each governed by a document each called an indenture. Each indenture is a contract between us and U.S. Bank National Association. The indentures are substantially identical, except for certain provisions including those relating to subordination, which are included only in the indenture related to subordinated debt securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

The trustee under each indenture has two main roles:

- First, the trustee can enforce your rights against us if we default. There are some limitations on the extent to which the trustee acts on your behalf, which we describe later under “— Default, Remedies and Waiver of Default.”
- Second, the trustee performs administrative duties for us, such as sending you interest payments and notices.

When we refer to the indenture or the trustee with respect to any debt securities, we mean the indenture under which those debt securities are issued and the trustee under that indenture.

Series of Debt Securities

We may issue as many distinct debt securities or series of debt securities under either indenture as we wish. This section summarizes terms of the securities that apply generally to all debt securities and series of debt securities. The provisions of each indenture allow us not only to issue debt securities with terms different from those of debt securities previously issued under that indenture, but also to “reopen” a previously issued series of debt securities and issue additional debt securities of that series. We will describe most of the financial and other specific terms of your series, whether it be a series of the senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities, in the prospectus supplement for that series. Those terms may vary from the terms described herein.

As you read this section, please remember that the specific terms of your debt security as described in your prospectus supplement will supplement and, if applicable, may modify or replace the general terms described in this section. If there are any differences between your

prospectus supplement and this prospectus, your prospectus supplement will control. Thus, the statements we make in this section may not apply to your debt security.

When we refer to “debt securities” or a “series of debt securities,” we mean, respectively, debt securities or a series of debt securities issued under the applicable indenture. When we refer to your prospectus supplement, we mean the prospectus supplement describing the specific terms of the debt security you purchase. The terms used in your prospectus supplement will have the meanings described in this prospectus, unless otherwise specified.

Amounts of Issuances

Neither indenture limits the aggregate amount of debt securities that we may issue or the number of series or the aggregate amount of any particular series. We may issue debt securities and other securities at any time without your consent and without notifying you.

The indentures and the debt securities do not limit our ability to incur other indebtedness or to issue other securities. Also, unless otherwise specified below or in your prospectus supplement, we are not subject to financial or similar restrictions by the terms of the debt securities.

Principal Amount, Stated Maturity and Maturity

Unless otherwise stated, the principal amount of a debt security means the principal amount payable at its stated maturity, unless that amount is not determinable, in which case the principal amount of a debt security is its face amount.

The term “stated maturity” with respect to any debt security means the fixed date stated in such debt security on which the principal amount of such debt security is scheduled to become due. The principal may become due sooner, by reason of redemption or acceleration after a default or otherwise in accordance with the terms of the debt security. The day on which the principal actually becomes due, whether at the stated maturity or earlier, is called the “maturity” of the principal.

[Table of Contents](#)

We also use the terms “stated maturity” and “maturity” to refer to the days when other payments become due. For example, we may refer to a regular interest payment date when an installment of interest is scheduled to become due as the “stated maturity” of that installment. When we refer to the “stated maturity” or the “maturity” of a debt security without specifying a particular payment, we mean the stated maturity or maturity, as the case may be, of the principal.

Specific Terms of Debt Securities

Your prospectus supplement will describe the specific terms of your debt security, which will include some or all of the following:

- whether Finance Corp. will be a co-issuer of your debt security;
- the title of the series of your debt security and whether it is a senior debt security or a subordinated debt security;
- any limit on the total principal amount of the debt securities of the same series;
- the stated maturity;
- the currency or currencies for principal and interest, if not United States, or U.S., dollars;
- the price at which we originally issue your debt security, expressed as a percentage of the principal amount, and the original issue date;
- whether your debt security is a fixed rate debt security, a floating rate debt security or an indexed debt security;
- if your debt security is a fixed rate debt security, the yearly rate at which your debt security will bear interest, if any, and the interest payment dates;
- if your debt security is a floating rate debt security, the interest rate basis; any applicable index currency or index maturity, spread or spread multiplier or initial base rate, maximum rate or minimum rate; the interest reset, determination, calculation and payment dates; the day count convention used to calculate interest payments for any period; the business day convention; and the calculation agent;
- if your debt security is an indexed debt security, the principal amount, if any, we will pay you at maturity, interest payment dates, the amount of interest, if any, we will pay you on an interest payment date or the formula we will use to calculate these amounts, if any,

and the terms on which your debt security will be exchangeable for or payable in cash, securities or other property;

- if your debt security may be converted into or exercised or exchanged for common units, preferred securities or other securities of Genesis Energy, L.P. or debt or equity securities of one or more third parties, the terms on which conversion, exercise or exchange may occur, including whether conversion, exercise or exchange is mandatory, at the option of the holder or at our option, the period during which conversion, exercise or exchange may occur, the initial conversion, exercise or exchange price or rate and the circumstances or manner in which the amount of common or preferred securities or other securities issuable upon conversion, exercise or exchange may be adjusted;
- if your debt security is also an original issue discount debt security, the yield to maturity;
- if applicable, the circumstances under which your debt security may be redeemed at our option or repaid at the holder's option before the stated maturity, including any redemption commencement date, repayment date(s), redemption price(s) and redemption period(s);
- the authorized denominations, if other than \$2,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000;
- the depository for your debt security, if other than The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), and any circumstances under which the holder may request securities in non-global form, if we choose not to issue your debt security in book-entry form only;

[Table of Contents](#)

- if applicable, the circumstances under which we will pay additional amounts on any debt securities held by a person who is not a U.S. person for tax purposes and under which we can redeem the debt securities if we have to pay additional amounts;
- whether your debt security will be guaranteed by any guarantors and, if so, the identity of the guarantors and, to the extent the terms thereof differ from those described in this prospectus, a description of the terms of the guarantees;
- the names and duties of any co-trustees, depositaries, authenticating agents, paying agents, transfer agents or registrars for your debt security, as applicable; and
- any other terms of your debt security and any guarantees of your debt security, which could be different from those described in this prospectus.

Governing Law

The indentures and the debt securities (and any guarantees thereof) will be governed by New York law.

Form of Debt Securities

We will issue each debt security only in registered form, without coupons, unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement. In addition, we will issue each debt security in global — i.e., book-entry — form only, unless we specify otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement. Debt securities in book-entry form will be represented by a global security registered in the name of a depository, which will be the holder of all the debt securities represented by the global security. Those who own beneficial interests in a global debt security will do so through participants in the depository's securities clearance system, and the rights of these indirect owners will be governed solely by the applicable procedures of the depository and its participants. References to "holders" in this section mean those who own debt securities registered in their own names, on the books that we or the trustee maintain for this purpose, and not those who own beneficial interests in debt securities registered in street name or in debt securities issued in book-entry form through one or more depositaries.

Unless otherwise indicated in the prospectus supplement, the following is a summary of the depository arrangements applicable to debt securities issued in global form and for which DTC acts as depository.

Each global debt security will be deposited with, or on behalf of, DTC, as depository, or its nominee, and registered in the name of a nominee of DTC. Except under the limited circumstances described below, global debt securities are not exchangeable for definitive certificated debt securities.

Ownership of beneficial interests in a global debt security is limited to institutions that have accounts with DTC or its nominee, or persons that may hold interests through those participants. In addition, ownership of beneficial interests by participants in a global debt security will be evidenced only by, and the transfer of that ownership interest will be effected only through, records maintained by DTC or its nominee for a global debt security. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global debt security by persons that hold those interests through participants will be evidenced only by, and the transfer of that ownership interest within that participant will be effected only through, records maintained by that participant.

DTC has no knowledge of the actual beneficial owners of the debt securities. Beneficial owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase, but beneficial owners are expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the participants through which the beneficial owners entered the transaction. The laws of some jurisdictions require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of securities they purchase in definitive form. These laws may impair your ability to transfer beneficial interests in a global debt security.

[Table of Contents](#)

We will make payment of principal of, and interest on, debt securities represented by a global debt security registered in the name of or held by DTC or its nominee to DTC or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner and holder of the global debt security representing those debt securities. DTC has advised us that upon receipt of any payment of principal of, or interest on, a global debt security, DTC immediately will credit accounts of participants on its book-entry registration and transfer system with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective interests in the principal amount of that global debt security, as shown in the records of DTC. Payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in a global debt security held through those participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in “street name,” and will be the sole responsibility of those participants, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements that may be in effect from time to time.

Neither we, any trustee nor any of our respective agents will be responsible for any aspect of the records of DTC, any nominee or any participant relating to, or payments made on account of, beneficial interests in a permanent global debt security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any of the records of DTC, any nominee or any participant relating to such beneficial interests.

A global debt security is exchangeable for definitive debt securities registered in the name of, and a transfer of a global debt security may be registered to, any person other than DTC or its nominee, only if:

- DTC notifies us that it is unwilling or unable to continue as depositary for that global security or has ceased to be a registered clearing agency and we do not appoint another institution to act as depositary within 90 days; or
- we notify the trustee that we wish to terminate that global security.

Any global debt security that is exchangeable pursuant to the preceding sentence will be exchangeable in whole for definitive debt securities in registered form, of like tenor and of an equal aggregate principal amount as the global debt security, in denominations specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if other than \$2,000 and multiples of \$1,000. The definitive debt securities will be registered by the registrar in the name or names instructed by DTC. We expect that these instructions may be based upon directions received by DTC from its participants with respect to ownership of beneficial interests in the global debt security.

Except as provided above, owners of the beneficial interests in a global debt security will not be entitled to receive physical delivery of debt securities in definitive form and will not be considered the holders of debt securities for any purpose under the indentures. No global debt security shall be exchangeable except for another global debt security of like denomination and tenor to be registered in the name of DTC or its nominee. Accordingly, each person owning a beneficial interest in a global debt security must rely on the procedures of DTC and, if that person is not a participant, on the procedures of the participant through which that person owns its interest, to exercise any rights of a holder under the global debt security or the indentures.

We understand that, under existing industry practices, in the event that we request any action of holders, or an owner of a beneficial interest in a global debt security desires to give or take any action that a holder is entitled to give or take under the debt securities or the indentures, DTC would authorize the participants holding the relevant beneficial interests to give or take that action. Additionally, those participants would authorize beneficial owners owning through those participants to give or take that action or would otherwise act upon the instructions of beneficial owners owning through them.

DTC has advised us that it is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the laws of the State of New York, a “banking organization” within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a “clearing corporation” within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a “clearing agency” registered under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). DTC was created to hold securities of its participants and to facilitate the clearance and settlement of transactions

[Table of Contents](#)

among its participants in securities through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of the participants. By doing so, DTC eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. DTC’s participants include securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is owned by a number of its participants and by the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., NYSE Amex Equities. Access to DTC’s book-entry system is also available to others, such as banks, brokers, dealers, and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a participant, either directly or indirectly. The rules applicable to DTC and its participants are on file with the Commission.

Investors may hold interests in the debt securities outside the U.S. through the Euroclear System (“Euroclear”) or Clearstream Banking (“Clearstream”) if they are participants in those systems, or indirectly through organizations which are participants in those systems. Euroclear and Clearstream will hold interests on behalf of their participants through customers’ securities accounts in Euroclear’s and Clearstream’s names on the books of their respective depositaries, which in turn will hold such interests in customers’ securities accounts in the depositaries’ names on the books of DTC.

Euroclear advises that it was created in 1968 to hold securities for participants of Euroclear (“Euroclear Participants”) and to clear and settle transactions between Euroclear Participants through simultaneous electronic book-entry delivery against payment, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates and any risk from lack of simultaneous transfers of securities and cash. Euroclear includes various other services, including securities lending and borrowing and interfaces with domestic markets in several countries. Euroclear is operated by the Euroclear S.A./N.V. (the “Euroclear Operator”), under contract with Euroclear Clearance Systems S.C., a Belgian cooperative corporation (the “Cooperative”). All operations are conducted by the Euroclear Operator, and all Euroclear securities clearance accounts and Euroclear cash accounts are accounts with the Euroclear Operator, not the Cooperative. The Cooperative establishes policy for Euroclear on behalf of Euroclear Participants. Euroclear Participants include banks (including central banks), securities brokers and dealers, and other professional financial intermediaries and may include any agents. Indirect access to Euroclear is also available to other firms that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Euroclear Participant, either directly or indirectly.

Securities clearance accounts and cash accounts with the Euroclear Operator are governed by the Terms and Conditions Governing Use of Euroclear, the related Operating Procedures of the Euroclear System, and applicable Belgian law (collectively, the “Terms and Conditions”). The Terms and Conditions govern transfers of securities and cash within Euroclear, withdrawals of securities and cash within Euroclear, withdrawals of securities and cash from Euroclear, and receipts of payments with respect to securities in Euroclear. All securities in Euroclear are held on a fungible basis without attribution of specific certificates to specific securities clearance accounts. The Euroclear Operator acts under the Terms and Conditions only on behalf of Euroclear Participants and has no record of or relationship with persons holding through Euroclear Participants.

Distributions with respect to debt securities held beneficially through Euroclear will be credited to the cash accounts of Euroclear Participants in accordance with the Terms and Conditions, to the extent received by the U.S. depositary for Euroclear.

Clearstream advises that it is incorporated under the laws of Luxembourg as a professional depositary. Clearstream holds securities for its participating organizations (“Clearstream Participants”) and facilitates the clearance and settlement of securities transactions between Clearstream Participants through electronic book-entry changes in accounts of Clearstream Participants, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of certificates. Clearstream provides to Clearstream Participants, among other things, services for safekeeping, administration, clearance, and settlement of internationally traded securities and securities lending and borrowing. Clearstream interfaces with domestic markets in several countries. As a professional depositary, Clearstream is subject to regulation by the Luxembourg Monetary Institute. Clearstream Participants are recognized financial institutions around the world, including agents, securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust

[Table of Contents](#)

companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations and may include any agents. Indirect access to Clearstream is also available to others, such as banks, brokers, dealers, and trust companies that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Clearstream Participant either directly or indirectly.

Distributions with respect to debt securities held beneficially through Clearstream will be credited to cash accounts of Clearstream Participants in accordance with its rules and procedures, to the extent received by the U.S. depositary for Clearstream.

We have provided the descriptions herein of the operations and procedures of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream solely as a matter of convenience. These operations and procedures are solely within the control of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream and are subject to change by them from time to time. We believe that the sources from which the information in this section and elsewhere in this prospectus concerning DTC, Euroclear, the Euroclear Operator, the Cooperative, Euroclear’s system, Clearstream and Clearstream’s system has been obtained are reliable, but neither we, any underwriters nor the trustee takes any responsibility for the accuracy of the information.

Initial settlement for the securities will be made in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading between DTC participants will occur in the ordinary way in accordance with DTC’s rules and will be settled in immediately available funds. Secondary market trading between Euroclear Participants and/or Clearstream Participants will occur in the ordinary way in accordance with the applicable rules and operating procedures of Euroclear and Clearstream, as applicable, and will be settled using the procedures applicable to conventional eurobonds in immediately available funds.

Cross-market transfers between persons holding directly or indirectly through DTC, on the one hand, and directly or indirectly through Euroclear Participants or Clearstream Participants, on the other, will be effected in DTC in accordance with DTC rules on behalf of the relevant European international clearing system by its U.S. depositary; however, such cross-market transactions will require delivery of instructions to the relevant European international clearing system by the counterparty in such system in accordance with its rules and procedures and within its established deadlines (European time). The relevant European international clearing system will, if the transaction meets its settlement requirements, deliver instructions to its U.S. depositary to take action to effect final settlement on its behalf by delivering or receiving securities in DTC, and making or receiving payment in accordance with normal procedures for same-day funds settlement applicable to DTC. Euroclear Participants and Clearstream Participants may not deliver instructions directly to their respective U.S. depositaries.

Because of time-zone differences, credits of securities received in Euroclear or Clearstream as a result of a transaction with a DTC participant will be made during subsequent securities settlement processing and dated the business day following the DTC settlement date. Credits or any transactions in securities settled during this processing will be reported to the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream Participants on that following business day. Cash received in Euroclear or Clearstream as a result of sales of debt securities by or through a Euroclear Participant or a Clearstream Participant to a DTC participant will be received with value on the DTC settlement date but will be available in the relevant Euroclear or Clearstream cash account only as of the business day following settlement in DTC.

Although DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream have agreed to the foregoing procedures to facilitate transfers of securities among participants of DTC, Euroclear and Clearstream, they are under no obligation to perform or continue to perform these procedures and these procedures may be discontinued at any time.

Redemption or Repayment

If there are any provisions regarding redemption or repayment applicable to your debt security, we will describe them in your prospectus supplement.

[Table of Contents](#)

We or our affiliates may purchase debt securities from investors who are willing to sell from time to time, either in the open market at prevailing prices or in private transactions at negotiated prices. Debt securities that we or they purchase may, at our discretion, be held, resold or canceled.

Mergers and Similar Transactions

Each of Genesis Energy, L.P. and Finance Corp. (each, an “issuer”) is generally permitted under the indenture for the relevant series to merge or consolidate with another corporation or other entity. Each issuer is also permitted under the indenture for the relevant series to sell all or substantially all of its assets to another corporation or other entity. With regard to any series of debt securities, however, no issuer may take any of these actions unless all the following conditions, among other things, are met:

- If the successor entity in the transaction is not such issuer, (a) the successor entity must be organized as a corporation, limited liability company, partnership or trust, and must expressly assume such issuer’s obligations under the debt securities of that series and the indenture with respect to that series and (b) if Finance Corp. initially was a co-issuer as to that series, immediately after such transaction, an issuer as to that series must be a corporation. The successor entity may be organized under the laws of the U.S., any state thereof or the District of Columbia.
- Immediately after the transaction, no default under the debt securities of that series has occurred and is continuing. For this purpose, “default under the debt securities of that series” means an event of default with respect to that series or any event that would be an event of default with respect to that series if the requirements for giving us default notice and for our default having to continue for a specific period of time were disregarded. We describe these matters below under “— Default, Remedies and Waiver of Default.”
- Such issuer has delivered to the trustee an officers’ certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or lease and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental

indenture comply with this covenant and that all conditions precedent in the indenture provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

If the conditions described above are satisfied with respect to the debt securities of any series, an issuer will not need to obtain the approval of the holders of those debt securities in order to merge or consolidate or to sell its assets. Also, these conditions will apply only if an issuer wishes to merge or consolidate with another entity or sell all or substantially all of our assets to another entity. We will not need to satisfy these conditions if we enter into other types of transactions, including any transaction in which we acquire the stock or assets of another entity, any transaction that involves a change of control of us but in which we do not merge or consolidate and any transaction in which we sell less than substantially all our assets.

The successor entity will be substituted for an issuer of the debt securities of any series and under the indenture with the same effect as if it had been an original party to the indenture, and, except in the case of a lease, such issuer will be relieved from any further obligations and covenants under the indenture.

Subordination Provisions

Holders of subordinated debt securities should recognize that contractual provisions in the subordinated debt indenture may prohibit us from making payments on those securities. Subordinated debt securities are subordinate and junior in right of payment, to the extent and in the manner stated in the subordinated debt indenture, to all of our senior debt, as defined in the subordinated debt indenture, including all debt securities we have issued and will issue under the senior debt indenture.

[Table of Contents](#)

The subordinated debt indenture defines “senior debt” as:

- our indebtedness under or in respect of our credit agreement, whether for principal, interest (including interest accruing after the filing of a petition initiating any proceeding pursuant to any bankruptcy law, whether or not the claim for such interest is allowed as a claim in such proceeding), reimbursement obligations, fees, commissions, expenses, indemnities or other amounts; and
- any other indebtedness permitted under the terms of that indenture, unless the instrument under which such indebtedness is incurred expressly provides that it is on a parity with or subordinated in right of payment to the subordinated debt securities.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, “senior debt” will not include: (i) equity interests; (ii) any liability for taxes; (iii) any indebtedness to any of our subsidiaries or affiliates; (iv) any trade payables; or (v) any indebtedness incurred in violation of the subordinated debt indenture.

We may modify the subordination provisions, including the definition of senior debt, with respect to one or more series of subordinated debt securities. Such modifications will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement.

The subordinated debt indenture provides that, unless all principal of and any premium or interest on the senior debt has been paid in full, no payment or other distribution may be made in respect of any subordinated debt securities in the following circumstances:

- in the event of any insolvency or bankruptcy proceedings, or any receivership, liquidation, reorganization, assignment for creditors or other similar proceedings or events involving us or our assets;
- (a) in the event and during the continuation of any default in the payment of principal, premium or interest on any senior debt beyond any applicable grace period or (b) in the event that any event of default with respect to any senior debt has occurred and is continuing, permitting the holders of that senior debt (or a trustee) to accelerate the maturity of that senior debt, whether or not the maturity is in fact accelerated (unless, in the case of (a) or (b), the payment default or event of default has been cured or waived or ceased to exist and any related acceleration has been rescinded) or (c) in the event that any judicial proceeding is pending with respect to a payment default or event of default described in (a) or (b); or
- in the event that any subordinated debt securities have been declared due and payable before their stated maturity.

If the trustee under the subordinated debt indenture or any holders of the subordinated debt securities receive any payment or distribution that is prohibited under the subordination provisions, then the trustee or the holders will have to repay that money to the holders of the senior debt.

Even if the subordination provisions prevent us from making any payment when due on the subordinated debt securities of any series, we will be in default on our obligations under that series if we do not make the payment when due. This means that the trustee under the subordinated debt

indenture and the holders of that series can take action against us, but they will not receive any money until the claims of the holders of senior debt have been fully satisfied.

The subordinated debt indenture allows the holders of senior debt to obtain a court order requiring us and any holder of subordinated debt securities to comply with the subordination provisions.

[Table of Contents](#)

Defeasance, Covenant Defeasance and Satisfaction and Discharge

When we use the term defeasance, we mean discharge from some or all of our obligations under the indenture. If we deposit with the trustee funds or government securities, or if so provided in your prospectus supplement, obligations other than government securities, sufficient to make payments on any series of debt securities on the dates those payments are due and payable and other specified conditions are satisfied, then, at our option, either of the following will occur:

- we will be discharged from our obligations with respect to the debt securities of such series and all obligations of any guarantors of such debt securities will also be discharged with respect to the guarantees of such debt securities (“legal defeasance”); or
- we will be discharged from any covenants we make in the applicable indenture for the benefit of such series and the related events of default will no longer apply to us (“covenant defeasance”).

If we defease any series of debt securities, the holders of such securities will not be entitled to the benefits of the indenture, except for our obligations to deliver temporary and definitive securities, register the transfer or exchange of such securities, replace stolen, lost or mutilated securities or maintain paying agencies, hold moneys for payment in trust and make payments from such trust of principal, premium and interest on the applicable series of debt securities when due. In case of covenant defeasance, our obligation to pay principal, premium and interest on the applicable series of debt securities will also survive.

We will be required to deliver to the trustee an opinion of counsel that the deposit and related defeasance would not cause the holders of the applicable series of debt securities to recognize gain or loss for federal income tax purposes. If we elect legal defeasance, that opinion of counsel must be based upon a ruling from the U.S. Internal Revenue Service, or IRS, or a change in law to that effect.

Upon the effectiveness of defeasance with respect to any series of guaranteed debt securities, each guarantor of the debt securities of such series shall be automatically and unconditionally released and discharged from all of its obligations under its guarantee of the debt securities of such series and all of its other obligations under the applicable indenture in respect of the debt securities of that series, without any action by us, any guarantor or the trustee and without the consent of the holders of any debt securities.

In addition, we may satisfy and discharge all our obligations under the indenture with respect to debt securities of any series, other than our surviving obligations to convert, register the transfer of and exchange debt securities of that series, provided that either:

- we deliver all outstanding debt securities of that series to the trustee for cancellation; or
- all such debt securities not so delivered for cancellation have become due and payable, will become due and payable at their stated maturity within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year, and in the case of this bullet point, we have deposited with the trustee in trust an amount of cash sufficient to pay the entire indebtedness of such debt securities, including interest to the date of deposit (in the case of debt securities which have become due and payable), stated maturity or applicable redemption date.

No Personal Liability

No past, present or future director, officer, employee, incorporator, member, manager, partner (whether general or limited), unitholder or stockholder of us, the general partner of Genesis Energy, L.P. or any guarantor, as such, will have any liability for any obligations of us or any guarantor, respectively, under the debt securities or the indentures or for any claim based on, in respect of, or by reason of, such obligations or their creation. Each holder of debt securities by accepting a debt security waives and releases all such liability. The waiver and release are part of the consideration for issuance of the debt securities and any guarantees. The waiver may not be effective to waive liabilities under the federal securities laws.

[Table of Contents](#)

Default, Remedies and Waiver of Default

You will have special rights if an event of default with respect to your series of debt securities occurs and is continuing, as described in this subsection.

Unless your prospectus supplement says otherwise, when we refer to an event of default with respect to any series of debt securities, we mean any of the following:

- we do not pay the principal or any premium on any debt security of that series on the due date;
- we do not pay interest on any debt security of that series within 30 days after the due date;
- we do not deposit a sinking fund payment with regard to any debt security of that series within 60 days after the due date, but only if the payment is required under provisions described in the applicable prospectus supplement;
- we remain in breach of our covenants regarding mergers or sales of substantially all of our assets or any other covenant we make in the indenture for the benefit of the relevant series, for 90 days after we receive a notice of default stating that we are in breach and requiring us to remedy the breach. The notice must be sent by the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the relevant series of debt securities;
- we file for bankruptcy or other events of bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization relating to us occur;
- if the debt securities of that series are guaranteed debt securities, the guarantee of the debt securities of that series by any guarantor shall for any reason cease to be, or shall for any reason be asserted in writing by such guarantor or us, not to be, in full force and effect and enforceable in accordance with its terms, except to the extent contemplated or permitted by the indenture or the debt securities of that series; or
- if the applicable prospectus supplement states that any additional event of default applies to the series, that event of default occurs.

We may change, eliminate, or add to the events of default with respect to any particular series or any particular debt security or debt securities within a series, as indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Remedies if an Event of Default Occurs. If you are the holder of a subordinated debt security, all the remedies available upon the occurrence of an event of default under the subordinated debt indenture will be subject to the restrictions on the subordinated debt securities described above under “— Subordination Provisions.”

Except as otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if an event of default has occurred with respect to any series of debt securities and has not been cured or waived, the trustee or the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of all debt securities of that series then outstanding may declare the entire principal amount of the debt securities of that series to be due immediately. Except as otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if the event of default occurs because of events in bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization relating to us, the entire principal amount of the debt securities of that series will be automatically accelerated, without any action by the trustee or any holder.

Each of the situations described above is called an acceleration of the stated maturity of the affected series of debt securities. Except as otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if the stated maturity of any series is accelerated and a judgment for payment has not yet been obtained, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of that series may cancel the acceleration for the entire series, upon satisfaction of certain conditions.

If an event of default occurs, the trustee will have special duties. In that situation, the trustee will be obligated to use those of its rights and powers under the relevant indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in doing so, that a prudent person would use in that situation in conducting his or her own affairs.

[Table of Contents](#)

Except as described in the prior paragraph, the trustee is not required to take any action under the relevant indenture at the request of any holders unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable protection from expenses and liability. This is called an indemnity. If the trustee is provided with an indemnity reasonably satisfactory to it, the holders of a majority in principal amount of all debt securities of the relevant series may direct the time, method and place of conducting any lawsuit or other formal legal action seeking any remedy available to the trustee with respect to that

series. These majority holders may also direct the trustee in performing any other action under the relevant indenture with respect to the debt securities of that series.

Before you bypass the trustee and bring your own lawsuit or other formal legal action or take other steps to enforce your rights or protect your interests relating to any debt security, all of the following must occur:

- the holder of your debt security must give the trustee written notice that an event of default has occurred with respect to the debt securities of your series, and the event of default must not have been cured or waived;
- the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of all debt securities of your series must make a written request that the trustee take action because of the default, and they or other holders must offer to the trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the trustee against the cost and other liabilities of taking that action;
- the trustee must not have taken action for 60 days after the above steps have been taken; and
- during those 60 days, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of your series must not have given the trustee directions that are inconsistent with the written request of the holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the debt securities of your series.

You are entitled at any time, however, to bring a lawsuit for the payment of money due on your debt security on or after its stated maturity (or, if your debt security is redeemable, on or after its redemption date).

Book-entry and other indirect owners should consult their banks or brokers for information on how to give notice or direction to or make a request of the trustee and how to declare or cancel an acceleration of the maturity.

Waiver of Default. The holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the debt securities of any series may waive a default for all debt securities of that series. If this happens, the default will be treated as if it has not occurred. No one can waive a payment default on your debt security, however, without the approval of the particular holder of that debt security.

Annual Information about Defaults to the Trustee. We will furnish each trustee every year a written statement of two of our officers certifying that to their knowledge we are in compliance with the applicable indenture and the debt securities issued under it, or else specifying any default under the applicable indenture.

Modifications and Waivers

There are four types of changes we can make to either indenture and the debt securities or series of debt securities or any guarantees thereof issued under that indenture.

Changes Requiring Each Holder’s Approval. First, there are changes that cannot be made without the approval of each holder of a debt security affected by the change under the applicable debt indenture, including, among others:

- changing the stated maturity for any principal or interest payment on a debt security;
- reducing the principal amount, the amount payable on acceleration of the maturity after a default, the interest rate or the redemption price for a debt security;

[Table of Contents](#)

- permitting redemption of a debt security if not previously permitted;
- impairing any right a holder may have to require purchase of its debt security;
- impairing any right that a holder of convertible debt security may have to convert the debt security;
- changing the currency of any payment on a debt security;
- changing the place of payment on a debt security;
- impair a holder’s right to sue for payment of any amount due on its debt security;
- release of any guarantor of a debt security from any of its obligations under its guarantee thereof, except in accordance with the terms

of the indenture;

- reducing the percentage in principal amount of the debt securities of any one or more affected series, taken separately or together, as applicable, and whether comprising the same or different series or less than all of the debt securities of a series, the approval of whose holders is needed to change the indenture or those debt securities or waive our compliance with the applicable indenture or to waive defaults; and
- changing the provisions of the applicable indenture dealing with modification and waiver in any other respect, except to increase any required percentage referred to above or to add to the provisions that cannot be changed or waived without approval of the holder of each affected debt security.

Changes Not Requiring Approval. The second type of change does not require any approval by holders of the debt securities affected. These changes are limited to clarifications and changes that would not adversely affect any debt securities of any series in any material respect. Nor do we need any approval to make changes that affect only debt securities to be issued under the applicable indenture after the changes take effect. We may also make changes or obtain waivers that do not adversely affect a particular debt security, even if they affect other debt securities. In those cases, we do not need to obtain the approval of the holder of the unaffected debt security; we need only obtain any required approvals from the holders of the affected debt securities. We may also make changes to reflect the addition of, succession to or release of any guarantor of guaranteed debt securities otherwise permitted under the indenture. We may also make changes to conform the text of the applicable indenture or any debt securities or guarantees to any provision of the “Description of Debt Securities and Guarantees” in this prospectus or the comparable section in your prospectus supplement, to the extent such provision was intended to be a verbatim recitation of a provision of such indenture or debt securities or guarantees.

Modification of Subordination Provisions. We may not amend the indenture related to subordinated debt securities to alter the subordination of any outstanding subordinated debt securities without the written consent of each holder of senior debt then outstanding who would be adversely affected (or the group or representative thereof authorized or required to consent thereto pursuant to the instrument creating or evidencing, or pursuant to which there is outstanding, such senior debt). In addition, we may not modify the subordination provisions of the indenture related to subordinated debt securities in a manner that would adversely affect the subordinated debt securities of any one or more series then outstanding in any material respect, without the consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of all affected series then outstanding, voting together as one class (and also of any affected series that by its terms is entitled to vote separately as a series, as described below).

Changes Requiring Majority Approval. Any other change to a particular indenture and the debt securities issued under that indenture would require the following approval:

- If the change affects only particular debt securities within a series issued under the applicable indenture, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of such particular debt securities; or

[Table of Contents](#)

- If the change affects debt securities of more than one series issued under the applicable indenture, it must be approved by the holders of a majority in principal amount of all debt securities of all such series affected by the change, with all such affected debt securities voting together as one class for this purpose and such affected debt securities of any series potentially comprising fewer than all debt securities of such series,

in each case, except as may otherwise be provided pursuant to such indenture for all or any particular debt securities of any series. This means that modification of terms with respect to certain securities of a series could be effectuated without obtaining the consent of the holders of a majority in principal amount of other securities of such series that are not affected by such modification.

The same majority approval would be required for us to obtain a waiver of any of our covenants in either indenture. Our covenants include the promises we make about merging or selling substantially all of our assets, which we describe above under “— Mergers and Similar Transactions.” If the holders approve a waiver of a covenant, we will not have to comply with it. The holders, however, cannot approve a waiver of any provision in a particular debt security, or in the applicable indenture as it affects that debt security, that we cannot change without the approval of the holder of that debt security as described above in “— Changes Requiring Each Holder’s Approval,” unless that holder approves the waiver.

We may issue particular debt securities or a particular series of debt securities, as applicable, that are entitled, by their terms, to separately approve matters (for example, modification or waiver of provisions in the applicable indenture) that would also, or otherwise, require approval of holders of a majority in principal amount of all affected debt securities of all affected series issued under such indenture voting together as a single class. Any such affected debt securities or series of debt securities would be entitled to approve such matters (a) pursuant to such special rights by consent of holders of a majority in principal amount of such affected debt securities or series of debt securities voting separately as a class and

(b) in addition, as described above, except as may otherwise be provided pursuant to the applicable indenture for such debt securities or series of debt securities, by consent of holders of a majority in principal amount of such affected debt securities or series of debt securities and all other affected debt securities of all series issued under such indenture voting together as one class for this purpose. We may issue series or debt securities of a series having these or other special voting rights without obtaining the consent of or giving notice to holders of outstanding debt securities or series.

Book-entry and other indirect owners should consult their banks or brokers for information on how approval may be granted or denied if we seek to change an indenture or any debt securities or request a waiver.

Special Rules for Action by Holders

Only holders of outstanding debt securities of the applicable series will be eligible to take any action under the applicable indenture, such as giving a notice of default, declaring an acceleration, approving any change or waiver or giving the trustee an instruction with respect to debt securities of that series. Also, we will count only outstanding debt securities in determining whether the various percentage requirements for taking action have been met. Any debt securities owned by us or any of our affiliates or surrendered for cancellation or for payment or redemption of which money has been set aside in trust are not deemed to be outstanding. Any required approval or waiver must be given by written consent.

In some situations, we may follow special rules in calculating the principal amount of debt securities that are to be treated as outstanding for the purposes described above. This may happen, for example, if the principal amount is payable in a non-U.S. dollar currency, increases over time or is not to be fixed until maturity.

We will generally be entitled to set any day as a record date for the purpose of determining the holders that are entitled to take action under either indenture. In certain limited circumstances, only the trustee will be entitled to set a record date for action by holders. If we or the trustee sets a record date for an approval or other action to

[Table of Contents](#)

be taken by holders, that vote or action may be taken only by persons or entities who are holders on the record date and must be taken during the period that we specify for this purpose, or that the trustee specifies if it sets the record date. We or the trustee, as applicable, may shorten or lengthen this period from time to time. This period, however, may not extend beyond the 180th day after the record date for the action. In addition, record dates for any global debt security may be set in accordance with procedures established by the depositary from time to time. Accordingly, record dates for global debt securities may differ from those for other debt securities.

Form, Exchange and Transfer

If any debt securities cease to be issued in registered global form, they will be issued:

- only in fully registered form;
- without interest coupons; and
- unless we indicate otherwise in your prospectus supplement, in denominations of \$2,000 and integral multiples of \$1,000 in excess thereof.

Holders may exchange their debt securities for debt securities of smaller denominations or combined into fewer debt securities of larger denominations, as long as the total principal amount is not changed. You may not exchange your debt securities for securities of a different series or having different terms, unless your prospectus supplement says you may.

Holders may exchange or transfer their debt securities at the office of the trustee. They may also replace lost, stolen, destroyed or mutilated debt securities at that office. We have appointed the trustee to act as our agent for registering debt securities in the names of holders and transferring and replacing debt securities. We may appoint another entity to perform these functions or perform them ourselves.

Holders will not be required to pay a service charge to transfer or exchange their debt securities, but they may be required to pay for any tax or other governmental charge associated with the exchange or transfer. The transfer or exchange, and any replacement, will be made only if our transfer agent is satisfied with the holder’s proof of legal ownership. The transfer agent may require an indemnity before replacing any debt securities.

If we have designated additional transfer agents for your debt security, they will be named in your prospectus supplement. We may appoint

additional transfer agents or cancel the appointment of any particular transfer agent. We may also approve a change in the office through which any transfer agent acts.

If the debt securities of any series are redeemable and we redeem less than all those debt securities, we may block the transfer or exchange of those debt securities during the period beginning 15 days before the day we mail the notice of redemption and ending on the day of that mailing, in order to freeze the list of holders to prepare the mailing. We may also refuse to register transfers of or exchange any debt security selected for redemption, except that we will continue to permit transfers and exchanges of the unredeemed portion of any debt security being partially redeemed.

If a debt security is issued as a global debt security, only DTC or other depositary will be entitled to transfer and exchange the debt security as described in this subsection, since the depositary will be the sole holder of the debt security.

The rules for exchange described above apply to exchange of debt securities for other debt securities of the same series and kind. If a debt security is convertible, exercisable or exchangeable into or for a different kind of security, such as one that we have not issued, or for other property, the rules governing that type of conversion, exercise or exchange will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

[Table of Contents](#)

Payments

We will pay interest, principal and other amounts payable with respect to the debt securities of any series to the holders of record of those debt securities as of the record dates and otherwise in the manner specified below or in the prospectus supplement for that series.

We will make payments on a global debt security in accordance with the applicable policies of the depositary as in effect from time to time. Under those policies, we will pay directly to the depositary, or its nominee, and not to any indirect owners who own beneficial interests in the global debt security. An indirect owner’s right to receive those payments will be governed by the rules and practices of the depositary and its participants.

We will make payments on a debt security in non-global, registered form as follows. We will pay interest that is due on an interest payment date by check mailed on the interest payment date to the holder at his or her address shown on the trustee’s records as of the close of business on the regular record date. We will make all other payments by check at the paying agent described below, against surrender of the debt security. All payments by check will be made in next-day funds — i.e., funds that become available on the day after the check is cashed.

Alternatively, if a non-global debt security has a face amount of at least \$1,000,000 and the holder asks us to do so, we will pay any amount that becomes due on the debt security by wire transfer of immediately available funds to an account at a bank in New York City, on the due date. To request wire payment, the holder must give the paying agent appropriate wire transfer instructions at least five business days before the requested wire payment is due. In the case of any interest payment due on an interest payment date, the instructions must be given by the person or entity who is the holder on the relevant regular record date. In the case of any other payment, payment will be made only after the debt security is surrendered to the paying agent. Any wire instructions, once properly given, will remain in effect unless and until new instructions are given in the manner described above.

Book-entry and other indirect owners should consult their banks or brokers for information on how they will receive payments on their debt securities.

Regardless of who acts as paying agent, all money paid by us to a paying agent that remains unclaimed at the end of two years after the amount is due to a holder will be repaid to us. After that two-year period, the holder may look only to us for payment and not to the trustee, any other paying agent or anyone else.

Guarantees

The debt securities of any series may be guaranteed by one or more of our subsidiaries. However, the applicable indenture governing the debt securities will not require that any of our subsidiaries be a guarantor of any series of debt securities and will permit the guarantors for any series of guaranteed debt securities to be different from any of the subsidiaries listed above under “— General.” As a result, a series of debt securities may not have any guarantors and the guarantors of any series of guaranteed debt securities may differ from the guarantors of any other series of guaranteed debt securities. If we issue a series of guaranteed debt securities, the identity of the specific guarantors of the debt securities of that series will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

If we issue a series of guaranteed debt securities, a description of some of the terms of guarantees of those debt securities will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. Unless otherwise provided in the prospectus supplement relating to a series of guaranteed debt securities, each guarantor of the debt securities of such series will unconditionally guarantee the due and punctual payment of the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on each debt security of such series, all in accordance with the terms of such debt securities and the applicable indenture.

[Table of Contents](#)

Notwithstanding the foregoing, unless otherwise provided in the prospectus supplement relating to a series of guaranteed debt securities, the applicable indenture will contain provisions to the effect that the obligations of each guarantor under its guarantees and such indenture shall be limited to the maximum amount as will, after giving effect to all other contingent and fixed liabilities of such guarantor, result in the obligations of such guarantor under such guarantees and such indenture not constituting a fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer under applicable law. However, there can be no assurance that, notwithstanding such limitation, a court would not determine that a guarantee constituted a fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer under applicable law. If that were to occur, the court could void the applicable guarantor’s obligations under that guarantee, subordinate that guarantee to other debt and other liabilities of that guarantor or take other action detrimental to holders of the debt securities of the applicable series, including directing the holders to return any payments received from the applicable guarantor.

Unless otherwise provided in the prospectus supplement relating to a series of guaranteed debt securities, the applicable indenture will (i) provide that, upon the sale or disposition (by merger or otherwise) of any guarantor, (x) if the transferee is not an affiliate of us, such guarantor will automatically be released from all obligations under its guarantee of such debt securities or (y) otherwise, the transferee (if other than us or another guarantor) will assume the guarantor’s obligations under its guarantee of such debt securities and (ii) permit us to cause the guarantee of any guarantor of such debt securities to be released at any time if we satisfy such conditions, if any, as are specified in the prospectus supplement for such debt securities.

The applicable prospectus supplement relating to any series of guaranteed debt securities will specify other terms of the applicable guarantees.

If the applicable prospectus supplement relating to a series of our senior debt securities provides that those senior debt securities will have the benefit of a guarantee by any or all of our subsidiaries, unless otherwise provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, each such guarantee will be the unsubordinated and unsecured obligation of the applicable guarantor and will rank equally in right of payment with all of the unsecured and unsubordinated indebtedness of such guarantor.

Any guarantee of any debt securities will be effectively subordinated to all existing and future secured indebtedness of the applicable guarantor, including any secured guarantees of other Company debt, to the extent of the value of the collateral securing that indebtedness. Consequently, in the event of a bankruptcy, or similar proceeding with respect to any guarantor that has provided a guarantee of any debt securities, the holders of that guarantor’s secured indebtedness will be entitled to proceed directly against the collateral that secures that secured indebtedness and such collateral will not be available for satisfaction of any amount owed by such guarantor under its unsecured indebtedness, including its guarantees of any debt securities, until that secured debt is satisfied in full. Unless otherwise provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, the indenture will not limit the ability of any guarantor to incur secured indebtedness.

If the applicable prospectus supplement relating to a series of our subordinated debt securities provides that those subordinated debt securities will have the benefit of a guarantee by any or all of our subsidiaries, unless otherwise provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, each such guarantee will be the subordinated and unsecured obligation of the applicable guarantor and, in addition to being effectively subordinated to secured debt of such guarantor, will be subordinated in right of payment to all of such guarantor’s existing and future senior indebtedness, including any guarantee of the senior debt securities, to the same extent and in the same manner as the subordinated debt securities are subordinated to our senior debt. See “— Subordination Provisions” above.

Paying Agents

We may appoint one or more financial institutions to act as our paying agents, at whose designated offices debt securities in non-global entry form may be surrendered for payment at their maturity. We call each of those offices a paying agent. We may add, replace or terminate paying agents from time to time. We may also choose

[Table of Contents](#)

to act as our own paying agent. We will specify in the prospectus supplement for your debt security the initial location of each paying agent for that debt security. We must notify the trustee of changes in the paying agents.

Notices

Notices to be given to holders of a global debt security will be sufficiently given if given to the depositary, in accordance with its applicable policies as in effect from time to time. Notices to be given to holders of debt securities not in global form will be sent by mail to the respective addresses of the holders as they appear in the trustee’s records, and will be deemed given when mailed. Neither the failure to give any notice to a particular holder, nor any defect in a notice given to a particular holder, will affect the sufficiency of any notice given to another holder.

Book-entry and other indirect owners should consult their banks or brokers for information on how they will receive notices.

Our Relationship With the Trustee

The prospectus supplement for your debt security will describe any material relationships we may have with the trustee with respect to that debt security.

The same financial institution may initially serve as the trustee for our senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities. Consequently, if an actual or potential event of default occurs with respect to any of these securities, the trustee may be considered to have a conflicting interest for purposes of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939. In that case, the trustee may be required to resign under one or more of the indentures, and we would be required to appoint a successor trustee. For this purpose, a “potential” event of default means an event that would be an event of default if the requirements for giving us default notice or for the default having to exist for a specific period of time were disregarded.

Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities

We may issue warrants for the purchase of the debt securities. Such warrants may be issued independently or together with other securities and may be attached to or separate from any offered securities. Each series of warrants for the purchase of debt securities will be issued under a separate warrant agreement to be entered into between us and a bank or trust company, as warrant agent. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not have any obligation or relationship of agency or trust for or with any holders or beneficial owners of warrants. A copy of the warrant agreement will be filed with the Commission in connection with the offering of warrants.

The prospectus supplement relating to a particular issue of warrants to purchase debt securities will describe the terms of such warrants, including, among other things, the following:

- the title of the warrants to purchase debt securities;
- the offering price for the warrants to purchase debt securities, if any;
- the aggregate number of the warrants to purchase debt securities;
- the designation, aggregate principal amount, currencies, denominations and other terms of the series of debt securities purchasable upon exercise of the warrants to purchase debt securities and the price at which such debt securities may be purchased upon such exercise;
- if applicable, the designation and terms of the securities that the warrants to purchase debt securities are issued with and the number of warrants to purchase debt securities issued with each such security;
- if applicable, the date from and after which the warrants and any securities issued with the warrants will be separately transferable;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the dates on which the right to exercise the warrants to purchase debt securities commence and expire;
- if applicable, the minimum or maximum amount of the warrants to purchase debt securities that may be exercised at any one time;
- the currency or currency units in which the offering price, if any, and the exercise price are payable;
- if applicable, a discussion of material federal income tax considerations;
- redemption or call provisions, if any, applicable to the warrants to purchase debt securities;

- any additional terms of the warrants to purchase debt securities, including terms, procedures, and limitations relating to the exercise of the warrants to purchase debt securities; and
- any other information we think is important about the warrants to purchase debt securities.

Each warrant will entitle the holder of the warrant to purchase such principal amount of debt securities being offered at the exercise price set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. Holders may exercise warrants to purchase debt securities at any time up to the close of business on the expiration date set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised warrants to purchase debt securities are void. Holders may exercise warrants to purchase debt securities as set forth in the prospectus supplement relating to the warrants to purchase debt securities being offered.

Until you exercise your warrants to purchase debt securities, you will not have any rights as a holder of debt securities, including the right to receive payments of principal of, premium, if any, or interest, if any, on the debt securities purchasable upon such exercise or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture, by virtue of your ownership of such warrants.

[Table of Contents](#)

MATERIAL INCOME TAX CONSEQUENCES

This section is a discussion of the material income tax consequences that may be relevant to prospective unitholders who are individual citizens or residents of the United States and, unless otherwise noted in the following discussion, expresses the opinion of Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP, counsel to our general partner and us, insofar as it relates to legal conclusions with respect to matters of United States federal income tax law. This section is based upon current provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the “Internal Revenue Code”), existing and proposed Treasury Regulations promulgated under the Internal Revenue Code (the “Treasury Regulations”), and current administrative rulings and court decisions, all of which are subject to change. Later changes in these authorities may cause the tax consequences to vary substantially from the consequences described below. Unless the context otherwise requires, references in this section to “Genesis,” “us,” “we,” “our,” or “ours” are references to Genesis Energy, L.P. and its subsidiaries.

The following discussion does not comment on all federal income tax matters affecting us or our unitholders. Moreover, the discussion focuses on unitholders who are individual citizens or residents of the United States and has only limited application to corporations, estates, trusts, nonresident aliens or other unitholders subject to specialized tax treatment, such as tax-exempt institutions, foreign persons, individual retirement accounts (IRAs), real estate investment trusts (REITs) or mutual funds. Accordingly, we urge each prospective unitholder to consult, and depend on, his own tax advisor in analyzing the federal, state, local and foreign tax consequences particular to him of the ownership or disposition of common units.

All statements as to matters of law and legal conclusions, but not as to factual matters, contained in this section, unless otherwise noted, are the opinion of Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP and are based on the accuracy of the representations made by us and our general partner. No ruling has been or will be requested from the Internal Revenue Service (the “IRS”) regarding any matter affecting us or prospective unitholders. Instead, we will rely on opinions and advice of Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP. Unlike a ruling, an opinion of counsel represents only that counsel’s best legal judgment and does not bind the IRS or the courts. Accordingly, the opinions and statements made herein may not be sustained by a court if contested by the IRS. Any contest of this sort with the IRS may materially and adversely impact the market for our common units and the prices at which common units trade. In addition, the costs of any contest with the IRS, principally legal, accounting and related fees, will result in a reduction in cash available for distribution to our unitholders and our general partner and thus will be borne directly or indirectly by our unitholders and our general partner. Furthermore, the tax treatment of us, or of an investment in us, may be significantly modified by future legislative or administrative changes or court decisions. Any modifications may or may not be retroactively applied.

For the reasons described below, Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP has not rendered an opinion with respect to the following specific federal income tax issues:

- (1) the treatment of a unitholder whose common units are loaned to a short seller to cover a short sale of common units (please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Treatment of Short Sales”);
- (2) whether our monthly convention for allocating taxable income and losses is permitted by existing Treasury Regulations (please see “— Disposition of Common Units — Allocations Between Transferors and Transferees”); and
- (3) whether our method for depreciating Section 743 adjustments is sustainable (please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Section 754 Election”).

Partnership Status

A partnership is not a taxable entity and incurs no federal income tax liability. Instead, each partner of a partnership is required to take into account his share of items of income, gain, loss and deduction of the partnership in computing his federal income tax liability, regardless of whether cash distributions are made to

[Table of Contents](#)

him by the partnership. Distributions by a partnership to a partner are generally not taxable to the partnership or to the partner unless the amount of cash distributed to him is in excess of the partner’s adjusted basis in his partnership interest.

Section 7704 of the Internal Revenue Code provides that publicly-traded partnerships will, as a general rule, be taxed as corporations. However, an exception, referred to as the “Qualifying Income Exception,” exists with respect to publicly-traded partnerships of which 90% or more of the gross income for every taxable year consists of “qualifying income.” Qualifying income includes income and gains derived from the transportation, storage, processing and marketing of crude oil, natural gas and products thereof and fertilizer. Other types of qualifying income include interest (other than from a financial business), dividends, gains from the sale of real property and gains from the sale or other disposition of capital assets held for the production of income that otherwise constitutes qualifying income. We estimate that at least 90% of our current gross income is qualifying income. Based upon and subject to this estimate, the factual representations made by us and our general partner and a review of the applicable legal authorities, Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP is of the opinion that at least 90% of our current gross income should constitute qualifying income.

No ruling has been or will be sought from the IRS and the IRS has made no determination as to our status as a partnership for federal income tax purposes or whether our operations generate “qualifying income” under Section 7704 of the Internal Revenue Code. Instead, we will rely on the opinion of Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP. It is the opinion of Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP that, based upon the Internal Revenue Code, the Treasury Regulations, published revenue rulings and court decisions and the representations described below, we should be classified as a partnership for federal income tax purposes.

In rendering its opinion, Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP has relied on factual representations made by us and our general partner. The representations made by us and our general partner upon which counsel has relied include:

- (a) Neither we nor the operating company has elected or will elect to be treated as a corporation;
- (b) For each taxable year, more than 90% of our gross income has been and will be income from sources that Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP has opined or will opine is “qualifying income” within the meaning of Section 7704(d) of the Internal Revenue Code; and
- (c) Each hedging transaction that we treat as resulting in qualifying income has been and will be appropriately identified as a hedging transaction pursuant to applicable Treasury Regulations, and has been and will be associated with oil, gas or products thereof that are held or are to be held by us in activities that Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP has opined or will opine result in qualifying income.

If we fail to meet the Qualifying Income Exception, other than a failure that is determined by the IRS to be inadvertent and that is cured within a reasonable time after discovery (in which case the IRS may also require us to make adjustments with respect to our unitholders or pay other amounts), we will be treated as if we had transferred all of our assets, subject to liabilities, to a newly formed corporation, on the first day of the year in which we fail to meet the Qualifying Income Exception, in return for stock in that corporation, and then distributed that stock to our unitholders in liquidation of their interests in us. This deemed contribution and liquidation should be tax-free to unitholders and us so long as we, at that time, do not have liabilities in excess of the tax basis of our assets. Thereafter, we would be treated as an association taxable as a corporation for federal income tax purposes.

If we were treated as an association taxable as a corporation in any taxable year, either as a result of a failure to meet the Qualifying Income Exception or otherwise, our items of income, gain, loss and deduction would be reflected only on our tax return rather than being passed through to our unitholders, and our net income would be taxed to us at corporate rates. In addition, any distribution made to a unitholder would be treated as either taxable

[Table of Contents](#)

dividend income, to the extent of our current or accumulated earnings and profits, or, in the absence of earnings and profits, a nontaxable return of capital, to the extent of the unitholder's tax basis in his common units, or taxable capital gain, after the unitholder's tax basis in his common units is reduced to zero. Accordingly, taxation as a corporation would result in a material reduction in a unitholder's cash flow and after-tax return and thus would likely result in a substantial reduction of the value of the units.

Current law may change so as to cause us to be treated as a corporation for federal income tax purposes or otherwise subject us to entity-level taxation. For example, from time to time, members of Congress propose and consider substantive changes to the existing U.S. federal income tax laws that affect publicly traded partnerships. Any modifications to the U.S. federal income tax laws and interpretations thereof may or may not be applied retroactively and could make it more difficult or impossible to meet the exception for us to be treated as a partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes. We are unable to predict whether any of these changes or other proposals will ultimately be enacted. Any such changes could negatively impact an investment in our common units. In addition, because of widespread state budget deficits and other reasons, several states are evaluating ways to subject partnerships to entity-level taxation through the imposition of state income, franchise and other forms of taxation. For example, in 2008, we began paying Texas franchise tax at a maximum effective rate of 0.5% of our gross income apportioned to Texas in the prior year.

The remainder of the discussion below is based on Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP's opinion that we will be classified as a partnership for federal income tax purposes.

Limited Partner Status

Unitholders who have become limited partners of Genesis will be treated as partners of Genesis for federal income tax purposes. Also:

- (a) assignees who have executed and delivered transfer applications, and are awaiting admission as limited partners, and
- (b) unitholders whose common units are held in street name or by a nominee and who have the right to direct the nominee in the exercise of all substantive rights attendant to the ownership of their common units,

will be treated as partners of Genesis for federal income tax purposes. As there is no direct authority addressing assignees of common units who are entitled to execute and deliver transfer applications and become entitled to direct the exercise of attendant rights, but who fail to execute and deliver transfer applications, the opinion of Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP does not extend to these persons. Furthermore, a purchaser or other transferee of common units who does not execute and deliver a transfer application may not receive some federal income tax information or reports furnished to record holders of common units unless the common units are held in a nominee or street name account and the nominee or broker has executed and delivered a transfer application for those common units.

A beneficial owner of common units whose units have been transferred to a short seller to complete a short sale would appear to lose his status as a partner with respect to those units for federal income tax purposes. Please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Treatment of Short Sales.”

Income, gain, deductions or losses would not appear to be reportable by a unitholder who is not a partner for federal income tax purposes, and any cash distributions received by a unitholder who is not a partner for federal income tax purposes would therefore appear to be fully taxable as ordinary income. These holders are urged to consult their own tax advisors with respect to their status as partners in Genesis.

The references to “unitholders” in the discussion that follows are to persons who are treated as partners in Genesis for federal income tax purposes.

[Table of Contents](#)

Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership

Flow-Through of Taxable Income. Except for taxes paid by our corporate subsidiaries, we will not pay any federal income tax. Instead, each unitholder will be required to report on his income tax return his share of our income, gains, losses and deductions without regard to whether corresponding cash distributions are received by him. Consequently, we may allocate income to a unitholder even if he has not received a cash distribution. Each unitholder will be required to include in income his allocable share of our income, gains, losses and deductions for our taxable year ending with or within his taxable year. Our taxable year ends on December 31.

Treatment of Distributions. Distributions by us to a unitholder generally will not be taxable to the unitholder for federal income tax purposes, except to the extent the amount of any such cash distribution exceeds his tax basis in his common units immediately before the distribution. Our cash distributions in excess of a unitholder's tax basis generally will be considered to be gain from the sale or exchange of our common units,

taxable in accordance with the rules described under “— Disposition of Common Units” below. Any reduction in a unitholder’s share of our liabilities for which no partner bears the economic risk of loss, known as “nonrecourse liabilities,” will be treated as a distribution by us of cash to that unitholder. To the extent our distributions cause a unitholder’s “at risk” amount to be less than zero at the end of any taxable year, he must recapture any losses deducted in previous years. Please see “— Limitations on Deductibility of Losses.”

A decrease in a unitholder’s percentage interest in us because of our issuance of additional common units will decrease his share of our nonrecourse liabilities, and thus will result in a corresponding deemed distribution of cash. This deemed distribution may constitute a non-pro rata distribution. A non-pro rata distribution of money or property may result in ordinary income to a unitholder, regardless of his tax basis in his common units, if the distribution reduces the unitholder’s share of our “unrealized receivables,” including depreciation recapture, and/or substantially appreciated “inventory items,” both as defined in Section 751 of the Internal Revenue Code, and collectively, “Section 751 Assets.” To that extent, he will be treated as having been distributed his proportionate share of the Section 751 Assets and then having exchanged those assets with us in return for the non-pro rata portion of the actual distribution made to him. This latter deemed exchange will generally result in the unitholder’s realization of ordinary income, which will equal the excess of (1) the non-pro rata portion of that distribution over (2) the unitholder’s tax basis (generally zero) for the share of Section 751 Assets deemed relinquished in the exchange.

Basis of Common Units. A unitholder’s initial tax basis for his common units will be the amount of cash he pays for our common units and his adjusted basis in any assets he exchanges for common units plus his share of our nonrecourse liabilities. That basis will be increased by his share of our income and by any increases in his share of our nonrecourse liabilities. That basis will be decreased, but not below zero, by distributions from us, by the unitholder’s share of our losses, by any decreases in his share of our nonrecourse liabilities and by his share of our expenditures that are not deductible in computing taxable income and are not required to be capitalized. A unitholder will have a share, generally based on his share of profits, of our nonrecourse liabilities. Please see “— Disposition of Common Units — Recognition of Gain or Loss.”

Limitations on Deductibility of Losses. The deduction by a unitholder of his share of our losses will be limited to the tax basis in his units and, in the case of an individual unitholder, estate, trust or corporate unitholder (if more than 50% of the value of the corporate unitholder’s stock is owned directly or indirectly by or for five or fewer individuals or some tax-exempt organizations), to the amount for which the unitholder is considered to be “at risk” with respect to our activities, if that is less than his tax basis. A unitholder subject to these limitations must recapture losses deducted in previous years to the extent that distributions cause his at-risk amount to be less than zero at the end of any taxable year. Losses disallowed to a unitholder or recaptured as a result of these limitations will carry forward and will be allowable as a deduction to the extent that his at-risk amount is subsequently increased, provided such losses do not exceed such common unitholders’ tax basis in his common units. Upon the taxable disposition of a unit, any gain recognized by a unitholder can be offset by losses that were previously suspended by the at-risk limitation but may not be offset by losses suspended by the basis limitation. Any loss previously suspended by the at-risk limitation in excess of that gain would no longer be utilizable.

[Table of Contents](#)

In general, a unitholder will be at risk to the extent of the tax basis of his units, excluding any portion of that basis attributable to his share of our nonrecourse liabilities, reduced by (i) any portion of that basis representing amounts otherwise protected against loss because of a guarantee, stop loss agreement or other similar arrangement and (ii) any amount of money he borrows to acquire or hold his units, if the lender of those borrowed funds owns an interest in us, is related to the unitholder or can look only to the units for repayment. A unitholder’s at-risk amount will increase or decrease as the tax basis of the unitholder’s units increases or decreases, other than tax basis increases or decreases attributable to increases or decreases in his share of our nonrecourse liabilities.

In addition to the basis and at-risk limitations on the deductibility of losses, the passive loss limitations generally provide that individuals, estates, trusts and some closely-held corporations and personal service corporations can deduct losses from passive activities, which are generally trade or business activities in which the taxpayer does not materially participate, only to the extent of the taxpayer’s income from those passive activities. The passive loss limitations are applied separately with respect to each publicly traded partnership. Consequently, any passive losses we generate will only be available to offset our passive income generated in the future and will not be available to offset income from other passive activities or investments, including our investments or investments in other publicly traded partnerships, or salary or active business income. Passive losses that are not deductible because they exceed a unitholder’s share of income we generate may be deducted in full when he disposes of his entire investment in us in a fully taxable transaction with an unrelated party. The passive loss limitations are applied after other applicable limitations on deductions, including the at-risk rules and the basis limitation.

A unitholder’s share of our net income may be offset by any of our suspended passive losses, but it may not be offset by any other current or carryover losses from other passive activities, including those attributable to other publicly traded partnerships.

Limitations on Interest Deductions. The deductibility of a non-corporate taxpayer’s “investment interest expense” is generally limited to the amount of that taxpayer’s “net investment income.” Investment interest expense includes:

- interest on indebtedness properly allocable to property held for investment;
- our interest expense attributed to portfolio income; and
- the portion of interest expense incurred to purchase or carry an interest in a passive activity to the extent attributable to portfolio income.

The computation of a unitholder’s investment interest expense will take into account interest on any margin account borrowing or other loan incurred to purchase or carry a unit. Net investment income includes gross income from property held for investment and amounts treated as portfolio income under the passive loss rules, less deductible expenses, other than interest, directly connected with the production of investment income, but generally does not include gains attributable to the disposition of property held for investment or qualified dividend income. The IRS has indicated that the net passive income earned by a publicly traded partnership will be treated as investment income to its unitholders. In addition, the unitholder’s share of our portfolio income will be treated as investment income.

Entity-Level Payments. If we are required or elect under applicable law to pay any federal, state, local or foreign income tax on behalf of any unitholder or our general partner or any former unitholder, we are authorized to pay those taxes from our funds. That payment, if made, will be treated as a distribution of cash to the partner on whose behalf the payment was made. If the payment is made on behalf of a person whose identity cannot be determined, we are authorized to treat the payment as a distribution to all current unitholders. We are authorized to amend our partnership agreement in the manner necessary to maintain uniformity of intrinsic tax characteristics of units and to adjust later distributions, so that after giving effect to these distributions, the

[Table of Contents](#)

priority and characterization of distributions otherwise applicable under our partnership agreement is maintained as nearly as is practicable. Payments by us as described above could give rise to an overpayment of tax on behalf of an individual partner in which event the partner would be required to file a claim in order to obtain a credit or refund.

Allocation of Income, Gain, Loss and Deduction. In general, if we have a net profit, our items of income, gain, loss and deduction will be allocated among our unitholders in accordance with their percentage interests in us. If we have a net loss, that loss will be allocated to our unitholders in accordance with their percentage interests in us to the extent of their positive capital accounts.

Specified items of our income, gain, loss and deduction will be allocated to account for (i) any difference between the tax basis and fair market value of our assets at the time of an offering and (ii) any difference between the tax basis and fair market value of any property contributed to us that exists at the time of such contribution, together, referred to in this discussion as the “Contributed Property.” The effect of these allocations, referred to as Section 704(c) Allocations, to a unitholder purchasing common units from us in an offering will be essentially the same as if the tax bases of our assets were equal to their fair market value at the time of such offering. In the event we issue additional common units or engage in certain other transactions in the future, we will make “reverse Section 704(c) Allocations,” similar to the Section 704(c) Allocations described above, to all holders of partnership interests immediately prior to such issuance or other transactions to account for the difference between the “book” basis for purposes of maintaining capital accounts and the fair market value of all property held by us at the time of such issuance or future transaction. In addition, items of recapture income will be allocated to the extent possible to the partner who was allocated the deduction giving rise to the treatment of that gain as recapture income in order to minimize the recognition of ordinary income by some unitholders. Finally, although we do not expect that our operations will result in the creation of negative capital accounts, if negative capital accounts nevertheless result, items of our income and gain will be allocated in an amount and manner as is needed to eliminate the negative balance as quickly as possible.

An allocation of items of our income, gain, loss or deduction, other than an allocation required by the Internal Revenue Code to eliminate the difference between a partner’s “book” capital account, credited with the fair market value of Contributed Property, and “tax” capital account, credited with the tax basis of Contributed Property, referred to in this discussion as the “Book-Tax Disparity,” will generally be given effect for federal income tax purposes in determining a partner’s share of an item of income, gain, loss or deduction only if the allocation has substantial economic effect. In any other case, a partner’s share of an item will be determined on the basis of his interest in us, which will be determined by taking into account all the facts and circumstances, including:

- his relative contributions to us;
- the interests of all the partners in profits and losses;
- the interest of all the partners in cash flow; and

- the rights of all the partners to distributions of capital upon liquidation.

Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP is of the opinion that, with the exception of the issues described in “— Section 754 Election” and “— Disposition of Common Units — Allocations Between Transferors and Transferees,” allocations under our partnership agreement will be given effect for federal income tax purposes in determining a partner’s share of an item of income, gain, loss or deduction.

Treatment of Short Sales. A unitholder whose units are loaned to a “short seller” to cover a short sale of units may be considered as having disposed of those units. If so, he would no longer be treated for tax purposes as a partner with respect to those units during the period of the loan and may recognize gain or loss from the disposition. As a result, during this period:

- any of our income, gain, loss or deduction with respect to those units would not be reportable by the unitholder;

[Table of Contents](#)

- any cash distributions received by the unitholder as to those units would be fully taxable; and
- all of these distributions would appear to be ordinary income.

Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP has not rendered an opinion regarding the tax treatment of a unitholder whose common units are loaned to a short seller to cover a short sale of common units because there is no direct or indirect authority on the issue related to partnership interests and without such authority a legal opinion cannot be issued; therefore, unitholders desiring to assure their status as partners and avoid the risk of gain recognition from a loan to a short seller are urged to modify any applicable brokerage account agreements to prohibit their brokers from borrowing and loaning their units. The IRS has announced that it is actively studying issues relating to the tax treatment of short sales of partnership interests. Please also read “— Disposition of Common Units — Recognition of Gain or Loss.”

Alternative Minimum Tax. Each unitholder will be required to take into account his distributive share of any items of our income, gain, loss or deduction for purposes of the alternative minimum tax. Prospective unitholders are urged to consult with their tax advisors as to the impact of an investment in units on their liability for the alternative minimum tax.

Tax Rates. Under current law, the highest marginal U.S. federal income tax rate applicable to ordinary income of individuals is 39.6% and the highest marginal U.S. federal income tax rate applicable to long-term capital gains (generally, capital gains on certain assets held for more than 12 months) of individuals is 20%. These rates are subject to change by new legislation at any time.

A 3.8% Medicare tax on certain investment income earned by individuals, estates and trusts applies for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2012. For these purposes, investment income generally includes a unitholder’s allocable share of our income and gain realized by a unitholder from a sale of units. In the case of an individual, the tax will be imposed on the lesser of (i) the unitholder’s net income from all investments, and (ii) the amount by which the unitholder’s adjusted gross income exceeds \$250,000 (if the unitholder is married and filing jointly or a surviving spouse), \$125,000 (if the unitholder is married and filed separately) or \$200,000 (if the unitholder is single or in any other case). In the case of an estate or trust, the tax will be imposed on the lesser of (i) undistributed net investment income or (ii) the excess adjusted gross income over the dollar amount at which the highest income tax bracket applicable to an estate or trust begins.

Section 754 Election. We have made the election permitted by Section 754 of the Internal Revenue Code. That election is irrevocable without the consent of the IRS. The election will generally permit us to adjust a common unit purchaser’s tax basis in our assets (“inside basis”) under Section 743(b) of the Internal Revenue Code to reflect his purchase price. This election does not apply to a person who purchases common units directly from us. The Section 743(b) adjustment belongs to the purchaser and not to other unitholders. For purposes of this discussion, a unitholder’s inside basis in our assets will be considered to have two components: (1) his share of our tax basis in our assets (“common basis”) and (2) his Section 743(b) adjustment to that basis.

Where the remedial allocation method is adopted (which we have generally adopted as to all of our properties), the Treasury Regulations under Section 743 of the Internal Revenue Code require a portion of the Section 743(b) adjustment that is attributable to recovery property under Section 168 of the Internal Revenue Code whose book basis is in excess of its tax basis to be depreciated over the remaining cost recovery period for the Section 704(c) built in gain. Under Treasury Regulation Section 1.167(c)-1(a)(6), a Section 743(b) adjustment attributable to property subject to depreciation under Section 167 of the Internal Revenue Code, rather than cost recovery deductions under Section 168, is generally required to be depreciated using either the straight-line method or the 150% declining balance method. If we elect a method other than the remedial method, the depreciation and amortization methods and useful lives associated with the Section 743(b) adjustment, therefore, may differ from the methods and useful lives generally used to depreciate the inside basis in such properties. Under our partnership agreement, our general partner is authorized to take a position to preserve the uniformity of units even if that position is not consistent with these and any other Treasury

Regulations. Please see “— Uniformity of Units.”

[Table of Contents](#)

Although Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP is unable to opine as to the validity of this approach because there is no direct or indirect controlling authority on this issue, we intend to depreciate the portion of a Section 743(b) adjustment attributable to unrealized appreciation in the value of Contributed Property, to the extent of any unamortized Book-Tax Disparity, using a rate of depreciation or amortization derived from the depreciation or amortization method and useful life applied to the property’s unamortized Book-Tax Disparity, or treat that portion as non-amortizable to the extent attributable to property which is not amortizable. This method is consistent with the methods employed by other publicly traded partnerships but is arguably inconsistent with Treasury Regulation Section 1.167(c)-1(a)(6), which is not expected to directly apply to a material portion of our assets. To the extent this Section 743(b) adjustment is attributable to appreciation in value in excess of the unamortized Book-Tax Disparity, we will apply the rules described in the Treasury Regulations and legislative history. If we determine that this position cannot reasonably be taken, we may take a depreciation or amortization position under which all purchasers acquiring units in the same month would receive depreciation or amortization, whether attributable to common basis or a Section 743(b) adjustment, based upon the same applicable rate as if they had purchased a direct interest in our assets. This kind of aggregate approach may result in lower annual depreciation or amortization deductions than would otherwise be allowable to some unitholders. Please see “— Uniformity of Units.” A unitholder’s tax basis for his common units is reduced by his share of our deductions (whether or not such deductions were claimed on an individual’s income tax return) so that any position we take that understates deductions will overstate the common unitholder’s basis in his common units, which may cause the unitholder to understate gain or overstate loss on any sale of such units. Please see “— Disposition of Common Units — Recognition of Gain or Loss.” The IRS may challenge our position with respect to depreciating or amortizing the Section 743(b) adjustment we take to preserve the uniformity of the units. If such a challenge were sustained, the gain from the sale of units might be increased without the benefit of additional deductions.

A Section 754 election is advantageous if the transferee’s tax basis in his units is higher than the units’ share of the aggregate tax basis of our assets immediately prior to the transfer. In that case, as a result of the election, the transferee would have, among other items, a greater amount of depreciation deductions and his share of any gain on a sale of our assets would be less. Conversely, a Section 754 election is disadvantageous if the transferee’s tax basis in his units is lower than those units’ share of the aggregate tax basis of our assets immediately prior to the transfer. Thus, the fair market value of the units may be affected either favorably or unfavorably by the election. A basis adjustment is required regardless of whether a Section 754 election is made in the case of a transfer of an interest in us if we have a substantial built-in loss immediately after the transfer, or if we distribute property and have a substantial basis reduction. Generally a built-in loss or a basis reduction is substantial if it exceeds \$250,000.

The calculations involved in the Section 754 election are complex and will be made on the basis of assumptions as to the value of our assets and other matters. For example, the allocation of the Section 743(b) adjustment among our assets must be made in accordance with the Internal Revenue Code. The IRS could seek to reallocate some or all of any Section 743(b) adjustment allocated by us to our tangible assets to goodwill instead. Goodwill, as an intangible asset, is generally nonamortizable or amortizable over a longer period of time or under a less accelerated method than our tangible assets. We cannot assure you that the determinations we make will not be successfully challenged by the IRS and that the deductions resulting from them will not be reduced or disallowed altogether. Should the IRS require a different basis adjustment to be made, and should, in our opinion, the expense of compliance exceed the benefit of the election, we may seek permission from the IRS to revoke our Section 754 election. If permission is granted, a subsequent purchaser of units may be allocated more income than he would have been allocated had the election not been revoked.

Tax Treatment of Operations

Accounting Method and Taxable Year. We use the year ending December 31 as our taxable year and the accrual method of accounting for federal income tax purposes. Each unitholder will be required to include in income his share of our income, gain, loss and deduction for our taxable year ending within or with his taxable year. In addition, a unitholder who has a taxable year ending on a date other than December 31 and who disposes

[Table of Contents](#)

of all of his units following the close of our taxable year but before the close of his taxable year must include his share of our income, gain, loss and deduction in income for his taxable year, with the result that he will be required to include in income for his taxable year his share of more than one year of our income, gain, loss and deduction. Please see “— Disposition of Common Units — Allocations Between Transferors and Transferees.”

Tax Basis, Depreciation and Amortization. The tax basis of our assets will be used for purposes of computing depreciation and cost recovery deductions and, ultimately, gain or loss on the disposition of these assets. The federal income tax burden associated with the difference between the fair market value of our assets and their tax basis immediately prior to an offering will be borne by our unitholders holding interests in us prior to any such offering. Please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Allocation of Income, Gain, Loss and Deduction.”

To the extent allowable, we may elect to use the depreciation and cost recovery methods that will result in the largest deductions being taken in the early years after assets subject to these allowances are placed in service. We may not be entitled to amortization deductions with respect to certain goodwill conveyed to us in future transactions or held at the time of any future offering. Property we subsequently acquire or construct may be depreciated using accelerated methods permitted by the Internal Revenue Code.

If we dispose of depreciable property by sale, foreclosure or otherwise, all or a portion of any gain, determined by reference to the amount of depreciation previously deducted and the nature of the property, may be subject to the recapture rules and taxed as ordinary income rather than capital gain. Similarly, a unitholder who has taken cost recovery or depreciation deductions with respect to property we own will likely be required to recapture some or all of those deductions as ordinary income upon a sale of his interest in us. Please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Allocation of Income, Gain, Loss and Deduction” and “— Disposition of Common Units — Recognition of Gain or Loss.”

The costs we incur in selling our units (called “syndication expenses”) must be capitalized and cannot be deducted currently, ratably or upon our termination. There are uncertainties regarding the classification of costs as organization expenses, which may be amortized by us, and as syndication expenses, which may not be amortized by us. The underwriting discounts and commissions we incur will be treated as syndication expenses.

Valuation and Tax Basis of Our Properties. The federal income tax consequences of the ownership and disposition of units will depend in part on our estimates of the relative fair market values, and the initial tax bases, of our assets. Although we may from time to time consult with professional appraisers regarding valuation matters, we will make many of the relative fair market value estimates ourselves. These estimates and determinations of basis are subject to challenge and will not be binding on the IRS or the courts. If the estimates of fair market value or basis are later found to be incorrect, the character and amount of items of income, gain, loss or deductions previously reported by unitholders might change, and unitholders might be required to adjust their tax liability for prior years and incur interest and penalties with respect to those adjustments.

Disposition of Common Units

Recognition of Gain or Loss. Gain or loss will be recognized on a sale of units equal to the difference between the amount realized and the unitholder’s tax basis for the units sold. A unitholder’s amount realized will be measured by the sum of the cash or the fair market value of other property received by him plus his share of our nonrecourse liabilities. Because the amount realized includes a unitholder’s share of our nonrecourse liabilities, the gain recognized on the sale of units could result in a tax liability in excess of any cash received from the sale.

Prior distributions from us in excess of cumulative net taxable income for a common unit that decreased a unitholder’s tax basis in that common unit will, in effect, become taxable income if the common unit is sold at a price greater than the unitholder’s tax basis in that common unit, even if the price received is less than his original cost.

[Table of Contents](#)

Except as noted below, gain or loss recognized by a unitholder, other than a “dealer” in units, on the sale or exchange of a unit will generally be taxable as capital gain or loss. Capital gain recognized by an individual on the sale of units held for more than twelve months will generally be taxed at a maximum U.S. federal income tax rate of 15% through December 31, 2012 and 20% thereafter (absent new legislation extending or adjusting the current rate). However, a portion, which will likely be substantial, of this gain or loss will be separately computed and taxed as ordinary income or loss under Section 751 of the Internal Revenue Code to the extent attributable to assets giving rise to depreciation recapture or other “unrealized receivables” or to “inventory items” we own. The term “unrealized receivables” includes potential recapture items, including depreciation recapture. Ordinary income attributable to unrealized receivables, inventory items and depreciation recapture may exceed net taxable gain realized upon the sale of a unit and may be recognized even if there is a net taxable loss realized on the sale of a unit. Thus, a unitholder may recognize both ordinary income and a capital loss upon a sale of units. Net capital losses may offset capital gains and no more than \$3,000 of ordinary income, in the case of individuals, and may only be used to offset capital gains in the case of corporations.

The IRS has ruled that a partner who acquires interests in a partnership in separate transactions must combine those interests and maintain a single adjusted tax basis for all those interests. Upon a sale or other disposition of less than all of those interests, a portion of that tax basis must be allocated to the interests sold using an “equitable apportionment” method, which generally means that the tax basis allocated to the interest sold equals an amount that bears the same relation to the partner’s tax basis in his entire interest in the partnership as the value of the interest sold bears

to the value of the partner’s entire interest in the partnership. Treasury Regulations under Section 1223 of the Internal Revenue Code allow a selling unitholder who can identify common units transferred with an ascertainable holding period to elect to use the actual holding period of the common units transferred. Thus, according to the ruling discussed above, a common unitholder will be unable to select high or low basis common units to sell as would be the case with corporate stock, but, according to the Treasury Regulations, he may designate specific common units sold for purposes of determining the holding period of units transferred. A unitholder electing to use the actual holding period of common units transferred must consistently use that identification method for all subsequent sales or exchanges of common units. A unitholder considering the purchase of additional units or a sale of common units purchased in separate transactions is urged to consult his tax advisor as to the possible consequences of this ruling and application of the Treasury Regulations.

Specific provisions of the Internal Revenue Code affect the taxation of some financial products and securities, including partnership interests, by treating a taxpayer as having sold an “appreciated” partnership interest, one in which gain would be recognized if it were sold, assigned or terminated at its fair market value, if the taxpayer or related persons enter(s) into:

- a short sale;
- an offsetting notional principal contract; or
- a futures or forward contract with respect to the partnership interest or substantially identical property.

Moreover, if a taxpayer has previously entered into a short sale, an offsetting notional principal contract or a futures or forward contract with respect to the partnership interest, the taxpayer will be treated as having sold that position if the taxpayer or a related person then acquires the partnership interest or substantially identical property. The Secretary of the Treasury is also authorized to issue regulations that treat a taxpayer that enters into transactions or positions that have substantially the same effect as the preceding transactions as having constructively sold the financial position.

Allocations Between Transferors and Transferees. In general, our taxable income and losses will be determined annually, will be prorated on a monthly basis and will be subsequently apportioned among our unitholders in proportion to the number of units owned by each of them as of the opening of the applicable exchange on the first business day of the month, which we refer to as the “Allocation Date.” However, gain or loss realized on a sale or other disposition of our assets other than in the ordinary course of business will be

[Table of Contents](#)

allocated among our unitholders on the Allocation Date in the month in which that gain or loss is recognized. As a result, a unitholder transferring units may be allocated income, gain, loss and deduction realized after the date of transfer.

Although simplifying conventions are contemplated by the Internal Revenue Code and most publicly traded partnerships use similar simplifying conventions, the use of this method may not be permitted under existing Treasury Regulations. Accordingly, Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP is unable to opine on the validity of this method of allocating income and deductions between transferor and transferee unitholders. If this method is not allowed under the Treasury Regulations, or only applies to transfers of less than all of the unitholder’s interest, our taxable income or losses might be reallocated among the unitholders. We are authorized to revise our method of allocation between transferor and transferee unitholders, as well as unitholders whose interests vary during a taxable year, to conform to a method permitted under future Treasury Regulations.

A unitholder who owns units at any time during a quarter and who disposes of them prior to the record date set for a cash distribution for that quarter will be allocated items of our income, gain, loss and deductions attributable to that quarter but will not be entitled to receive that cash distribution.

Notification Requirements. A unitholder who sells any of his units is generally required to notify us in writing of that sale within 30 days after the sale. A purchaser of units who purchases units from another unitholder is also generally required to notify us in writing of that purchase within 30 days after the purchase. Upon receiving such notifications, we are required to notify the IRS of that transaction and to furnish specified information to the transferor and transferee. Failure to notify us of a purchase may, in some cases, lead to the imposition of penalties. However, these reporting requirements do not apply to a sale by an individual who is a citizen of the United States and who effects the sale or exchange through a broker who will satisfy such requirements.

Constructive Termination. We will be considered to have been terminated for tax purposes if there are sales or exchanges which, in the aggregate, constitute 50% or more of the total interests in our capital and profits within a twelve-month period. For purposes of measuring whether the 50% threshold is reached, multiple sales of the same interest are counted only once. A constructive termination results in the closing of our taxable year for all unitholders. In the case of a unitholder reporting on a taxable year other than a fiscal year ending December 31, the closing of

our taxable year may result in more than twelve months of our taxable income or loss being includable in his taxable income for the year of termination. A constructive termination occurring on a date other than December 31 will result in us filing two tax returns (and unitholders may receive two Schedules K-1 if the relief discussed below is not available) for one fiscal year and the cost of the preparation of these returns will be borne by all common unitholders. However, pursuant to an IRS relief procedure for publicly traded partnerships that have technically terminated, the IRS may allow, among other things, that we provide a single Schedule K-1 for the tax year in which a termination occurs. We would be required to make new tax elections after a termination, including a new election under Section 754 of the Internal Revenue Code, and a termination would result in a deferral of our deductions for depreciation. A termination could also result in penalties if we were unable to determine that the termination had occurred. Moreover, a termination might either accelerate the application of, or subject us to, any tax legislation enacted before the termination.

Uniformity of Units

Because we cannot match transferors and transferees of units, we must maintain uniformity of the economic and tax characteristics of the units to a purchaser of these units. In the absence of uniformity, we may be unable to completely comply with a number of federal income tax requirements, both statutory and regulatory. A lack of uniformity can result from a literal application of Treasury Regulation Section 1.167(c)-1(a)(6). Any non-uniformity could have a negative impact on the value of the units. Please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Section 754 Election.”

[Table of Contents](#)

We intend to depreciate the portion of a Section 743(b) adjustment attributable to unrealized appreciation in the value of Contributed Property, to the extent of any unamortized Book-Tax Disparity, using a rate of depreciation or amortization derived from the depreciation or amortization method and useful life applied to the property’s unamortized Book-Tax Disparity, or treat that portion as non-amortizable, to the extent attributable to property the common basis of which is not amortizable, consistent with the Treasury Regulations under Section 743 of the Internal Revenue Code, even though that position may be inconsistent with Treasury Regulation Section 1.167(c)-1(a)(6), which is not expected to directly apply to a material portion of our assets. Please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Section 754 Election.” To the extent that the Section 743(b) adjustment is attributable to appreciation in value in excess of the unamortized Book-Tax Disparity, we will apply the rules described in the Treasury Regulations and legislative history. If we determine that this position cannot reasonably be taken, we may adopt a depreciation and amortization position under which all purchasers acquiring units in the same month would receive depreciation and amortization deductions, whether attributable to a common basis or Section 743(b) adjustment, based upon the same applicable methods and lives as if they had purchased a direct interest in our property. If this position is adopted, it may result in lower annual depreciation and amortization deductions than would otherwise be allowable to some unitholders and risk the loss of depreciation and amortization deductions not taken in the year that these deductions are otherwise allowable. This position will not be adopted if we determine that the loss of depreciation and amortization deductions will have a material adverse effect on our unitholders. If we choose not to utilize this aggregate method, we may use any other reasonable depreciation and amortization method to preserve the uniformity of the intrinsic tax characteristics of any units that would not have a material adverse effect on our unitholders. The IRS may challenge any method of depreciating the Section 743(b) adjustment described in this paragraph. If this challenge were sustained, the uniformity of units might be affected, and the gain from the sale of units might be increased without the benefit of additional deductions. Please see “— Disposition of Common Units — Recognition of Gain or Loss.”

Tax-Exempt Organizations and Other Investors

Ownership of units by employee benefit plans, other tax-exempt organizations, non-resident aliens, foreign corporations and other foreign persons raise issues unique to those investors and, as described below, may have substantially adverse tax consequences to them. If you are a tax-exempt entity or a foreign person, you should consult your tax advisor before investing in our common units.

Employee benefit plans and most other organizations exempt from federal income tax, including individual retirement accounts and other retirement plans, are subject to federal income tax on unrelated business taxable income. Virtually all of our income allocated to a unitholder that is a tax-exempt organization will be unrelated business taxable income and will be taxable to it.

Non-resident aliens and foreign corporations, trusts or estates that own units will be considered to be engaged in business in the United States because of the ownership of units. As a consequence, they will be required to file federal tax returns to report their share of our income, gain, loss or deduction and pay federal income tax at regular rates on their share of our net income or gain. Moreover, under rules applicable to publicly traded partnerships, we will withhold at the highest applicable effective tax rate from cash distributions made quarterly to foreign unitholders. Each foreign unitholder must obtain a taxpayer identification number from the IRS and submit that number to our transfer agent on a Form W-8BEN or applicable substitute form in order to obtain credit for these withholding taxes. A change in applicable law may require us to change these procedures.

In addition, because a foreign corporation that owns units will be treated as engaged in a United States trade or business, that corporation may be subject to the United States branch profits tax at a rate of 30%, in addition to regular federal income tax, on its share of our income and gain, as adjusted for changes in the foreign corporation’s “U.S. net equity,” which are effectively connected with the conduct of a United States trade or business. That tax may be reduced or eliminated by an income tax treaty between the United States and the country in which the foreign corporate unitholder is a “qualified resident.” In addition, this type of unitholder is subject to special information reporting requirements under Section 6038C of the Internal Revenue Code.

[Table of Contents](#)

Under a ruling of the IRS, a foreign unitholder who sells or otherwise disposes of a unit will be subject to federal income tax on gain realized on the sale or disposition of that unit to the extent that this gain is effectively connected with a United States trade or business of the foreign unitholder. Because a foreign unitholder is considered to be engaged in business in the United States by virtue of the ownership of units, under this ruling a foreign unitholder who sells or otherwise disposes of a unit generally will be subject to federal income tax on gain realized on the sale or other disposition of units. Apart from the ruling, a foreign unitholder will not be taxed or subject to withholding upon the sale or disposition of a unit if he has owned less than 5% in value of the units during the five-year period ending on the date of the disposition and if the units are regularly traded on an established securities market at the time of the sale or disposition.

Administrative Matters

Information Returns and Audit Procedures. We intend to furnish to each unitholder, within 90 days after the close of each calendar year, specific tax information, including a Schedule K-1, which describes his share of our income, gain, loss and deduction for our preceding taxable year. In preparing this information, which will not be reviewed by counsel, we will take various accounting and reporting positions, some of which have been mentioned earlier, to determine each unitholder’s share of income, gain, loss and deduction. We cannot assure you that those positions will in all cases yield a result that conforms to the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code, Treasury Regulations or administrative interpretations of the IRS. Neither we nor Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP can assure prospective unitholders that the IRS will not successfully contend in court that those positions are impermissible. Any challenge by the IRS could negatively affect the value of the units.

The IRS may audit our federal income tax information returns. Adjustments resulting from an IRS audit may require each unitholder to adjust a prior year’s tax liability, and possibly may result in an audit of his return. Any audit of a unitholder’s return could result in adjustments not related to our returns as well as those related to our returns.

Partnerships generally are treated as separate entities for purposes of federal tax audits, judicial review of administrative adjustments by the IRS and tax settlement proceedings. The tax treatment of partnership items of income, gain, loss and deduction are determined in a partnership proceeding rather than in separate proceedings with the partners. The Internal Revenue Code requires that one partner be designated as the “Tax Matters Partner” for these purposes. Our partnership agreement gives our board of directors the authority to designate a Tax Matters Partner.

The Tax Matters Partner has made and will make elections on our behalf and on behalf of unitholders. In addition, the Tax Matters Partner can extend the statute of limitations for assessment of tax deficiencies against unitholders for items in our returns. The Tax Matters Partner may bind a unitholder with less than a 1% profits interest in us to a settlement with the IRS unless that unitholder elects, by filing a statement with the IRS, not to give that authority to the Tax Matters Partner. The Tax Matters Partner may seek judicial review, by which all our unitholders are bound, of a final partnership administrative adjustment and, if the Tax Matters Partner fails to seek judicial review, judicial review may be sought by any unitholder having at least a 1% interest in profits or by any group of unitholders having in the aggregate at least a 5% interest in profits. However, only one action for judicial review will go forward, and each unitholder with an interest in the outcome may participate.

A unitholder must file a statement with the IRS identifying the treatment of any item on his federal income tax return that is not consistent with the treatment of the item on the tax report we provide to him. Intentional or negligent disregard of this consistency requirement may subject a unitholder to substantial penalties.

Nominee Reporting. Persons who hold an interest in us as a nominee for another person are required to furnish to us:

- (a) the name, address and taxpayer identification number of the beneficial owner and the nominee;

[Table of Contents](#)

- (b) whether the beneficial owner is
 - (1) a person that is not a United States person,
 - (2) a foreign government, an international organization or any wholly owned agency or instrumentality of either of the foregoing, or
 - (3) a tax-exempt entity;
- (c) the amount and description of units held, acquired or transferred for the beneficial owner; and
- (d) specific information including the dates of acquisitions and transfers, means of acquisitions and transfers, and acquisition cost for purchases, as well as the amount of net proceeds from sales.

Brokers and financial institutions are required to furnish additional information, including whether they are United States persons and specific information on units they acquire, hold or transfer for their own account. A penalty of \$100 per failure, up to a maximum of \$1.5 million per calendar year, is imposed by the Internal Revenue Code for failure to report that information to us. The nominee is required to supply the beneficial owner of the units with the information furnished to us.

Accuracy-Related Penalties. An additional tax equal to 20% of the amount of any portion of an underpayment of tax that is attributable to one or more specified causes, including negligence or disregard of rules or regulations, substantial understatements of income tax and substantial valuation misstatements, is imposed by the Internal Revenue Code. No penalty will be imposed, however, for any portion of an underpayment if it is shown that there was a reasonable cause for that portion and that the taxpayer acted in good faith regarding that portion.

For individuals, a substantial understatement of income tax in any taxable year exists if the amount of the understatement exceeds the greater of 10% of the tax required to be shown on the return for the taxable year or \$5,000 (\$10,000 for most corporations). The amount of any understatement subject to penalty generally is reduced if any portion is attributable to a position adopted on the return:

- (1) for which there is, or was, “substantial authority,” or
- (2) as to which there is a reasonable basis and the pertinent facts of that position are disclosed on the return.

If any item of income, gain, loss or deduction included in the distributive shares of unitholders might result in that kind of an “understatement” of income for which no “substantial authority” exists, we must disclose the pertinent facts on our return. In addition, we will make a reasonable effort to furnish sufficient information for unitholders to make adequate disclosure on their returns and to take other actions as may be appropriate to permit unitholders to avoid liability for this penalty. More stringent rules apply to “tax shelters,” which we do not believe includes us or any of our investments, plans or arrangements.

A substantial valuation misstatement exists if the value of any property, or the adjusted basis of any property, claimed on a tax return is 150% or more of the amount determined to be the correct amount of the valuation or adjusted basis. No penalty is imposed unless the portion of the underpayment attributable to a substantial valuation misstatement exceeds \$5,000 (\$10,000 for most corporations). If the valuation claimed on a return is 200% or more than the correct valuation, the penalty imposed increases to 40%. We do not anticipate making any valuation misstatements.

Reportable Transactions. If we were to engage in a “reportable transaction,” we (and possibly you and others) would be required to make a detailed disclosure of the transaction to the IRS. A transaction may be a reportable transaction based upon any of several factors, including the fact that it is a type of tax avoidance transaction publicly identified by the IRS as a “listed transaction” or that it produces certain kinds of losses for partnerships, individuals, S corporations, and trusts in excess of \$2 million in any single year, or \$4 million in

[Table of Contents](#)

any combination of six successive tax years. Our participation in a reportable transaction could increase the likelihood that our federal income tax information return (and possibly your tax return) would be audited by the IRS. Please see “— Information Returns and Audit Procedures.”

Moreover, if we were to participate in a reportable transaction with a significant purpose to avoid or evade tax, or in any listed transaction, you may be subject to the following provisions of the American Jobs Creation Act of 2004:

- accuracy-related penalties with a broader scope, significantly narrower exceptions, and potentially greater amounts than described above at “— Accuracy-Related Penalties,”
- for those persons otherwise entitled to deduct interest on federal tax deficiencies, nondeductibility of interest on any resulting tax

liability, and

- in the case of a listed transaction, an extended statute of limitations.

We do not expect to engage in any reportable transactions.

State, Local, Foreign and Other Tax Consequences

In addition to federal income taxes, you may be subject to other taxes, such as state, local, and foreign income taxes, unincorporated business taxes, and estate, inheritance or intangible taxes that may be imposed by the various jurisdictions in which we do business or own property or in which you are a resident. We own assets and do business in more than 25 states including Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Arkansas and Oklahoma. Many of the states we currently do business in currently impose a personal income tax. We may also own property or do business in other states in the future. Although an analysis of those various taxes is not presented here, each prospective unitholder is urged to consider their potential impact on his investment in us. Although you may not be required to file a return and pay taxes in some jurisdictions because your income from that jurisdiction falls below the filing and payment requirement, you might be required to file income tax returns and to pay income taxes in other jurisdictions in which we do business or own property, now or in the future, and may be subject to penalties for failure to comply with those requirements. In some jurisdictions, tax losses may not produce a tax benefit in the year incurred and may not be available to offset income in subsequent taxable years. Some jurisdictions may require us, or we may elect, to withhold a percentage of income from amounts to be distributed to a unitholder who is not a resident of the jurisdiction. Withholding, the amount of which may be greater or less than a particular unitholder’s income tax liability to the jurisdiction, generally does not relieve a nonresident unitholder from the obligation to file an income tax return. Amounts withheld will be treated as if distributed to unitholders for purposes of determining the amounts distributed by us. Please see “— Tax Consequences of Unit Ownership — Entity-Level Payments.”

We conduct a small part of our operations in Puerto Rico. We will file a composite or combined Puerto Rico tax return, as applicable, on behalf of our unitholders and pay taxes due. However, you may be required to file a tax return and pay income taxes in Puerto Rico in certain circumstances as a result of these operations. Based on current law and our estimate of our future operations, we anticipate that Puerto Rico income taxes due will not be material. You are urged to consult your tax advisor on the tax consequences under the laws of Puerto Rico of an investment in our common units.

It is the responsibility of each unitholder to investigate the legal and tax consequences, under the laws of pertinent jurisdictions, of his investment in us. Accordingly, each prospective unitholder is urged to consult, and depend upon, his tax counsel or other advisor with regard to those matters. Further, it is the responsibility of each unitholder to file all state, local and foreign, as well as United States federal tax returns, that may be required of him. Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP has not rendered an opinion on the state, local, or foreign tax consequences of an investment in us.

[Table of Contents](#)

INVESTMENT IN GENESIS BY EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND IRAs

IRS Circular 230 Notice Requirement. This communication is not given in the form of a covered opinion, within the meaning of Circular 230 issued by the United States Secretary of the Treasury. Thus, we are required to inform you that you cannot rely upon any tax advice contained in this communication for the purpose of avoiding United States federal tax penalties. In addition, any tax advice contained in this communication may not be used to promote, market or recommend a transaction to another party.

The following is a summary of certain considerations associated with an investment in our securities by any employee benefit plan that is subject to Title I of the U.S. Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974, as amended (“ERISA”), any plan, individual retirement account (an “IRA”) or other arrangement that is subject to Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code or provisions under any federal, state, local, non-U.S. or other laws or regulations that are similar to such provisions of ERISA or the Internal Revenue Code (collectively, “Similar Laws”), and any entity whose underlying assets are considered to include “plan assets” by reason of any such plan’s, account’s or arrangement’s investment in such entity (each of the foregoing, a “Plan”). This summary is based on the provisions of ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code, and the related regulations and administrative and judicial interpretations, as of the date hereof. This summary does not purport to be complete, and no assurance can be given that future legislation, court decisions or administrative regulations, rulings or pronouncements will not significantly modify the requirements summarized herein. Any such changes may be retroactive and thereby apply to transactions entered into before the date of their enactment or release.

General Fiduciary Matters

ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code impose certain duties on persons who are fiduciaries of a Plan subject to Title I of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code (an “ERISA Plan”) and prohibit certain transactions involving the assets of an ERISA Plan and its fiduciaries or other interested parties. Under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code, any person who exercises any discretionary authority or control over the administration of an ERISA Plan or the management or disposition of the assets of an ERISA Plan, or who renders investment advice for a fee or other compensation to an ERISA Plan, is generally considered to be a fiduciary of the ERISA Plan.

In considering an investment in Genesis of a portion of the assets of any Plan, a fiduciary should determine whether the investment is in accordance with the documents and instruments governing the Plan and the applicable provisions of ERISA, the Internal Revenue Code or any Similar Law relating to a fiduciary’s duties to the Plan including, without limitation, the prudence, diversification, delegation of control and prohibited transaction provisions of ERISA, the Internal Revenue Code and any other applicable Similar Laws.

Any insurance company proposing to invest assets of its general account in our securities should consider the extent that the investment would be subject to the requirements of ERISA in light of the U.S. Supreme Court’s decision in *John Hancock Mutual Life Insurance v. Harris Trust and Savings Bank*, 114 S.Ct. 517 (1993), which in certain circumstances treats those general account assets as assets of an ERISA Plan for purposes of the fiduciary responsibility provisions of ERISA and the prohibited transaction provisions of ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code. In addition, such potential investor should consider the effect of any subsequent legislation or other guidance that has or may become available relating to that decision, including Section 401(c) of ERISA and the regulations thereunder.

Prohibited Transactions

Section 406 of ERISA and Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code (which also applies to IRAs of individuals) prohibit ERISA Plans from engaging in specified transactions involving “plan assets” with persons or entities who are “parties in interest” under ERISA or “disqualified persons” under Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code, unless an exemption is available. A party in interest or disqualified person who engaged in a non-

[Table of Contents](#)

exempt prohibited transaction may be subject to excise taxes and other penalties and liabilities under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code. In addition, the fiduciary of the ERISA Plan that engaged in such a non-exempt prohibited transaction may be subject to penalties and liabilities under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code.

The acquisition or holding of our securities by an ERISA Plan with respect to which either we, our general partner, selling unitholders or any of their respective affiliates is considered a party in interest or a disqualified person may constitute or result in a direct or indirect prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code, unless the investment is acquired and is held in accordance with an applicable statutory, class or individual prohibited transaction exemption. In this regard, the United States Department of Labor (the “DOL”) has issued prohibited transaction class exemptions, or “PTCEs,” that may apply to the acquisition and holding of the common units. These class exemptions include, without limitation, PTCE 75-1, which exempts certain transactions between an ERISA Plan and certain broker-dealers, reporting dealers and banks, PTCE 84-14 respecting transactions determined by independent qualified professional asset managers, PTCE 90-1 respecting insurance company pooled separate accounts, PTCE 91-38 respecting bank collective investment funds, PTCE 95-60 respecting life insurance company general accounts and PTCE 96-23 respecting transactions determined by in-house asset managers, although there can be no assurance that all of the conditions of any such exemptions will be satisfied. In addition, the statutory service provider exemption provided by Section 408(b)(17) of ERISA and Section 4975(d)(20) of the Internal Revenue Code, which exempts certain transactions between ERISA Plans and parties in interest or disqualified persons that are not fiduciaries with respect to the transaction could apply.

We cannot provide any assurance that any of these class exemptions or statutory exemptions will apply with respect to any particular investment in our securities by, or on behalf of, an ERISA Plan or, even if it were deemed to apply, that any exemption would apply to all transactions that may occur in connection with the investment.

Because of the foregoing, our securities should not be purchased or held by any person investing “plan assets” of any Plan, unless such purchase and holding will not constitute or result in a non-exempt prohibited transaction under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code or a violation of any applicable Similar Laws. Each person investing in Genesis will be deemed to represent that its acquisition, holding and disposition of such investment will not constitute a non-exempt prohibited transaction under Section 406 of ERISA or Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code.

Plan Asset Issues

The DOL as adopted regulations (the “Plan Asset Regulations”) that generally provide that when an ERISA Plan invests in an equity interest of an entity that is neither a “publicly-offered security” nor a security issued by an investment company registered under the Investment Company Act of 1940, the ERISA Plan’s assets include both the equity interest and an undivided interest in each of the underlying assets of the entity (the “look-through rule”), unless it is established either that equity participation in the entity by “benefit plan investors” is not “significant” or that the entity is an “operating company,” in each case as defined in the Plan Asset Regulations. Section 3(42) of ERISA defines the term “plan assets” to mean plan assets as defined by such regulations as the DOL may prescribe, except that under such regulations the assets of an entity shall not be treated as plan assets if, immediately after the most recent acquisition of an equity interest in the entity, less than 25% of the total value of each class of equity interest in the entity is held by Benefit Plan Investors. The term “Benefit Plan Investor” means any employee benefit plan subject to the fiduciary provisions of ERISA, any plan, IRA or other arrangement to which the prohibited transaction provisions of Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code apply and any entity whose underlying assets include plan assets by reason of a plan’s investment in such entity.

Except as specifically addressed by Section 3(42) of ERISA, until the DOL issues regulations under Section 3(42) of ERISA, it is probable that the principles set forth in the Plan Asset Regulations will continue to apply with respect to determinations as to whether an entity’s underlying assets include plan assets, including the

[Table of Contents](#)

general exception to the look-through rule for operating companies. The Plan Asset Regulations define an “operating company” in part as an entity that is primarily engaged, directly or through a majority owned subsidiary or subsidiaries, in the production or sale of a product or service other than the investment of capital.

Plan Asset Consequences

If our assets were deemed to be “plan assets” under ERISA, it would result, among other things, in (i) the application of the prudence and other fiduciary responsibility standards of ERISA to investments made by us and (ii) the possibility that certain transactions in which we might seek to engage could constitute “prohibited transactions” under ERISA and the Internal Revenue Code. (Whether or not our assets are deemed to be “plan assets” under ERISA, see discussion under “Prohibited Transactions” above).

It is not anticipated that our assets will be considered plan assets because we are primarily engaged in business activities that we believe qualify us as an “operating company” under the Plan Asset Regulations (although no assurance can be given in this regard). In addition, because our common units are “publicly-offered securities” and our debt securities are not “equity interests” for purposes of the Plan Asset Regulations, even significant investment by Benefit Plan Investors in those securities would not result in our assets being treated as plan assets under ERISA. Investment in each class of our securities by Benefit Plan Investors also may not be “significant” for purposes of the Plan Asset Regulations, although it is unlikely that we will be in a position to monitor whether or not investment in any class of our securities by Benefit Plan Investors is or may become significant.

The foregoing discussion is general in nature and is not intended to be all-inclusive. Due to the complexity of these rules and the penalties that may be imposed on persons involved in non-exempt prohibited transactions, it is particularly important that fiduciaries or other persons considering purchasing the common units on behalf of, or with the assets of, any Plan, consult with their own counsel regarding the potential applicability of ERISA, Section 4975 of the Internal Revenue Code and any Similar Laws to such investment and whether an exemption would be applicable to the purchase and holding of the common units.

[Table of Contents](#)

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

We may offer and sell the securities described in this prospectus from time to time directly, through agents, or to or through underwriters or dealers. The prospectus supplement relating to any particular offering will contain the terms of the securities sold in that offering, including:

- the names of any underwriters, dealers or agents (if any);
- the offering price;
- underwriting discounts;

- sales agents' commissions;
- other forms of underwriter or agent compensation;
- discounts, concessions or commissions that underwriters may pass on to other dealers; and
- any exchange on which the securities are listed.

We may change the offering price, underwriting discounts or concessions, or the price to dealers when necessary. Discounts or commissions received by underwriters or agents and any profits on the resale of securities by them may constitute underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act").

Unless we state otherwise in a prospectus supplement, underwriters will need to meet certain requirements before purchasing securities. Agents may act on a "best efforts" basis during their appointment. We will also state the net proceeds from the sale in a prospectus supplement.

Any brokers or dealers that participate in the distribution of the securities may be "underwriters" within the meaning of the Securities Act for such sales. Profits, commissions, discounts or concessions received by such broker or dealer may be underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act. Brokers or dealers may act as agent or may purchase securities as principal and thereafter resell the securities from time to time in or through one or more transactions or distributions.

Offers to purchase securities may be solicited directly by us and the sale thereof may be made by us directly to institutional investors or others, who may be deemed to be underwriters within the meaning of the Securities Act with respect to any resale thereof. The terms of any such sales will be described in the prospectus supplement relating thereto. We may use electronic media, including the Internet, to sell offered securities directly.

When necessary, we may fix securities distributions using changeable, fixed prices, market prices at the time of sale, prices related to market prices, or negotiated prices.

We may, through agreements, indemnify underwriters, dealers or agents that participate in the distribution of the securities against certain liabilities including liabilities under the Securities Act. We may also provide funds for payments that the underwriters, dealers or agents may be required to make. Underwriters, dealers and agents, and their affiliates may transact with us and our affiliates in the ordinary course of their business.

We may offer our equity securities described in this prospectus into an existing trading market on the terms described in the prospectus supplement thereto. Underwriters and dealers who may participate in any at-the-market offerings will be described in the prospectus supplement relating thereto.

The aggregate maximum compensation the underwriters will receive in connection with the sale of any securities under this prospectus and the registration statement of which it forms a part will not exceed 10% of the gross proceeds from the sale.

[Table of Contents](#)

Because the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority (FINRA) views our common units as interests in a direct participation program, any offering of common units under the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part will be made in compliance with Rule 2310 of the FINRA Rules.

To the extent required, this prospectus may be amended or supplemented from time to time to describe a specific plan of distribution. The place and time of delivery for the equity securities in respect of which this prospectus is delivered will be set forth in the accompanying prospectus supplement.

To facilitate an offering of a series of the securities, certain persons participating in the offering may engage in transactions that stabilize, maintain, or otherwise affect the price of the securities. This may include over-allotments or short sales of the securities, which involves the sale by persons participating in the offering of more securities than we sold to them. In these circumstances, these persons would cover the over-allotments or short positions by making purchases in the open market or by exercising their over-allotment option. In addition, these persons may stabilize or maintain the price of the securities by bidding for or purchasing securities in the open market or by imposing penalty bids, whereby selling concessions allowed to dealers participating in the offering may be reclaimed if securities sold by them are repurchased in connection with stabilization transactions. The effect of these transactions may be to stabilize or maintain the market price of the securities at a level above that

which might otherwise prevail in the open market. These transactions may be discontinued at any time.

Any offering and sale under this prospectus may be made on one or more national securities exchanges or in the over-the-counter market, or otherwise at prices and on terms then prevailing or at prices related to the then-current market price, or in negotiated transactions.

[Table of Contents](#)

INFORMATION REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements in this prospectus or incorporated by reference into this prospectus that are not historical information may be “forward-looking statements” as defined under federal law.

All statements, other than historical facts, included in this prospectus and the documents incorporated in this prospectus by reference that address activities, events or developments that we expect or anticipate will or may occur in the future, including things such as plans for growth of the business, future capital expenditures, competitive strengths, goals, references to future goals or intentions, and other such references are forward-looking statements. These forward-looking statements are identified as any statement that does not relate strictly to historical or current facts. They use words such as “anticipate,” “believe,” “continue,” “estimate,” “expect,” “forecast,” “goal,” “intend,” “may,” “could,” “plan,” “position,” “projection,” “strategy,” “should” or “will,” or the negative of those terms or other variations of them or by comparable terminology. In particular, statements, expressed or implied, concerning future actions, conditions or events or future operating results or the ability to generate sales, income or cash flow are forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements are not guarantees of performance. They involve risks, uncertainties and assumptions. Future actions, conditions or events and future results of operations may differ materially from those expressed in these forward-looking statements. Many of the factors that will determine these results are beyond our ability or the ability of our affiliates to control or predict. Specific factors that could cause actual results to differ from those in the forward-looking statements include, among others:

- demand for, the supply of, our assumptions about, changes in forecast data for, and price trends related to crude oil, liquid petroleum, NaHS, caustic soda and CO₂, all of which may be affected by economic activity, capital expenditures by energy producers, weather, alternative energy sources, international events, conservation and technological advances;
- throughput levels and rates;
- changes in, or challenges to, our tariff rates;
- our ability to successfully identify and close strategic acquisitions on acceptable terms (including obtaining third-party consents and waivers of preferential rights), develop or construct energy infrastructure assets, make cost saving changes in operations and integrate acquired assets or businesses into our existing operations;
- service interruptions in our pipeline transportation systems and processing operations;
- shutdowns or cutbacks at refineries, petrochemical plants, utilities or other businesses for which we transport crude oil, petroleum or other products or to whom we sell such products;
- risks inherent in marine transportation and vessel operation, including accidents and discharge of pollutants;
- changes in laws and regulations to which we are subject, including tax withholding issues, accounting pronouncements, and safety, environmental and employment laws and regulations;
- the effects of production declines and the effects of future laws and government regulation;
- planned capital expenditures and availability of capital resources to fund capital expenditures;
- our inability to borrow or otherwise access funds needed for operations, expansions or capital expenditures as a result of our credit agreement and the indentures governing our notes, which contain various affirmative and negative covenants;
- loss of key personnel;
- cash from operations that we generate could decrease or fail to meet expectations, either of which could reduce our ability to pay quarterly cash distributions at the current level or continue to increase quarterly cash distributions in the future;

[Table of Contents](#)

- an increase in the competition that our operations encounter;
- cost and availability of insurance;
- hazards and operating risks that may not be covered fully by insurance;
- our financial and commodity hedging arrangements, which may reduce our earnings, profitability and cash flows;
- changes in global economic conditions, including capital and credit markets conditions, inflation and interest rates;
- natural disasters, accidents or terrorism;
- changes in the financial condition of customers or counterparties;
- adverse rulings, judgments, or settlements in litigation or other legal or tax matters;
- the treatment of us as a corporation for federal income tax purposes or if we become subject to entity-level taxation for state tax purposes; and
- the potential that our internal controls may not be adequate, weaknesses may be discovered or remediation of any identified weaknesses may not be successful and the impact these could have on our unit price.

You should not put undue reliance on any forward-looking statements. When considering forward-looking statements, please review the risk factors identified in this prospectus under “Risk Factors,” as well as the section entitled “Risk Factors” included in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K, our subsequently filed Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K and Form 8-K/A and any other prospectus supplement we may file from time to time with the SEC with respect to this offering. Except as required by applicable securities laws, we do not intend to update these forward-looking statements and information.

[Table of Contents](#)

LEGAL MATTERS

The validity of the securities offered in this prospectus as well as the legal matters described under “Material Income Tax Consequences” will be passed upon for us by Akin Gump Strauss Hauer & Feld LLP. The validity of certain of the offered securities and other matters arising under Alabama and Louisiana law will be passed upon by McDavid, Noblin & West PLLC and Liskow & Lewis, A Professional Law Corporation, respectively. Any underwriter will be advised about other issues relating to any offering by its own legal counsel.

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements incorporated in this prospectus by reference from Genesis Energy, L.P.’s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014 and the effectiveness of Genesis Energy, L.P. and subsidiaries’ internal control over financial reporting have been audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report, which is incorporated herein by reference. Such consolidated financial statements have been so incorporated in reliance upon the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

[Table of Contents](#)

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We file annual, quarterly and other reports and other information with the Commission. You may read and copy documents we file at the Commission’s public reference room at 100 F Street, N.E., Washington, D.C. 20549. Please call the Commission at 1-800-SEC-0330 for information on the public reference room. You can also find our filings at the Commission’s website at <http://www.sec.gov> and on our website at <http://www.genesisenergy.com>. We make our website content available for information purposes only. Information contained on our website is not

incorporated by reference into this prospectus and does not constitute a part of this prospectus.

The Commission allows us to “incorporate by reference” the information we have filed with the Commission, which means that we can disclose important information to you without actually including the specific information in this prospectus by referring you to those documents. The information incorporated by reference is an important part of this prospectus and later information that we file with the Commission will automatically update and supersede this information. Therefore, before you decide to invest in a particular offering under this shelf registration, you should always check for reports we may have filed with the Commission after the date of this prospectus. We incorporate by reference the documents listed below and any future filings we make with the Commission under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14, or 15(d) of the Exchange Act (excluding information deemed to be furnished and not filed with the Commission) until we sell all of the securities offered by this prospectus:

- Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014; and
- the description of our common units in our registration statements on Form 8-A (File No. 001-12295) filed on January 30, 2001 and September 13, 2010, and any subsequent amendment thereto filed for the purpose of updating such description.

We will provide without charge to each person, including any beneficial owner, to whom this prospectus is delivered, upon written or oral request, a copy of any document incorporated by reference in this prospectus, other than exhibits to any such document not specifically described above. Requests for such documents should be directed to:

Investor Relations
Genesis Energy, L.P.
919 Milam, Suite 2100
Houston, Texas 77002
(713) 860-2500 or (800) 284-3365

We intend to furnish or make available to our unitholders within 75 days (or such shorter period as the Commission may prescribe) following the close of our fiscal year end annual reports containing audited financial statements prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles and furnish or make available within 40 days (or such shorter period as the Commission may prescribe) following the close of each fiscal quarter quarterly reports containing unaudited interim financial information, including the information required by Form 10-Q for the first three fiscal quarters of each of our fiscal years. Our annual report will include a description of any transactions with our general partner or its affiliates, and of fees, commissions, compensation and other benefits paid, or accrued to our general partner or its affiliates for the fiscal year completed, including the amount paid or accrued to each recipient and the services performed.

[Table of Contents](#)

\$550,000,000



Genesis Energy, L.P.
Genesis Energy Finance Corporation
6.50% Senior Notes due 2025

Joint Book-Running Managers
Wells Fargo Securities
BMO Capital Markets
Deutsche Bank Securities
SMBC Nikko
ABN AMRO
BNP PARIBAS
BofA Merrill Lynch
Capital One Securities
Citigroup
RBC Capital Markets
Scotiabank
DNB Markets

Co-managers
BBVA
Fifth Third Securities
Regions Securities LLC